



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

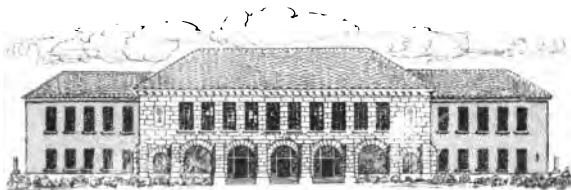
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 478.21 .S641
Smiley, James Brady,
Beginner's Latin book /

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 7052



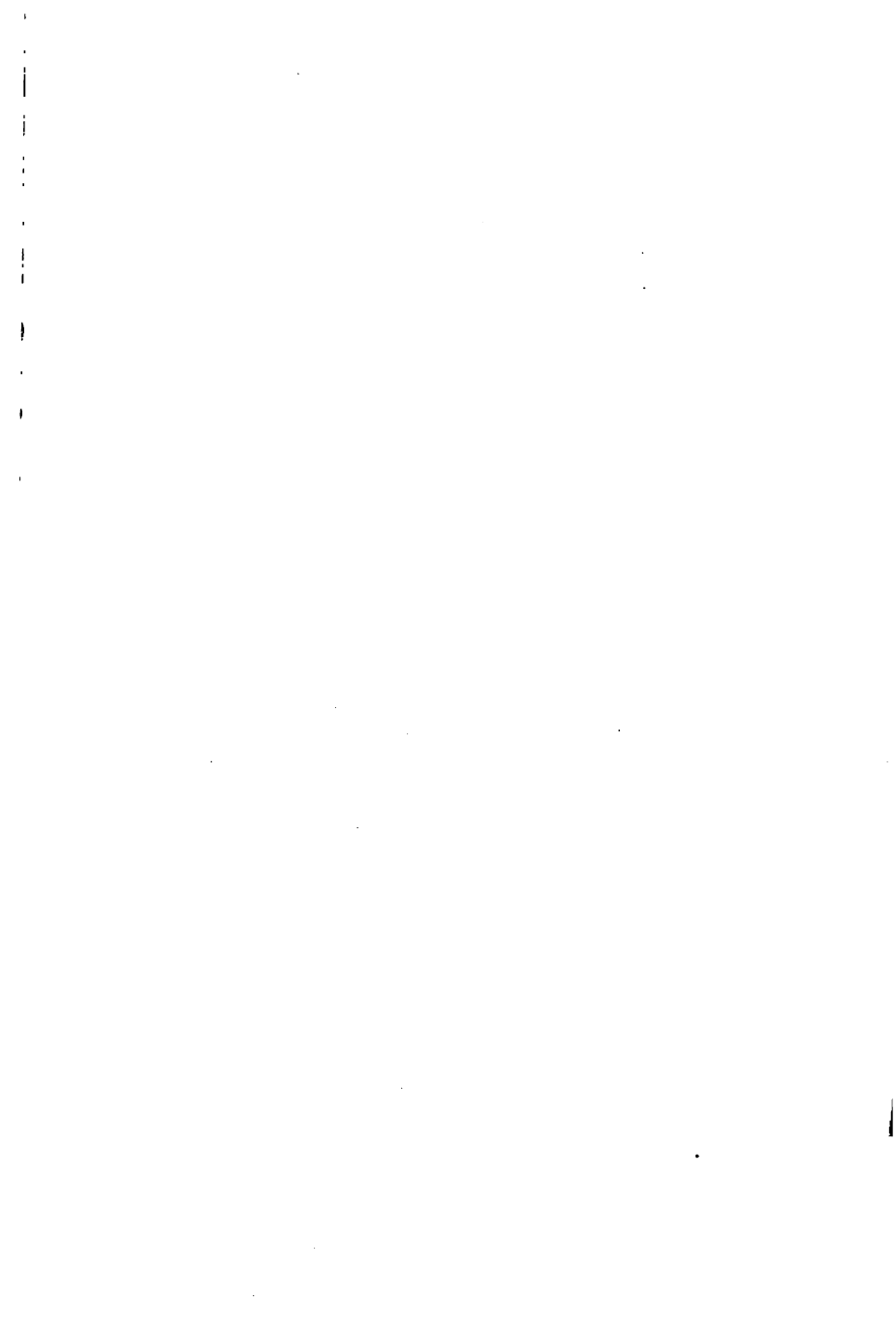
SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

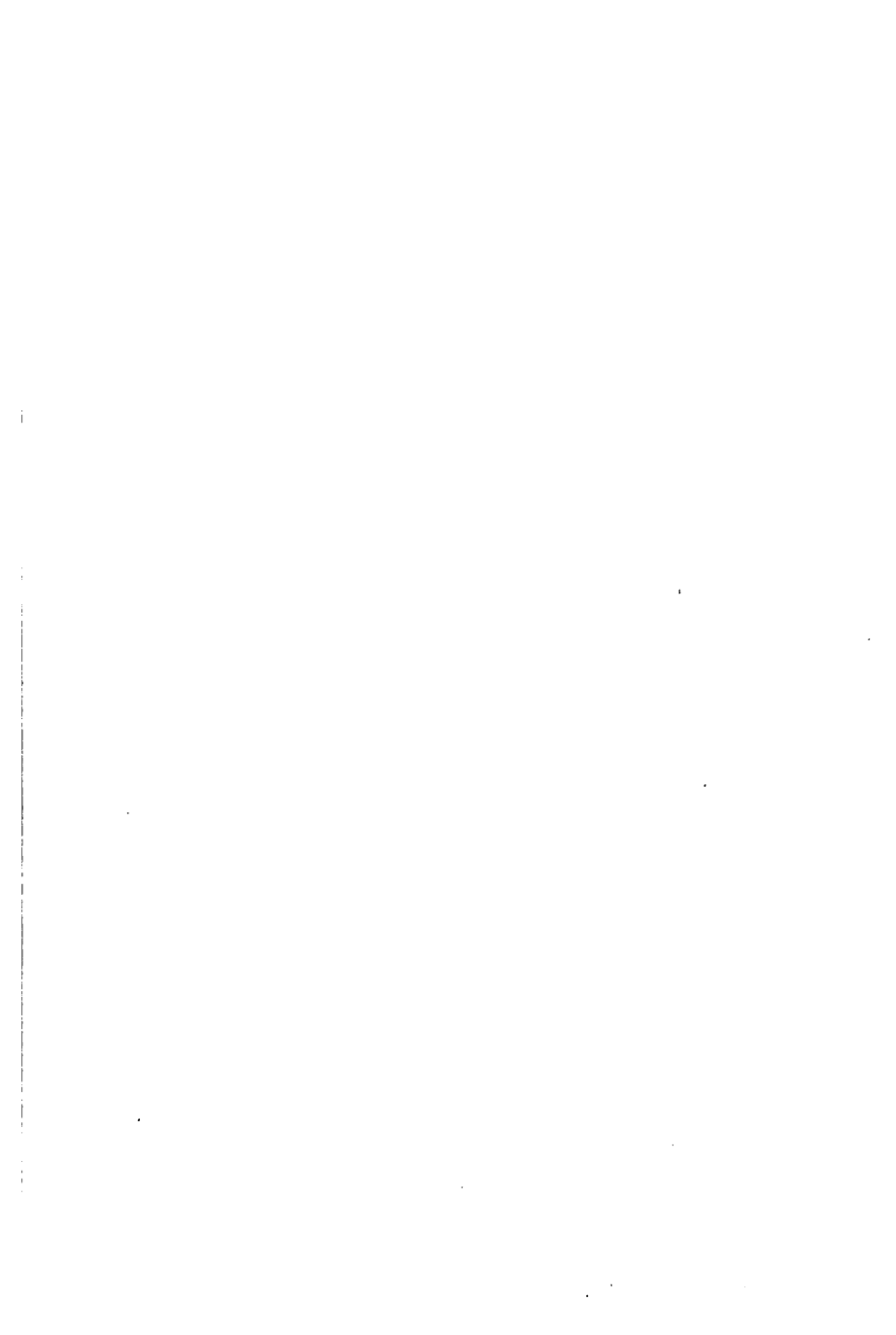
TEXTBOOK COLLECTION
GIFT OF
THE PUBLISHERS



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

tail price of this book is \$





THE
BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

BY

JAMES B. SMILEY, A.M. (HARVARD)

AND

HELEN L. STORKE, A.B. (VASSAR)

INSTRUCTORS IN GREEK AND LATIN IN THE CLEVELAND
WEST HIGH SCHOOL

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

BEGINNER'S LAT. BK.

W. P. 6



PREFACE

THIS book is different in some essential points from every other designed for beginners now in use in our schools. This fact gives the reason for its existence.

Its vocabulary is made up largely of words common to Caesar, Nepos, and the *Viri Romae*, and has been selected with great care from those found most frequently in these sources.

The noun and verb have been treated for the most part in alternating lessons. Their forms have been analyzed in such a manner as to give practical guidance to the pupil, without any effort on our part to trace in such analysis the historical development of the words, even where exact knowledge in this line is possible. Verb and noun exercises as mere form drill have been suggested, rather than given in set exercises.

Carefully graded reading lessons, fifty in number, are an important feature of the book. About three fifths of these are based on Caesar, about one fifth consists of fables, and the rest of a Latin version of the *Labors of Hercules*. These are led up to gradually in vocabulary and exercises in such a way as to smooth the path of the pupil, and at the same time leave difficulties sufficient to compel mental exertion on his part.

Word formation has been treated in a simple and suggestive way, and made practical by brief exercises running through the latter half of the book. Word lists occur at intervals, in which

related words are starred. These furnish material to the teacher for almost unlimited exercises on vocabulary, form, word comparison, and English derivatives.

The main part of the book concludes with a series of connected English passages for translation into Latin, and colloquia drawn from incidents, historical and traditional, in Caesar's life. These may be taken or omitted at the discretion of the teacher.

The appendix contains a review of forms and constructions, with full references to the treatment of the same subjects in the text.

In spelling we have in most instances used Brambach as our authority, and in the marking of hidden quantities we have followed in the main the usage of Marx. We have, for the sake of uniformity in the principal parts of verbs, given the masculine form of the perfect passive participle, even where, in the nature of the case, the neuter form would be used.

We wish to acknowledge our especial obligation to Professor John Williams White of Harvard University for his kind permission to use the results of his experience as embodied in his Greek textbooks for beginners, and to Dr. Theodore H. Johnston, Principal of the Cleveland West High School, for his helpful suggestions during the progress of our work.

We send this book forth in the belief that it will supply a need in its department, and lead easily and naturally into the broad and beautiful fields of Latin literature.

JAMES B. SMILEY.
HELEN L. STORKE.

CLEVELAND, May, 1898.

TABLE OF CONTENTS



LESSON	PAGE
I. The Alphabet. — Pronunciation	11
II. Syllables. — Quantity. — Accent	12
III. Inflection	15
IV. First Declension. — Agreement of Adjectives	16
V. First Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active. — Direct Object	19
VI. Second Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active.	22
VII. Second Declension, Nouns in -us and -um . — Limiting Genitive	23
VIII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. — Indirect Object. — Kinship of Words. — Word List I.	25
IX. Third Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active . .	28
X. Second Declension, Nouns in -er and -ir . — Ablative of Separation	30
XI. Adjectives of the Second Declension. — Complementary Infinitive. — Predicate Nominative and Appositive	32
XII. Third Declension, Mute Stems, Labials and Palatals	35
XIII. Third Declension, Mute Stems, Linguals	37
XIV. Word List II. — How to Read. — Reading Lesson	39
XV. Fourth Conjugation, Present and Imperfect Indicative Active. — Ablative of Specification. — Questions and Answers . .	40
XVI. Third Declension, Liquid and Sibilant Stems	43
XVII. Third Conjugation, Verbs in -iō , Present and Imperfect Indicative Active	45
XVIII. Third Declension, I -Stems. — Ablative of Accompaniment . .	47
XIX. First and Second Conjugations, Future Indicative Active. — Substantive Use of Adjectives	49
XX. I -Stems continued. — Word List III. — Reading Lesson . . .	51
XXI. Third and Fourth Conjugations, Future Indicative Active. — Double Dative	54
XXII. Fourth Declension. — Demonstrative Pronoun is	55

LESSON	PAGE
XXIII. Cardinal Numerals. — Accusative of Time and Space. — Reading Lesson	58
XXIV. The Irregular Verb Sum , Present, Imperfect, and Future. — The Relative Pronoun. — Dative of the Possessor . . .	60
XXV. First Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Ablative of Description	63
XXVI. Ordinal Numerals. — Word List IV. — Reading Lesson . .	66
XXVII. Second Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Ablative of Time	68
XXVIII. Third Declension, General Rules for Gender. — Irregular Nouns	70
XXIX. Third Declension, Exceptions to General Rules for Gender. — Ablative Absolute. — Reading Lesson	72
XXX. Third Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Ablative of Cause	75
XXXI. Adjectives of the Third Declension. — Ablative of Manner. .	77
XXXII. Fourth Conjugation and Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation, Perfect System, Active. — Word List V. — Reading Lesson	79
XXXIII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Ablative with Comparatives .	82
XXXIV. The Verb Sum , Perfect System. — Possum . — The Fifth Declension. — Reading Lesson	85
XXXV. First Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Ablative of Means. — Reading Lesson	88
XXXVI. Prepositions. — Ablative of the Agent. — Reading Lesson .	91
XXXVII. Comparison of Adjectives, Irregular. — Reading Lesson . .	94
XXXVIII. Second Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Word List VI. — Reading Lesson	96
XXXIX. Pronominal Adjectives. — Review of Comparison. — Reading Lesson	99
XL. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — Reading Lesson .	101
XLI. Third Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Simple Forms of Indirect Discourse. — Reading Lesson	104
XLII. Review of Cardinals and Ordinals. — Ablative of Degree of Difference. — Reading Lesson	106
XLIII. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. — Reading Lesson . .	108
XLIV. Fourth Conjugation, Passive Voice. — Review of the Passive. — Word List VII. — Reading Lesson	111
XLV. Demonstrative Pronouns. — Dative with Adjectives. — Reading Lesson	113

LESSON	PAGE
XLVI. Third Conjugation, Verbs in - lō , Passive Voice.—Dative with Intransitives.—Reading Lesson	117
XLVII. Possessive Pronouns.—Partitive Genitive.—Indirect Discourse continued.—Reading Lesson	119
XLVIII. Compounds of Sum .—Dative with Compounds.—Reading Lesson	123
XLIX. Deponent Verbs.—Ablative with Certain Deponents.—Reading Lesson	125
L. Semi-Deponents.—Review of Passive.—Word List VIII.—Reading Lesson	127
LI. Participles.—Reading Lesson	130
LII. Word Formation	133
LIII. Word Formation continued.—Root duo , <i>lead</i>	135
LIV. Interrogative Pronoun.—Two Accusatives.—Reading Lesson.—Root spec , <i>see, spy</i>	137
LV. Irregular Verbs, Indicative.— Ferō and its Compounds.—Reading Lesson.—Root mit , <i>send</i>	139
LVI. Indefinite Pronouns.—Word List IX.—Reading Lesson.—Root fac , <i>make or do</i>	142
LVII. Irregular Verbs, Volō and its Compounds.—Reading Lesson.—Root fer , <i>bear</i>	145
LVIII. Review of Pronouns.—Root leg , <i>gather</i>	147
LIX. Irregular Verbs, Indicative, Eō and Fīō .—Constructions of Place.—Reading Lesson.—Root da , <i>give</i>	149
LX. Subjunctive Mood, Sum .—Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.—Reading Lesson.—Root ac , <i>sharp</i>	153
LXI. Subjunctive Mood, Sequence of Tenses.—Reading Lesson.—Root sta , <i>stand</i>	155
LXII. Subjunctive Mood, First Conjugation.—Purpose Clauses.—Reading Lesson.—Root fa , <i>shine, show</i>	158
LXIII. Subjunctive Mood, Second Conjugation.—Verbs of Fearing.—Reading Lesson.—Root dic , <i>show, point</i> .—Word List X.	161
LXIV. Subjunctive Mood, Third Conjugation.—Relative Clauses of Purpose.—Reading Lesson.—Root es , <i>be, exist</i>	165
LXV. Subjunctive Mood, Fourth Conjugation.—Clauses of Result.—Reading Lesson.—Root ag , <i>drive</i>	167
LXVI. Subjunctive Mood, Third Conjugation, Verbs in - lō .—Relative Clauses of Characteristic.—Reading Lesson.—Root ten , <i>stretch, hold</i>	170

LESSON	PAGE
LXVII. Review of the Subjunctive Mood, Regular Verbs. — Indirect Questions. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>cap, take</i> . . .	173
LXVIII. Subjunctive Mood, <i>Ferō</i> . — Conditional Sentences, Simple. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>reg, stretch, guide</i> . . .	175
LXIX. Subjunctive Mood, <i>Es</i> . — Future Conditions. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>i, go</i>	178
LXX. Subjunctive Mood, <i>Fit</i> . — Conditions Contrary to Fact. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>luc, shine</i> . — Word List XI. .	181
LXXI. Subjunctive Mood, <i>Volō</i> and its Compounds. — Noun and Adjective Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>mu, mov, move</i>	185
LXXII. <i>Cum</i> , Causal and Concessive. — Noun and Adjective Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>iug, join, yoke</i> . .	187
LXXIII. Temporal Clauses, <i>Cum</i> Temporal. — Noun and Adjective Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>ped, tread</i> . .	189
LXXIV. Imperative Mood, Regular Verbs. — Noun Review. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>cla, call</i>	192
LXXV. Imperative Mood, Irregular Verbs. — Noun Review completed	195
LXXVI. Gerund and Gerundive. — Some Ways of expressing Purpose. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>voc, call</i>	198
LXXVII. Supine. — Expressions of Purpose. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>flu, flow</i> . — Word List XII.	201
LXXVIII. Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of the Agent. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>cad, fall</i>	205
LXXIX. Indirect Discourse, Principal and Subordinate Clauses. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>col, till</i>	208
LXXX. General Verb Review, Regular Verbs. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>man, ma, measure</i>	211
LXXXI. General Verb Review, Irregular Verbs. — Reading Lesson. — Root <i>hab, have</i> . — Word List XIII.	212
CONTINUOUS EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE, I.-XI.	214
CONLOQUIA, I.-XI.	219
TABLE OF DECLENSION	225
TABLE OF CONJUGATION	240
RULES OF SYNTAX	243
TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS	250
VOCABULARY	251

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS



1. Every Latin exercise should be carefully pronounced by the pupils.

2. Groups of words in common phrases should be committed to memory and frequently recited, and brief passages in Latin prose or verse should be learned by the pupils.

3. No word should be accepted from the pupil as correctly written unless every syllable long by nature has its mark of quantity.

4. Constant attention should be called to related words.

5. The word lists should be made in each case a separate lesson and used for emphasizing suggestion four, as well as for drill in remembering words.

6. "Vocabulary and form" should be made a daily watchword, and frequent attention should be called to the terminal parts of inflected words as showing their relation to others.

7. Rapid oral work should be demanded in translating from Latin into English and from English into Latin.

8. No pupil should be allowed in translating to violate in the slightest degree the purity of the English idiom.

9. The reading lessons should be made the basis, whenever time serves, of easy colloquia between pupil and teacher or between pupil and pupil.

10. Stories of Roman life should be told in the class, and the pupils encouraged in every way to learn more of the people whose language they are studying; Caesar, Cicero, Pompey, and other eminent Romans should be made living personalities to them.

11. Some ideas of the house and of the home life of the Romans should be given to the pupils.

12. The Roman arms, armor, and utensils should be described and, as far as possible, shown in pictures and models.

HINTS TO PUPILS



1. Observe closely every word, form, and construction as you meet it in your work.
2. Learn each lesson with absolute thoroughness.
3. Connect each lesson with the preceding one by a systematic review in thought of its prominent points. No teacher's assigned review can benefit you so much.
4. Compare words with one another and note carefully those that are related in form and meaning.
5. Observe the turn in meaning given to the body or root of a word by the various prefixes and suffixes.
6. Try to gain an idea of a new sentence or paragraph by seeing the words in the Latin order. Think your way into the meaning. Use your imagination to guide you in deciding what a person would be likely to say under the circumstances.
7. Consult the general vocabulary sparingly, and never until you have used your utmost endeavor to discern the meaning of a word through association or connection.
8. Observe sharply and pronounce accurately such words as you must look up, and make them thoroughly your own. Then turn to the vocabulary for their meaning.
9. Learn to use all helps in the most effective way. Look up all references and learn them. Never shirk the effort to understand and use every suggestion made in note and example.
10. Read these hints frequently and follow the instructions here given.

THE ALPHABET

6. Roman Method. — The vowels are pronounced as follows : —

ā like the second <i>a</i> in <i>ahd</i>	ǣ like the first <i>a</i> in <i>ahd</i>
ē “ <i>e</i> in <i>prey</i> ¹	ĕ “ <i>e</i> in <i>met</i>
ī “ <i>i</i> “ <i>machine</i> ¹	ĭ “ <i>i</i> “ <i>pin</i>
ō “ <i>o</i> “ <i>tone</i> ¹	ĕ “ <i>o</i> “ <i>for</i>
ū “ <i>oo</i> “ <i>tool</i> ¹	ū “ <i>oo</i> “ <i>took</i>

y is pronounced like the German **ü**, a sound intermediate between **u** and **i**.

7. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows : —

ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> ¹	oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>toil</i>
au “ <i>ou</i> “ <i>our</i> ¹	eu “ <i>eu</i> “ <i>feud</i>
ei “ <i>ei</i> “ <i>vein</i> ¹	ui “ <i>we</i>

8. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. The following points are to be emphasized : —

c is like <i>c</i> in <i>can</i>	v is like <i>w</i> in <i>went</i>
g “ <i>g</i> “ <i>go</i>	ph “ <i>ph</i> “ <i>alphabet</i>
f consonant is like <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i>	ch “ <i>ch</i> “ <i>ache</i>
s is like <i>s</i> in <i>so</i>	bs “ <i>ps</i> “ <i>lips</i>
t “ <i>t</i> “ <i>tin</i>	h is a mere breathing

9. English Method. — In this method the words are in the main pronounced as in English.



LESSON II

SYLLABLES — QUANTITY — ACCENT

10. Syllables. — Each Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

11. A single consonant between two vowels is joined with the following vowel : **a-ni-mus**, *mind*.

12. Doubled consonants are always separated : **pu-el-la**, *girl*.

¹ But without the English glide.

13. Of two or more consonants standing between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced with it: *e-pl-stu-la*, *letter*; *mā-gnus*, *great*; *ma-gi-stri*, *masters*; but in compounds the component parts are separated: *sub-le-vō*, *I lift up*.

14. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before that, the *antepenult*.

15. Quantity of Vowels. —

NOTE. — A few general rules for determining the length of vowels are here given, but in many cases the quantity can be learned by observation only. The pupil should carefully note and learn the length of each vowel in every Latin word as it occurs in this book. Too much stress cannot be laid upon this point.

1. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: *cō-pi-a*, *abundance*; *mī-hi*, *to me*.

2. A vowel before *nd* and *nt* is short: *vo-cān-dus*, *to be called*; *vo-cānt*, *they call*.

3. A vowel formed by contraction is long: *nīl* (*nī-hīl*), *nothing*.

4. A vowel before *l* consonant is long: *Pom-pē-ius*, *Pompey*.

5. A vowel before *nf*, *ns*, *gm*, *gn* is long: *in-fe-rō*, *I bring in*; *in-su-la*, *island*; *ā-gmen*, *line of march*; *i-gnis*, *fire*.

6. Diphthongs are long: *caū-sa*, *cause*.

16. Quantity of Syllables. — Syllables¹ are distinguished as long or short, according to the time required in pronunciation, a long syllable in general requiring double the time of a short one.

1. A syllable containing a long vowel or diphthong is long by nature: *hū-ius*, *of this one*; *ae-dēs*, *temple*.

2. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by a double consonant or by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*) is long by position²: *vo-cant*, *they call*.

¹ Distinguish carefully between length of syllable and length of vowel.

² Such a vowel retains its short sound.

3. A syllable containing a short vowel not followed by two or more consonants is short.

4. A syllable ending in a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r* is common; that is, the syllable is short in prose, but in poetry may be either long or short.

17. Accent. — 1. Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *mā-ter*, *mother*.

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *a-mī-cus*, *friend*; *dō-mī-nus*, *master*.

3. The ultima is never accented.

4. Certain words like *-ne*, *-que*, called enclitics and always attached to some other word, draw the accent to the syllable next preceding, whether this is long or short.

18. The following list of words should be carefully noted and accurately learned. They are in very common use and are often mispronounced.

bene, well
cottidīō, daily
dōbeō, I owe
enim, for
etiam, also
ferē, almost
filius, son
hic, here, he
idem (masc.), the same
idem (neut.), the same
Inferō, I bring in
Insula, island
ita, thus
Italia, Italy
item, likewise
māter, mother

mihi, to me
modo, only
-ne (enclitic), sign of a question
nō . . . quidem, not even
nō, lest
pater, father
quia, because
quidam, certain
quīn, but that
quis, who
rēgnō, I rule
rēx, king
sic, so
tot, so many
vērō, in truth

LESSON III

INFLECTION

19. Parts of Speech. — These are, as in English, the noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection. To the last four the common name of particle is given.

20. Inflection. — This is a change made in the form of a word, to show its grammatical relations. Of the parts of speech the first four are capable of inflection, which in the case of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called declension, and, in the case of verbs, conjugation.

21. Declension. — In Latin, declined words have six cases¹: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.

1. The Nominative is the case of the Subject or Predicate of a finite² verb.

2. The Genitive denotes Possession and some other relations, and may usually be translated by the English possessive or by the objective with *of* and some other prepositions.

3. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and corresponds to the English objective with *to* or *for*.

4. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of transitive verbs and of some prepositions.

5. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

6. The Ablative expresses relations usually translated by the English objective with *in*, *at*, *on*, *by*, *with*, and *from*, and is often accompanied by a preposition.

¹ The group of languages to which the Latin belongs had originally at least eight cases; but the Locative and Instrumental have, except in the case of a few forms, been absorbed by the others.

² A finite verb is any form of the verb found in the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative moods.

22. Stem. — That part of a noun to which significant suffixes, called case endings, are attached is called its Stem. These endings cannot in all instances be separated from their combination with the final vowel of the stem. Tables of terminations, made up for the most part of such combinations, will be given with the several declensions. These should be thoroughly committed to memory.

23. That part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection is for convenience called the Base. A noun is declined by joining to the base the proper case endings.

24. Gender. — There are three genders in Latin: the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The gender of the Latin noun is determined partly by signification, but more largely by termination.

25. General Rules for Gender. — Names of males, rivers, winds, mountains, and months are masculine.

Names of females, countries, cities, islands, trees, and plants are feminine.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter.

Special rules will be given as needed.

26. Number. — There are two numbers, as in English, the Singular and the Plural, distinguished by their terminations.



LESSON IV

THE FIRST OR A-DECLENSION

27. There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the ending of the Genitive singular and the final letter of the stem.¹

¹ See 22.

28. Latin nouns of the First Declension end regularly in *ā* and are feminine. Those denoting males are masculine. The stem ends in *ā*.¹

29. *Silva*,² *f.*, *forest, wood*; stem *silva-*, base *silv-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
			SING. a	PLUR. ae
N. <i>silv-a</i> , <i>a forest</i> ³		<i>silv-ae</i> , <i>forests</i>		
G. <i>silv-ae</i> , <i>of a forest</i>		<i>silv-ārum</i> , <i>of forests</i>	ae	ārum
D. <i>silv-ae</i> , <i>to a forest, etc.</i>		<i>silv-is</i> , <i>to forests, etc.</i>	ae	is
Ac. <i>silv-am</i> , <i>a forest</i>		<i>silv-ās</i> , <i>forests</i>	am	ās
V. <i>silv-a</i> , <i>oh forest</i>		<i>silv-ae</i> , <i>oh forests</i>	a	ae
Ab. <i>silv-ā</i> , <i>from a forest, etc.</i>		<i>silv-is</i> , <i>from forests, etc.</i>	ā	is

30. Observe the stem and base as given above. The stem may be found by dropping *-rum* of the Genitive plural. The stem vowel joined with the case ending forms the termination. The terminations added to the base give the several case forms.

31. VOCABULARY

fossa, *ae, f.*, *ditch, trench.*

Gallia, *ae, f.*, *Gaul* (a country of ancient Europe).

Insula, *ae, f.*, *island.*

porta, *ae, f.*, *gate, door.*

terra, *ae, f.*, *land, country.*

alta, *high, deep.*

longa, *long.*

magna, *large, great.*

et, *conj., and.*

est,⁴ *he, she, or it is.*

sunt,⁴ *they are.*

Decline all the nouns and adjectives in the above vocabulary like *silva*.

¹ The stem ended originally in *ā*.

² Notice cases having like endings. Learn the base and the table of terminations, and you will be able to decline any noun of the First Declension.

³ There is no article in Latin. *Silva* means *forest, a forest, or the forest.*

⁴ Observe that the third person singular of the verb ends in *-t*, and the third person plural in *-nt*. This is true of every verb in the language in the Indicative and Subjunctive moods.

⁵ *Est* alone means *he is, etc.*; but with an expressed subject it is translated by *is* simply. So also of other verbs.

32. Examine the following : —

Insula est magna, the island is large.

Observe that *insula* is the subject of *est*, and is in the Nominative case ; and that *magna* is in the Nominative case, in agreement with *insula*.

RULES. — 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case.

2. The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

33.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fossa est alta. 2. Porta est alta et longa. 3. Terra est magna. 4. Gallia est magna. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Portae sunt magnae et longae. 7. Silvae sunt magnae. 8. Fossae sunt longae. 9. Fossae sunt altae et longae. 10. Porta est magna.

Pronounce the above exercise with careful attention to quantity and accent. After translating, copy the Latin accurately, marking the quantity of all long vowels and indicating accented syllables. This practice is valuable, and, if continued for the first fifteen or sixteen lessons, will amply repay you for the time spent.

In the following exercise, and in all your future translations into Latin, mark the quantity of the vowels in all syllables long by nature.

II. 1. The ditch is long. 2. The islands are large. 3. The gate is high and long. 4. Gaul is large. 5. The land is large. 6. The ditches are deep. 7. The gates are high. 8. The island is long.



ANCIENT ROMAN COINS

LESSON V

THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT
TENSES—THE DIRECT OBJECT

34. The Latin verb is regularly inflected through four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel preceding the ending *-re* of the Present Infinitive active: *ā* in the First Conjugation, *ē* in the Second, *ē* in the Third, and *i* in the Fourth. Examples: *vocā-re*, to call; *monē-re*, to advise; *rege-re*, to rule; *audi-re*, to hear.

35. Voice.—**Mood.**—The Latin has two voices, the Active and the Passive, and three moods, the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, besides other forms of the verb: Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, and Supine, to be explained later.

36. Tenses.—The Latin has, in the Indicative mood, six tenses, the Present, Imperfect, and Future, called tenses of continued action, and Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect, called tenses of completed action.

Each tense is inflected through two numbers, the singular and the plural.

37. Principal Parts.—The principal parts of a Latin verb in the active voice consist of the first pers. sing. Pres. Ind. act., the Pres. Inf. act., the first pers. sing. Perf. Ind. act., and the Perf. Pass. Participle.

They are so called because from them all parts of the verb may be formed.

Example:	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
	<i>vocō</i>	<i>vocāre</i>	<i>vocāvī</i>	<i>vocātus</i>

38. Stems.—Verb forms are built upon three stems, the Present, the Perfect, and the Participial.

The Present stem of verbs of the First Conjugation ends in *ā*, and may be found by dropping the ending *-re* of the Pres. Inf. act.: *vocā-re*, to call: stem *vocā*.

39. Personal Endings. — The Present tense is formed from the Present stem by adding to it the following endings, which should be thoroughly committed to memory.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person	-m (or -ō) ¹	-mus
Second "	-s	-tis
Third "	-t	-nt

All verbs whose Present stem ends in **ā** are classed under the First Conjugation.

40. Vocō, I call. Pres. stem **vocā-**
Princ. Parts, **voc-ō, vocā-re, vocā-vi, vocā-tus**

	SINGULAR	PRESENT TENSE	PLURAL
1.	voc-ō , ² <i>I call</i> ⁴		vocā-mus , <i>we call</i>
2.	vocā-s , ⁵ <i>thou callest (you call)</i>		vocā-tis , <i>you call</i>
3.	voca-t , <i>he calls</i>		voca-nt , <i>they call</i>

41. In the Indicative, **-bā** is the sign of the Imperfect tense. The Imperfect tense of **vocō** consists of the Present stem **vocā** + the Imperfect tense-sign, **bā** + personal endings.

	IMPERFECT TENSE	
1.	vocā-ba-m , <i>I called</i> ⁶	vocā-bā-mus , <i>we called</i>
2.	vocā-bā-s , <i>you called</i>	vocā-bā-tis , <i>you called</i>
3.	vocā-ba-t , <i>he called</i>	vocā-ba-nt , <i>they called</i>

¹ These endings are remnants of old pronouns, used as subjects, which by their form indicate the person of the verb.

² **Voc-ō** is for **vocā-ō**. Instead of **m, ō** is generally used as the ending of the first pers. Pres. Ind. act. In the First Conjugation it absorbs **ā** of the stem. See 39.

³ Observe that in English the personal pronouns, when used as subjects, are expressed and precede the verb; that in Latin they are not expressed as separate words (except for emphasis), but are indicated by suffixes. The same is true of modifications of mood, tense, and number. It is the end of a verb, then, that must be examined to determine its relations of mood, tense, person, and number: **voca-t, calls-he**; i.e. *he calls*.

⁴ Also, *I am calling or do call*.

⁵ Always used when but one person is referred to, and usually translated *you call*.

⁶ Also, and frequently, *I was calling or did call*.

42. Examine the following :—

Agricola nautam vocat, the farmer calls the sailor.

Nautam is the direct object of vocat, and is in the Accusative case.

RULE.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative case.

43.

VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*

nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*

ripa, ae, f., *river bank.*

bona, *good.*

dēnsa, *dense, thick.*

convocō, āre, āvi, ātus, *call together.*

laudō, āre, āvi, ātus, *praise.*

in, prep. with Acc., *into, against; with Abl., in, on, upon, over.*

erant, *they were (there were).*

erat, *he was (there was).*

NOTE.—Inflect with suitable objects selected from the vocabulary convocō and laudō, in the Present and Imperfect tenses, translating the forms in each case.

44.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Agricola nautās vocat. 2. Nauta agricolās in silvam convocābat. 3. Nauta in prōvinciā māgnā est. 4. Agricolās in dēnsās silvās convocābant. 5. Nautae in altā ripā erant. 6. Silva est dēnsa et māgna. 7. Prōvincia māgna est in Galliā. 8. Nautās in insulam māgnam convocābās. 9. Fossae in prōvinciā erant bonae. 10. Nautās et agricolās laudābāmus. 11. In Galliam nautās convocās.

II. 1. The sailor was calling the farmers. 2. The farmers were in the dense woods. 3. The provinces were large. 4. The sailors were on the high river bank. 5. The woods were high and dense. 6. He called the sailors into Gaul. 7. You were calling together the sailors into the large province. 8. The island is large and long. 9. We are praising the farmers in the large province. 10. They were praising the sailors on the island.

LESSON VI

THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES

45. All verbs whose Present stem ends in *ē* are classed under the Second Conjugation.

46. **Moneō**, *I advise or warn*. Pres. Stem **monē-**
Princ. Parts, **mone-ō**, **monē-re**, **mon-uī**, **moni-tus**

SINGULAR	PRESENT TENSE	PLURAL
1. mone-ō , <i>I advise or am advising</i>		monē-mus , <i>we advise, etc.</i>
2. monē-s , <i>you advise, etc.</i>		monē-tis , <i>you advise, etc.</i>
3. mone-t , <i>he advises, etc.</i>		mone-nt , <i>they advise, etc.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. monē-ba-m , <i>I advised or was advising</i>	monē-bā-mus , <i>we advised, etc.</i>
2. monē-bā-s , <i>you advised, etc.</i>	monē-bā-tis , <i>you advised, etc.</i>
3. monē-ba-t , <i>he advised, etc.</i>	monē-ba-nt , <i>they advised, etc.</i>

47. The Imperfect tense of **moneō** consists of the present stem **monē** + the Imperfect tense-sign **bā** + the personal endings. See 39.

NOTE. — Inflect **moneō** in the singular with the direct object **agricolam**, and in the plural with **nautās**. Inflect all the verbs in the following vocabulary with suitable objects selected from Vocabularies 1-3. Translate your forms into English, taking them in irregular order, and render them again into Latin in the same way. Repeat this exercise with every verb-paradigm given in this book.

48.

VOCABULARY

Belgae , ārum , m. pl., <i>the Belgae</i> , ¹ a people of Gaul.	armō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>arm.</i>
Celtae , ārum , m. pl., <i>the Celts</i> , a people of Gaul.	habeō , ēre , uī , itus , <i>have.</i>
cōpia , ae , f., <i>abundance</i> ; in pl., <i>sup-</i> <i>plies, troops.</i>	properō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>hasten.</i>
via , ae , f., <i>way, road.</i>	videō , ēre , vidī , visus , <i>see.</i>
	nōn , adv., <i>not.</i>
	per , prep. w. Acc., <i>through.</i>
	saepe , adv., <i>often.</i>

¹ Many Latin proper names are rendered by the same form into English.

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Belgae per prōvinciam properant. 2. Videō māgnam īnsulam. 3. Gallia longās viās habet. 4. Celtae agricolās in dēnsīs silvīs armābant. 5. Belgās in Galliā saepe vidēbāmus. 6. Belgae cōpiās in prōvinciam vocābant. 7. Dēnsās silvās in īnsulis māgnīs vident. 8. Per māgnās silvās in prōvinciam properābam. 9. Celtās et Belgās in Galliā vidēbat. 10. In viā longā agricolās nōn videt.

II. 1. We were often seeing farmers on the road. 2. They were warning the sailors and farmers. 3. You were hastening into the province. 4. We see the high gates. 5. We were not hastening through the dense forests. 6. There¹ are farmers in the forest and sailors on the island. 7. The Belgae were in the large and dense forests. 8. We were often calling the sailors together into the island.



LESSON VII

THE SECOND DECLENSION—NOUNS IN **-us** AND **-um**

50. Lēgātus , I, m., <i>lieutenant, ambassador</i> ; Stem lēgātō- , base lēgāt-		Bellum , I, n., <i>war</i> ; Stem bello- , base bell-		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS			
				<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SG.	PL.	SG.	PL.
N. lēgāt-us	lēgāt-I	bell-um	bell-a	us	I	um	a
G. lēgāt-I	lēgāt-ōrum	bell-I	bell-ōrum	I	ōrum	I	ōrum
D. lēgāt-ō	lēgāt-Is	bell-ō	bell-Is	ō	Is	ō	Is
Ac. lēgāt-um	lēgāt-ōs	bell-um	bell-a ²	um	ōs	um	a
V. lēgāt-e	lēgāt-I	bell-um	bell-a	e	I	um	a
Ab. lēgāt-ō	lēgāt-Is	bell-ō	bell-Is	ō	Is	ō	Is

51. Nouns in **-us** are usually masculine, in **-um** neuter. The stem ends in **o**, and is formed by dropping **-rum** of the Gen. plur.

¹ Omit *there* in translating,—**Sunt agricolae**, etc. In such sentences *there* is redundant, and has no Latin equivalent.

² All neuter nouns have their Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike, and in the plural they always end in **a**.

Learn carefully the table of terminations, and observe that a noun in **-us** or **-um** of the Second Declension is inflected by joining those endings to the base, which is found by dropping **i** of the Genitive singular.

Inflect all nouns in the following vocabulary.

52. Examine the following : —

Fossae agricolārum erant longae, *the farmers' ditches were long.*

Observe that **agricolārum** limits **fossae**, and is in the Genitive case.

RULE. — A noun limiting another noun and denoting a different person or thing is in the Genitive case.

53. Examine the following : —

1. **Belgae agricolās armant**, *the Belgae are arming the farmers.*

2. **Agricolās Belgae armant**, *the Belgae are arming the farmers.*

3. **Agricolās armant Belgae**, *the Belgae are arming the farmers.*

4. **Armant Belgae agricolās**, *the Belgae are arming the farmers.*

In 1, no special emphasis is laid on any one word; in 2, **agricolās** is emphatic; in 3, **Belgae**; in 4, **armant**.

The normal order of a Latin sentence is: subject, modifiers of the subject, modifiers of the verb, verb; but this order is constantly changed for the sake of emphasis.

54.

VOCABULARY

Aquitānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aquitani*,¹ a people of Gaul.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*

nūntius, ī,² m., *messenger.*

oppidum, ī, n., *town.*

lāta, broad, wide.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attack, assault.*

ad, prep. w. Acc., *to, towards, near.*

multa, *much*, pl. *many.*

quoque, conj., *also* (always following the emphatic word).

¹ Or *Aquitanians*. Many Latin proper names have in their translation both a Latin and an English form.

² Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** often make the Genitive singular in a single **i**, with no change of accent.

55.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppida lātās portās habent. 2. Ad castra Belgārum nau-
tae properābant. 3. Nōn saepe agricolae oppida oppūgnant.
4. Nūntiī in castra Belgārum multās cōpiās convocābant. 5. Op-
pida Aquitānōrum quoque oppūgnābant. 6. In castris Celtārum
nautās armābāmus. 7. Per castra ad oppidum agricolae prope-
rant. 8. Belgae cōpiās in castra convocat. 9. Cetae quoque
ad oppidum saepe properant. 10. Aquitānī castra saepe movē-
bant.

II. 1. The Belgae assault a town of the Celts. 2. The Aequi-
tanians also hasten to the town. 3. The Celts move their¹ camp.
4. We often saw the towns of the Aquitanians. 5. They were
warning the sailors of the province. 6. There² were messengers
of the Belgae in the town. 7. The lieutenants are arming the
farmers in the broad province. 8. We were praising the troops of
the Aquitanians.



LESSON VIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION—
INDIRECT OBJECT

56.

Fidus, m., fida, f., fidum, n., *faithful*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	fid-us	fid-a	fid-um	fid-I	fid-ae	fid-a
G.	fid-I	fid-ae	fid-I	fid-ōrum	fid-ārum	fid-ōrum
D.	fid-ō	fid-ae	fid-ō	fid-īs	fid-īs	fid-īs
Ac.	fid-um	fid-am	fid-um	fid-ōs	fid-ās	fid-a
V.	fid-e	fid-a	fid-um	fid-I	fid-ae	fid-a
Ab.	fid-ō	fid-ā	fid-ō	fid-īs	fid-īs	fid-īs

¹ The possessives *my*, *your*, *his*, *their*, etc., when not emphatic, are frequently left untranslated.

² Omit. See 49, n. 1.

57. Observe that this adjective is declined in the feminine like a noun of the First Declension, and in the masculine and neuter like nouns of the Second Declension in *-us* and *-um* respectively.

Decline together *nauta fidus*, *frumentum multum*, *carrus magnus*. Observe that an adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, but not always in form.

58. Examine the following :—

Belgae populō Rōmānō frumentum dant, the Belgae give grain to the Roman people.

Observe that *populō Rōmānō* represents the persons to whom the grain is given, and that it is in the Dative case.

RULE.—The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is used with verbs of giving, and others whose meaning permits.

59.

VOCABULARY

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania*, a division of Gaul.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.

carrus, I, m., *cart*.

filia,¹ ae, f., *daughter*.

frumentum, I, n., *grain*; pl., *crops of grain*.

Galli, ōrum, m. pl., *Gauls*.

incola, ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

inopia, ae, f., *scarcity, lack*.

populus, I, m., *people*.

Rōmānus, a, um,² *Roman*.

populus Rōmānus,³ *Roman people*.

comparō, āre, āvi, ātus, *prepare, provide*.

dō, dare, dedi, datus, *give*.
contrā, prep. w. Acc., *against*.



GALLI

¹ The Dative and Ablative plural is generally *filiaibus*.

² The adjectives previously given have masculine and neuter forms of the Second Declension.

³ Always in this order, used in the singular, and with the verb in the singular.

60.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frumentī est in Aquitāniā. 2. Gallī carrōs incolīs oppidī māgnī dant. 3. Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum bellum comparābant. 4. Filia bona agricolae nautis frumentum dat. 5. Populus Rōmānus frumentum multum in lātā prōvinciā comparābat. 6. Gallī incolās fidōs māgnōrum oppidōrum armant. 7. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparant. 8. Gallī filiābus agricolārum arma nōn dabant. 9. Filiam bonam nautae in silvā dēnsā vident. 10. Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum properābant.

II. 1. The Gauls give arms to the faithful inhabitants of the towns. 2. Aquitania is in Gaul. 3. The faithful farmers are providing much grain. 4. The sailor's daughter saw the farmers on the high river bank. 5. There is a great scarcity of carts in the province. 6. The Belgae do not give arms to the daughters of the faithful farmers. 7. The Gauls are hastening against the Roman people. 8. The inhabitants of the town were faithful.¹

61.

KINSHIP OF WORDS

Study the following list with great care, and do not leave it until you have thoroughly mastered it, so that you know every Latin word and its English equivalent.

Note all words—marked by double stars—that are related to one another in form and meaning. Learn these by associating them together; as, *arma*, *arms*; *armō*, *I arm*; *vocō*, *I call*; *con-vocō*, *I call together*; *Gallī*, *Gauls*; *Gallia*, *Gaul*.

The words marked with a single star are related to one or more found in other lists. These should be noted and retained in memory with especial care, as an aid to the acquisition of their kindred words. Those similarly marked in subsequent lists refer both backward and forward, and will serve as a review of related words already learned as well as an aid in acquiring new words which are akin to them.

¹ Nom. plur. masc., in agreement with the subject.

62.

WORD LIST I

ad	*comparō	fossa	*longus	porta
*agricola	*contrā	*frumentum	*māgnus	properō
*altus	**convocō	**Galli	*moneō	prōvincia
**Aquitāni	*cōpia	**Gallia	*moveō	quoque
**Aquitānia	dēnsus	*habeō	*multus	rīpa
**arma	*dō	in	*nauta	*Rōmānus
**armō	*erant	*incola	*nōn	saepe
Belgae	*erat	inopia	*nūntius	silva
*bellum	*est	*insula	*oppidum	*sunt
*bonus	et	*lātus	*oppugnō	terra
carrus	*fīdus	laudō	per	via
*castra	*fīlia	*lēgātus	*populus	*videō
Celtae				**vocō



LESSON IX

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES

63.

Regō, I rule. Present Stem **rego-**
 Princ. Parts, **reg-ō, rege-re, rēx-i, rēc-tus**

SINGULAR	PRESENT TENSE	PLURAL
1. reg-ō, I rule, etc.		regi-mus, we rule, etc.
2. regi-s, you rule		regi-tis, you rule
3. regi-t, he rules		regu-nt, they rule

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. regē-ba-m, I ruled or was ruling	regē-bā-mus, we ruled
2. regē-bā-s, you ruled	regē-bā-tis, you ruled
3. regē-ba-t, he ruled	regē-ba-nt, they ruled

64. All verbs whose Present stem ends in **ē** are regularly classed under the Third Conjugation.

The vowel **ē** is dropped before **ō**, becomes **u** before **nt**, and **i** before the other endings of the Present Indicative active. The **ō** of the Imperfect tense is long.

NOTE. — A thorough review should here be made of the preceding verb-paradigms, and the verbs in the following vocabulary should be inflected like *regō*. See also 47, note.

65.

VOCABULARY

<i>animus</i> , I, m., <i>mind, spirit.</i>	<i>ēdūcō</i> , ere, <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductus</i> , <i>lead</i>
<i>proelium</i> , ¹ I, n., <i>battle.</i>	<i>out.</i>
<i>tēlum</i> , I, n., <i>missile, weapon, javelin.</i>	<i>gerō</i> , ere, <i>gessī</i> , <i>gestus</i> , <i>wage, carry</i>
<i>tribūnus</i> , I, m., <i>tribune, a Roman</i>	<i>on.</i>
<i>officer.</i>	<i>incolō</i> , ere, <i>coluī</i> , <i>cultus</i> , <i>live in,</i>
<i>contendō</i> , ere, <i>dī</i> , <i>tentus</i> , <i>contend,</i>	<i>inhabit.</i>
<i>hasten.</i>	<i>quondam</i> , adv., <i>once.</i>
<i>dūcō</i> , ere, <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductus</i> , <i>lead.</i>	<i>cum</i> , prep. w. Abl., <i>with.</i>

66.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerunt.* 2. *Gallī et² Belgae et Aquitānī Galliam incolunt.* 3. *Populus Rōmānus cum Belgīs contendēbat.* 4. *Tribūnus fidus incolīs oppidōrum arma dabat.* 5. *Cōpia tēlōrum in māgnō oppidō Gallōrum erat.* 6. *Tribūnus oppidī incolās ad silvās quondam ēdūcēbat.* 7. *Belgae ad proelium properābant.* 8. *Animus quoque filiae est bonus.* 9. *Populus Rōmānus quondam Galliam regēbat.* 10. *Nautae fidī ad ripam altam contendunt.* 11. *Tribūnōs populī Rōmānī quondam laudābāmus.*

II. 1. The Belgae were carrying on war with the Gauls. 2. The tribune often gives grain to the faithful inhabitants of the town. 3. The Aquitani were contending with the lieutenant's³ forces. 4. There⁴ is a great scarcity of grain in the province of the Roman people. 5. The farmers also were hastening to the large town. 6. They are leading out the inhabitants of the towns into the camp. 7. You were often carrying on war with the Aquitanians. 8. The Celts inhabit the large towns. 9. We were praising the lieutenant's weapons.

¹ See 54, n. 2.

² In a series of words *et* is either used with each additional word or omitted altogether.

³ See 31, 2.

⁴ Omit. See 49, n. 1.

LESSON X

THE SECOND DECLENSION—NOUNS IN **-er** AND **-ir**

67.	Puer, eri, m., boy; Stem puero- , base puer-	Ager, ri, m., field; Stem agro- , base agr-	Vir, i, m., man; Stem viro- , base vir-	TABLE OF TERMI- NATIONS			
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SG. PL.
N.V.	puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī	— I
G.	puer-ī	puer-ōrum	agr-ī	agr-ōrum	vir-ī	vir-ōrum	I ōrum
D.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs	ō īs
Ac.	puer-um	puer-ōs	agr-um	agr-ōs	vir-um	vir-ōs	um ōs
Ab.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs	ō īs

68. Nouns of the Second Declension in **-er** and **-ir** are masculine. The stem ends in **o**, as in nouns in **-us** and **-um**. Note, also, the base to which the endings are joined to make the various case-forms. It is found by dropping **ī** of the Genitive singular.

Observe that the table of terminations is the same as in nouns in **-us**, except that the ending is lacking in the Nominative and Vocative singular.

69. Like **puer**, decline —

gener, eri, m., son-in-law.

socer, eri, m., father-in-law.

liberī, ōrum, m. pl., children (freeborn¹).

armiger, eri, m., armor bearer.

signifer, eri, m., standard bearer.

vesper, eri, m., evening.

Learn these words. Most nouns of the Second Declension in **-er** are declined like **ager**.

70. Examine the following: —

1. **Lēgātum vitā privat**, he deprives the ambassador of life.
2. **Nūntium cūrā liberat**, he frees the messenger from care.



SIGNIFER

¹ Compare **liberī, liber** (*free*) and **liberō** (*deliver*).

Observe that **privat** and **liberat** are verbs of depriving and freeing, and that they are used with the Ablative case without a preposition.

RULE. — Verbs of depriving and freeing take the Ablative without a preposition.

This rule extends to adjectives of like meaning: *filia agricolae cūrā libera*¹ erat, *the farmer's daughter was free from care.*

In case of other verbs of separation the usage varies, some taking the ablative with a preposition, some without, and some admitting either construction.

71.

VOCABULARY

aper, aprī, m., *wild boar.*

cūra, ae, f., *care.*

magister, trī, m., *master, teacher.*

vita, ae, f., *life.*

novus, a, um, *new.*

liberō, āre, āvi, ātus, *free, deliver.*

privō, āre, āvi, ātus, *deprive.*

prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus, *prohibit, keep from, hinder.*

ā,² ab, prep. w. Abl., *from, away from, by.*

72.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tribūnī lēgātōs armīs privant. 2. Magistrī liberōs cūrā liberant. 3. In lātīs et dēnsīs silvīs multōs aprōs vidēs. 4. Ab oppidō in castra nova contendēbant. 5. Gallī multa bella gerunt. 6. Lēgātōs proeliō prohibēbant. 7. Incolae Aquitāniae multa tēla habent. 8. Castra populī Rōmānī māgna erant. 9. Gallī cum Aquitānīs saepe, contendunt. 10. Carrōs ad castra Gallōrum movet. 11. Tribūnī populī Rōmānī nūntiōs vitā privant. 12. Socer generum vitā privat. 13. Multī armigerī in castrīs populī Rōmānī erant.

II. 1. We are freeing the messengers of the Gauls from care. 2. The master's children are in the camp of the Roman people. 3. The Aquitani were waging war near the large and dense for-

¹ From **liber**, **libera**, **liberum**.

² **ā** before consonants, **ab** before vowels and often before consonants.

est. 4. I was hastening from the island to the town. 5. The Gauls were depriving the Roman people of grain. 6. We were keeping the Gauls from battle. 7. The master was giving arms to the farmer's children. 8. There are wild boars in the forest. 9. They were leading out the inhabitants of the town into the fields. 10. The standard bearers of the Roman people hastened into the camp.



LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION IN **-er, -a, -um**—COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE, PREDICATE NOMINATIVE, AND APPOSITIVE

73. Miser, era, erum, wretched. Masc. like puer

SINGULAR			
N.V. miser	miser-a		miser-um
G. miser-I	miser-ae		miser-I
D. miser-ō	miser-ae		miser-ō
Ac. miser-um	miser-am		miser-um
Ab. miser-ō	miser-ā		miser-ō
PLURAL			
N.V. miser-I	miser-ae		miser-a
G. miser-ōrum	miser-ārum		miser-ōrum
D. miser-īs	miser-īs		miser-īs
Ac. miser-ōs	miser-ās		miser-a
Ab. miser-īs	miser-īs		miser-īs

Noster, tra, trum, our, ours. Masc. like aper

SINGULAR			
N.V. noster	nostr-a		nostr-um
G. nostr-I	nostr-ae		nostr-I
D. nostr-ō	nostr-ae		nostr-ō
Ac. nostr-um	nostr-am		nostr-um
Ab. nostr-ō	nostr-ā		nostr-ō

	PLURAL		
N.V. nostr-I	nostr-ae		nostr-a
G. nostr-ōrum	nostr-ārum		nostr-ōrum
D. nostr-Is	nostr-Is		nostr-Is
Ac. nostr-ōs	nostr-ās		nostr-a
Ab. nostr-Is	nostr-Is		nostr-Is

What are the stems of **miser**, masc., fem., and neut.? of **noster**?
What is the base of each word?

Decline **miser agricola**, **noster puer**, **liber populus**.

74. Examine the following :—

1. **Cōstituunt oppidum oppugnāre**, *they decide to attack the town.*
2. **Mātūrat liberōs convocāre**, *he hastens to call the children together.*

Observe that the use of the Infinitive in the above is exactly the same as in the English sentences.

RULE.—The Infinitive is used with verbs meaning to decide, hasten, begin, and in general with those requiring a second action of the same subject to complete their meaning (Complementary Infinitive).

75. Examine the following :—

1. **Aquitāni sunt incolae Galliae**, *the Aquitani are inhabitants of Gaul.*
2. **Aquitāni, incolae Galliae, multa bella gerunt**, *the Aquitani, inhabitants of Gaul, are waging many wars.*

In 1, **incolae** is a predicate noun, and agrees in case with the subject, **Aquitāni**; in 2, it limits **Aquitāni**, denotes the same persons, and agrees with it in case.

RULES.—1. A noun in the predicate, with an intransitive verb, agrees with the subject in case.
2. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in apposition with it, and agrees with it in case.

76.

VOCABULARY

Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetii, liber, era, erum, free.

a people of Gaul.

pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful.

signum, i, n., standard.

cōstituō, ere, i, ūtus, decide, determine.

cottidiānus, a, um, daily.

orēber, bra, brum, frequent, numerous.

mātūrō, āre, āvi, ātus, hasten.

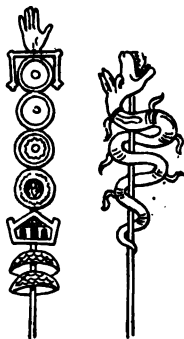
fortissimus, a, um, bravest, very brave.

cottidiē, adv., daily. (Observe the relation between **cottidiānus** and **cottidiē**.)

77.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Belgae Gallōrum fortissimī sunt. 2. Saepe cum Gallis contendunt. 3. Māturat nūntiōs populi Rōmānī in castra convocāre. 4. Cōstituit bellum cum Gallis gerere. 5. Frūmentum Helvētiīs cottidiē dat. 6. Vidēmus in castris signum pulchrum. 7. Filiam agricolae cūrā liberat. 8. Nūntius Gallōrum cūrā liber est. 9. Mātūrābat tēla et signa lēgātis dare. 10. Cōstituit cum Helvētiīs, incolis Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Celtae incolae Galliae sunt. 12. Cōstituit cum multis nautis in oppidum properāre. 13. Socer cum generō in oppidum properābat.



SIGNA

II. 1. The farmer's beautiful daughter is in the large town. 2. We decide to give grain to the messengers of the Roman people. 3. There were frequent battles in the woods. 4. The tribunes decided to give the new weapons and the beautiful standards to the lieutenants. 5. There were daily battles in the province. 6. We see the new standards and arms of the Gauls. 7. The Belgae,¹ the Celts, and the Aquitanians inhabit Gaul, a large land. 8. He was once in Aquitania, a good and beautiful land. 9. The sailors were inhabitants of a large island. 10. The children of the armor bearer are in the camp.

¹ See 66, I, 2.

LESSON XII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, MUTE STEMS — LABIAL AND PALATAL MUTES

78.¹ Stems of the Third Declension end in *t* or a consonant. Those ending in a consonant may be divided into mute and liquid stems.

1. Mute stems may be subdivided into labial, palatal, and lingual stems.

2. Labial stems end in *b* and *p*. Those in *b* (except *chalybs*, *steel*) are feminine; those in *p* are chiefly masculine; none are neuter.

3. Palatal stems end in *c* or *g*. Those in *c* preceded by a consonant or long vowel are chiefly feminine; those in *c* preceded by a short vowel and those in *g* are chiefly masculine.

4. The stem is found by dropping the ending *-is* of the Genitive singular: *dux*, *duo-is*, stem *duo-*. The base is the same as the stem.

5. The Nominative is formed from the stem by adding *s*, but note vowel changes in some instances, as in *princeps*, *principis*, stem *princip-*; *c* and *g* of the stem unite with *s* of the Nominative ending to form *x*.

79. PALATAL AND LABIAL STEMS

Dux, ducis, m., leader; Stem and base duo-		Lēx, lēgis, f., law; Stem and base lēg-		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. <i>dux</i>	<i>duo-ēs</i>	<i>lēx</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>ēs</i>
G. <i>duo-is</i>	<i>duo-um</i>	<i>lēg-is</i>	<i>lēg-um</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>um</i>
D. <i>duo-I</i>	<i>duo-ibus</i>	<i>lēg-I</i>	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>ibus</i>
Ac. <i>duo-em</i>	<i>duo-ēs</i>	<i>lēg-em</i>	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>ēs</i>
Ab. <i>duo-e</i>	<i>duo-ibus</i>	<i>lēg-e</i>	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>ibus</i>

¹ This article is to be used chiefly for reference.

Princeps, ipis, m., leading man, chief;
Stem and base princip-

		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. princip-s	princip-ēs	s	ēs
G. princip-is	princip-um	is	um
D. princip-i	princip-ibus	i	ibus
Ac. princip-em	princip-ēs	em	ēs
Ab. princip-e	princip-ibus	e	ibus

80.

VOCABULARY

auxilium, I, n., aid, help.

Dumnorix, Igis, m., Dumnorix.

filius,¹ I, m., son.

Orgetorix, Igis, m., Orgetorix.

rēx, rēgis, m., king.

parō, āre, āvi, ātus, prepare.

pōnō, ere, posui, positus, pitch,
place.

portō, āre, āvi, ātus, carry.

continenter, adv., continually.

quod, conj., because.

81.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Orgetorix Helvētiōrum quondam erat dux. 2. Dumnorix bellum continenter gerit. 3. Agricolaē frūmentum in oppidum Helvētiōrum portābant. 4. Princeps castra in agris pōnēbat. 5. Helvētīi fortissimī sunt quod bellum saepe gerunt. 6. Rēx populō Rōmānō auxilium saepe dabat. 7. Filii rēgis in castris Gallōrum erant. 8. Mī fili,¹ dux castra movet, quod inopia frūmentī in agris est. 9. Belgae lēgātum ab oppidō prohibēbant. 10. Dux Helvētiōrum frūmentum parāre cōstituit.

II. 1. The king gives arms to his son. 2. My son, the Gauls are keeping the lieutenant from their towns. 3. The Helvetii are continually waging war. 4. The chief decides to move the camp. 5. The farmers do not often give aid to the inhabitants of the town. 6. The lieutenant is hastening to prepare arms. 7. They called the leaders together into the camp. 8. The children of the kings were in the town. 9. The laws of the Roman people were often good.

¹ The Vocative of *filius* is *filii*. My son = *mī filii*.

LESSON XIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, LINGUAL STEMS

82.¹ Nouns whose stems end in a lingual (t, d) drop the final letter of the stem before *s* in forming the Nominative singular: *aestās*, *aestāt-is*, stem *aestāt-*. Neuters have for the Nominative the simple stem with some modifications: *caput*, *capit-is*, stem *capit-*. Neuter stems ending in two consonants or in *-at*, drop the final letter in forming the Nominative: *cor*, *cord-is*, *heart*, stem *cord-*; *poēma*, *poēmat-is*, *poem*, stem *poēmat-*.

83. <i>Miles</i> , <i>militis</i> , m., <i>soldier</i> ; <i>Obses</i> , <i>idis</i> , m. and f., <i>hostage</i> ; TABLE OF TERMINATIONS						
Stem and base <i>milit-</i>		Stem and base <i>obsid-</i>		NATIONS		
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	
N.V. <i>miles</i> ²	<i>milit-ēs</i>	<i>obses</i>	<i>obsid-ēs</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>ēs</i>	— <i>a</i>
G. <i>milit-is</i>	<i>milit-um</i>	<i>obsid-is</i>	<i>obsid-um</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>is</i> <i>um</i>
D. <i>milit-I</i>	<i>milit-ibus</i>	<i>obsid-I</i>	<i>obsid-ibus</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>I</i> <i>ibus</i>
Ac. <i>milit-em</i>	<i>milit-ēs</i>	<i>obsid-em</i>	<i>obsid-ēs</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>ēs</i>	— <i>a</i>
Ab. <i>milit-e</i>	<i>milit-ibus</i>	<i>obsid-e</i>	<i>obsid-ibus</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>e</i> <i>ibus</i>

84. <i>Aestās</i> , ³ <i>ātis</i> , f., <i>summer</i> ; <i>Caput</i> , ⁴ <i>itis</i> , n., <i>head</i> ; TABLE OF TERMINATIONS						
Stem and base <i>aestāt-</i>		Stem and base <i>capit-</i>		NATIONS		
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	
N.V. <i>aestās</i>	<i>aestāt-ēs</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>capit-a</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>ēs</i>	— <i>a</i>
G. <i>aestāt-is</i>	<i>aestāt-um</i>	<i>capit-is</i>	<i>capit-um</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>is</i> <i>um</i>
D. <i>aestāt-I</i>	<i>aestāt-ibus</i>	<i>capit-I</i>	<i>capit-ibus</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>I</i> <i>ibus</i>
Ac. <i>aestāt-em</i>	<i>aestāt-ēs</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>capit-a</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>ēs</i>	— <i>a</i>
Ab. <i>aestāt-e</i>	<i>aestāt-ibus</i>	<i>capit-e</i>	<i>capit-ibus</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>e</i> <i>ibus</i>

84.

VOCABULARY

auctoritās, *ātis*, f., *authority*.
ofvitās, *ātis*, f., *stale*.

Germanī, *ōrum*, m. pl., *the Germans*.

¹ This article is to be used chiefly for reference.

² Note the change of *i* of the stem to *e* in the Nominative after *t* and *d* are dropped and *s* added.

³ Nouns whose stems end in *-tāt* often have *ium* in the Gen. plur.

⁴ See 82. Make a careful study of the stem and base of each noun of the third declension as you meet it in the vocabularies.

iugum, I, n., *yoke, ridge.*

īumentum, I, n., *beast of burden.*

mūrus, I, m., *wall.*

palūs, ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

pīlum, I, n., *javelin.*

expūgnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *storm, take by assault.*

mittō, ere, misi, missus, *send.*

perducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead along, prolong, construct.*

dē, prep. w. Abl., *down from, concerning.*



PILUM

85.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Iumentum iugum portat. 2. Multi obsidēs in Germānōrum oppidis erant. 3. Germānī multōs milītēs in palūdem mittunt. 4. Auctōritās Orgetorigis māgna erat in civitāte. 5. Dux Germānōrum oppidum Helvētiōrum expūgnābat. 6. Pīla militum longa et māgna erant. 7. Principēs civitātis ad Dumnorigem nūntium dē bellō mittunt. 8. Lēgātus fossam et mūrū ad castra perducit. 9. Germānī cum Helvētiis bellum saepe gerēbant. 10. Dux militum mūrū perducere cōstituit quod Germānī ad castra properābant.

II. 1. The authority of the state was great. 2. They send messengers to the Germans concerning war. 3. The lieutenant was leading the soldiers through the long marsh. 4. The Gauls were storming the town because there was a great supply of arms (in it).¹ 5. They are leading the beasts-of-burden into the camp. 6. Orgetorix had great authority in the state. 7. The soldiers are prolonging the ditch through the fields of the Helvetii. 8. You were sending hostages to the leader of the Germans. 9. You are sending the children of the chiefs as² hostages to the camp of the Roman people.

¹ Words in parentheses are not to be translated.

² Sign of apposition.

LESSON XIV

WORD LIST II—HOW TO READ—READING LESSON

86. Review Word List I., together with the discussion of the kinship of words (61, 62). Be able to give the English equivalent of each word in this list. Do the same with each list as you reach it.

87.

WORD LIST II

ā, ab	**cottidiānus	**gerō	*noster	*puer
aestās	**cottidiē	Helvētīl	*novus	pulcher
*ager	crēber	*incolō	*obses	*quod
animus	cum	**iugum	Orgetorix	*quondam
aper	*cūra	**iumentum	palūs	**regō
**armiger	dē	*lēx	*parō	**rēx
**auctoritās	**dūcō	**liber	**perdūcō	**signifer
**auxilium	Dumnorix	**liberī	pīlum	**signum
**caput	**dux	**liberō	poēma	socer
*civitās	**ēdūcō	*magister	*pōnō	tēlum
*cōstituō	*expūgnō	*mātūrō	*portō	*tribūnus
*contendō	*filius	*mīles	**prīnceps	vesper
*continenter	*fortissimus	*miser	*prīvō	*vir
*cor	*gener	*mittō	proelium	*vita
	Germānī	*mūrus	*prohibeō	

88.

HOW TO READ

1. Study, as a whole, the passage given, taking in at one view as many words as the eye can see.

2. Try to recall words previously given, and study into the meaning of those related to them in form.

3. Note forms and relations of words so as to see the entire thought before making any attempt at translation. In doing this, follow strictly the Latin order, observing carefully the arrangement of words and the marks of punctuation.

4. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

89. READING LESSON : *Incolae Galliae*

Belgae et¹ Aquitānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt. Belgae sunt fortissimī et cum Germānīs saepe contendunt. Helvētiī sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod cum Germānīs continenter contendunt. Helvētiōrum dux quondam erat Orgetorīx, cūius² auctōritās māgna erat in civitāte.

Decline all nouns and adjectives, and give the principal parts of all verbs in this passage.

LESSON XV

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES—THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION—QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

90. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs whose Present stem ends in *i* : *mūni-ō*, *mūni-re*, Pres. stem *mūni-*.

91. *Audiō*, *I hear*. Pres. stem *audi-*.
Princ. Parts, *audi-ō*, *audi-re*, *audi-vi*, *audi-tus*

SINGULAR	PRESENT TENSE	PLURAL
1. <i>audi-ō</i> , <i>I hear</i> , <i>am hearing</i>		<i>audi-mus</i> , <i>we hear</i> , <i>are hearing</i>
2. <i>audi-s</i> , <i>you hear</i> , etc.		<i>audi-tis</i> , <i>you hear</i> , etc.
3. <i>audi-t</i> , <i>he hears</i> , etc.		<i>audi-unt</i> , <i>they hear</i> , etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE	
1. <i>audi-ē-ba-m</i> , <i>I heard</i> , <i>was hearing</i>	<i>audi-ē-bā-mus</i> , <i>we heard</i> , etc.
2. <i>audi-ē-bā-s</i> , <i>you heard</i> , etc.	<i>audi-ē-bā-tis</i> , <i>you heard</i> , etc.
3. <i>audi-ē-ba-t</i> , <i>he heard</i> , etc.	<i>audi-ē-ba-nt</i> , <i>they heard</i> , etc.

92. Observe that in the third person plural of the Present *u* precedes the personal ending, but that in every other form of that tense the endings are joined directly to the stem.

¹ Omit. See 66, I, 2. ² *whose*, Gen. sing. of the relative pronoun *qui*, *who*.

93. Observe that the Imperfect tense consists of the Present stem + ē + tense-sign -bā + the personal endings.

Review carefully the Present and Imperfect tenses of the preceding conjugations,¹ and notice differences in formation where they occur. Inflect, as above, the following verbs of the fourth conjugation: *sentīō, I feel; vincīō, I bind; invenīō, I find.*

94. Examine the following:—

Puer magistrum virtūte praestat, the boy excels his master in valor.

Observe that *virtūte* is in the Ablative case, and expresses that in which the boy excels.

RULE.—The Ablative is used to express that in respect to which anything is or is done (Ablative of Specification).

95.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, ae, f., friendship.

cohors, rtis, f., cohort.

pax, pacis, f., peace.

virtūs, ūtis, f., manhood, valor, bravery.

cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, establish.

manēō, ēre, mānēi, mānsus, remain, await.

mūniō, ire, ivi, itus, fortify.

praestō, āre, stitī, stitus, excel.

veniō, ire, vēni, ventus, come.

nōnne, -ne, num, signs of questions to be explained in this lesson.

96. Examine the following:—

1. *Nōnne Helvētī pācem cōfirmant? do not the Helvetians establish peace?*

2. *Num est palūs magna? is the marsh large (i.e. the marsh is not large, is it)?*

3. *Vidēne signum? do you see the standard?*

Observe that the particle² *nōnne* suggests the answer yes, *num* the answer no, and that *-ne*, always enclitic,³ simply asks for information.

¹ See 603.

² See 19.

³ The name enclitic is given to *-ne* and other words which like it are appended to some other word.

97. Examine the following : —

1. *Nōnne Caesar pugnābat? was not Caesar fighting?*

Pugnābat,	Sānē pugnābat,	Vērō,	Etiam,	Ita,
<i>He was.</i>	<i>Certainly he was.</i>	<i>Certainly.</i>	<i>Yes (lit., even).</i>	<i>Yes (so).</i>

2. *Num Caesar agricola erat? Caesar was not a farmer, was he?*

Minimē,	Minimē vērō,	Nōn erat
<i>By no means.</i>	<i>Certainly not.</i>	<i>No.</i>

Observe that the Latin has no words for *yes* and *no*, and that answers are given by the repetition of the verb in the proper form, either with or without certain affirmative or negative particles, or by the use of these particles without the verb.

98.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Nōnne¹ Helvētīi pācem et amīcītiā cum multis cīvitatibus cōfirmābant? Sānē cōfirmābant.* 2. *Num² puer magistrum auctōritātē³ praestat? Minimē vērō.* 3. *Venitne⁴ in castra Helvētīōrum? Nōn venit.* 4. *Num vident multās cohortēs militum? Minimē.* 5. *Manēbatne cum tribūnis militum in agrō?* 6. *Virne tēlum et signum puerō dat?* 7. *Nōnne cohortēs populi Rōmānī Gallōs virtūte praestant?* 8. *Num pācem cum Belgīs cōfirmant?* 9. *Cōstituuntne ā castrīs ad oppidum properāre? Vērō.* 10. *In nōn māgnam palūdem veniēbant.*

II. 1. *Do we not⁵ come daily into the beautiful fields? Certainly we do.* 2. *Does the man excel the boy in valor? Certainly.* 3. *Do not the leaders of the Helvetians wage war continually?* 4. *Was not the valor of the Roman cohorts great? It was.* 5. *Were the Romans giving hostages and establishing peace? (They were not, were they?)* 6. *Do the Germans excel many states in valor? Certainly they do.* 7. *Were not the children of the leaders coming into the town with (their)⁶ masters.* 8. *The bravest of the Gauls wage war continually with the Germans.*

¹ See 96, 1.

² See 96, 2.

³ See 94.

⁴ See 96, 3.

⁵ See 96, 1.

⁶ See 85, n. 1.

LESSON XVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION — LIQUID AND SIBILANT STEMS

99. Liquid Stems. —

Legiō, ōnis, f., <i>legion</i> ; Stem and base, legiōn-		Cōnsul, is, m., <i>consul</i> ; Stem and base, cōnsul-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. legiō	legiōn-ēs	cōnsul	cōnsul-ēs
G. legiōn-is	legiōn-um	cōnsul-is	cōnsul-um
D. legiōn-i	legiōn-ibus	cōnsul-i	cōnsul-ibus
Ac. legiōn-em	legiōn-ēs	cōnsul-em	cōnsul-ēs
Ab. legiōn-e	legiōn-ibus	cōnsul-e	cōnsul-ibus

Labor, ōris, m., <i>labor</i> ; Stem and base, labor-		Flūmen, inis, n., <i>river</i> ; Stem and base, flūmin- ¹	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. labor	labōr-ēs	flūmen	flūmin-a
G. labōr-is	labōr-um	flūmin-is	flūmin-um
D. labōr-i	labōr-ibus	flūmin-i	flūmin-ibus
Ac. labōr-em	labōr-ēs	flūmen	flūmin-a
Ab. labōr-e	labōr-ibus	flūmin-e	flūmin-ibus

100. The table of terminations is the same as for lingual stems, except in the Nominative and Vocative singular. See 102.

101. Observe that in neuters the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are alike, and that they end in the plural in *ā*.

102.² Rules for Gender and Formation of Nominative from Stem. — 1. Stems in *l* form the Nominative without *s*, and are masculine.

2. Stems in *r* form the Nominative without *s*, and most in *-er* and *-or* are masculine, most in *-ar* and *-ur* are neuter.

3. Most masculines and feminines in *-n* drop *n* in the Nominative, and change the preceding vowel to *ō*: *virgō*, *virgin-is*, f., *virgin*, stem *virgin-*. Most neuters retain *-n*, and change a preceding *i* to *e*. See *flūmen*, 99.

¹ Note change of vowel in the Nominative and Vocative.

² To be used chiefly for reference.

103. Sibilant Stems.—Many nouns with stems in *-or* were originally stems in *-os*, but *s* has changed to *r* between two vowels in the oblique cases.¹

104. Mōs, mōris, m., custom;

Stem *mōs-*, base *mōr-*

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	<i>mōs</i>	<i>mōr-ēs</i>
G.	<i>mōr-is</i>	<i>mōr-um</i>
D.	<i>mōr-i</i>	<i>mōr-ibus</i>
Ac.	<i>mōr-em</i>	<i>mōr-ēs</i>
Ab.	<i>mōr-e</i>	<i>mōr-ibus</i>

Genus,² eris, n., kind;

Stem *genes-*, base *gener-*

	SING.	PLUR.
	<i>genus</i>	<i>gener-a</i>
	<i>gener-is</i>	<i>gener-um</i>
	<i>gener-i</i>	<i>gener-ibus</i>
	<i>genus</i>	<i>gener-a</i>
	<i>gener-e</i>	<i>gener-ibus</i>

Corpus, oris, n., body; Stem corpor-, base corpor-

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	<i>corpus</i>	<i>corpor-a</i>
G.	<i>corpor-is</i>	<i>corpor-um</i>
D.	<i>corpor-i</i>	<i>corpor-ibus</i>
Ac.	<i>corpus</i>	<i>corpor-a</i>
Ab.	<i>corpor-e</i>	<i>corpor-ibus</i>

105.

VOCABULARY

Arar,³ aris, m., the Arar.

homō, inis, m. and f., man, human being.

lēgātīō, ōnis, f., embassy.

nōmen,² inis, n., name.

Rhēnus, i, m., the Rhine.

dēfendō, ere, i, fēnsus, defend.

trādūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, transport, lead or carry across.

finitimus, a, um, neighboring, noun in m. pl., neighbors.

ita, adv., thus, so.

semper, adv., always.

106.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Orgetorix lēgātīōnem ad finitimās cīvitātēs mittit. 2. Dux Rhēnum⁴ militēs trādūcēbat. 3. Homō bonus nōmen cīvitātis semper dēfendit. 4. Lēgātus cōpiās ad Ararim dūcit. 5. Helvētīi frūmentum parāre et cum finitimīs pācem cōfirmāre cōsti-

¹ All cases except the Nominative and Vocative.

² See 101.

³ Acc. sing. **Ararim**.

⁴ Acc., governed by **trāns** in composition.

tuunt. 6. Multōs mōrēs multōrum hominum vidēbās. 7. Castra in ripīs Rhēnī pōnēbat. 8. Nōnne incolae oppidum saepe dēfendunt? 9. Lēgātus legiōnem ad castra dūcit. 10. Ita hominem vitā privābat.

II. 1. Do not the men defend the town? 2. They lead their forces across the river Rhine.¹ 3. Does he establish peace and friendship with his neighbors? (He does not, does he?) 4. The king leads his forces through the marsh to the river Arar. 5. I do not hear the man's name. 6. The Helvetii were establishing friendship with the neighboring states. 7. They were sending an embassy to the Germans. 8. The consul did not come to the town.

LESSON XVII

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN -*ō*, PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES — READING LESSON

107. **Capi-ō**, *I take, capture, catch*. Stem **capi-**.
Princ. parts, **capi-ō**, **capi-re**, **cēp-i**, **capi-tus**

SINGULAR	PRESENT TENSE	PLURAL
1. capi-ō , <i>I take, am taking</i>		capi-mus , <i>we take, are taking</i>
2. capi-s , <i>you take, etc.</i>		capi-tis , <i>you take, etc.</i>
3. capi-t , <i>he takes, etc.</i>		capi-unt , <i>they take, etc.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE	
1. capiē-ba-m , <i>I took, was taking</i>	capiē-bā-mus , <i>we took, were taking</i>
2. capiē-bā-s , <i>you took, etc.</i>	capiē-bā-tis , <i>you took, etc.</i>
3. capiē-ba-t , <i>he took, etc.</i>	capiē-ba-nt , <i>they took, etc.</i>

Observe resemblances in this paradigm to that of **audiō**, 91. Note also some differences in quantity.

In the following vocabulary inflect **faciō** and **oñficiō** in the same way.

¹ Acc. in apposition with the word for *river*.

108.

VOCABULARY

aedificium, *I, n., building.*Casticus, *I, m., Casticus.*coniūratiō, *ōnis, f., conspiracy.*nōbilitās, *ātis, f., nobility, the nobles.*amicus, *a, um, friendly; as a noun, friend.*clārus, *a, um, bright, famous.*privātus, *a, um, private.*cōnficiō, *ere, fēci, factus, make together with, finish, accomplish.*faciō, *ere, fēci, factus, make, do.*incendō, *ere, I, cēnsus, set on fire.*renovō, *āre, āvi, ātus, renew.*

109.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi privāta aedificia incendēbant. 2. Casticus coniūratiōnem in civitate facit. 3. Finitimī Helvētiōrum nōn semper amīcī erant. 4. Nōne Orgetōrix coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis facit? 5. Pācem et amicitiam cum Helvētiis renovābat. 6. Erat dux clārus in civitate. 7. Num Orgetōrix dux Helvētiōrum fidus est? 8. Orgetōrixne bellum cum Rōmānis cōnficit? 9. Casticus nōn erat amicus populī Rōmānī. 10. Dumnorix, amicus Orgetōrigis, princeps erat in civitate.

II. 1. Orgetōrix decides to make a conspiracy of the nobility. 2. The Helvetii were hastening to set their private buildings on fire. 3. They are renewing peace and friendship with (their) neighbors. 4. They were taking many towns of our¹ neighbors. 5. Our name is famous in the province. 6. They were giving arms to our friends. 7. They were finishing many wars in our province. 8. The leader is capturing many beasts-of-burden in the camp of the Helvetians.

110. READING LESSON: *Orgetōrigis Coniūratiō.*

Orgetōrix coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis facit et cum finitimīs civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōnfirmit. Frūmentum quoque parāre māturat, quod Helvētīi cōpiās per nostram prōvinciam ēdūcere cōstituunt. Oppida et privāta aedificia incendunt. Dumnorix, princeps in civitate, et Casticus quoque Orgetōrigī auxilium dant.

¹ Use the proper form of *noster*.

LESSON XVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION—I-STEMS—THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

111.¹ Vowel-stems of the Third Declension end in *i*.² The Nominative singular of masculines and feminines is formed regularly by adding *s* to the stem.

The Nominative singular of neuters is usually the same as the stem with the change of *i* to *o*. If *i* of the stem is preceded by *-al* or *-ar*, *i* is dropped, or, in a few cases, changed to *e*: *animal*, *animāl-is*, stem *animāl-*; *calcar*, *calcār-is*, *spur*, stem *calcār-*; *mare*, *mar-is*, stem *mar-*.

I-stems end regularly in *-ium* in the Genitive plural. All masculines and feminines ended originally in *-im* in the Accusative singular, but *i* has been changed to *o* except in a few forms.

Some masculines and feminines, and almost all neuters, have the Ablative singular in *-ī*.

Masculines and feminines fluctuate between *-is* and *-ōs* in the Accusative plural, but all neuters have *-ia*.

112. I-stems include: (*a*) nouns of the Third Declension in *-ēs*, *-is* and *-o* having in the Genitive the same number of syllables as in the Nominative; (*b*) those in *-er* (except *pater*, *māter*, *frāter*, and *accipiter*); (*c*) neuters in *-al*, *-ar*, which have lost a final *e*.

113. *Hostis*,³ *is*,
m. and f.,
enemy;

Turris, *is*, *f.*,
tower;

Mare, *is*,
n., *sea*;

TABLE
OF TERMINA-
TIONS
M. & F. N.

Stem *hosti*-⁴

Stem *turri*-⁴

Stem *mari*-⁴

Stem *animali*-⁴

N.V. *host-is*

turr-is

mar-o

animal

is

o

G. *host-is*

turr-is

mar-is

animāl-is

is

is

D. *host-I*

turr-I

mar-I

animāl-I

I

I

Ac. *host-em*

turr-im(em)

mar-o

animal

em, im

o

Ab. *host-e(I)*

turr-I(o)

mar-I

animāl-I

o, I

I

¹ To be used chiefly for reference.

² Usually in the plur.

³ Two stems in *-u* occur.

⁴ What is the base of this word?

N.V. host-ēs	turr-ēs	mar-ia	animāl-ia	ēs	ia
G. host-ium	turr-ium	mar-ium	animāl-ium	ium	ium
D. host-ibus	turr-ibus	mar-ibus	animāl-ibus	ibus	ibus
Ac. host-is(ēs)	turr-is(ēs)	mar-ia	animāl-ia	ēs, is	ia
Ab. host-ibus	turr-ibus	mar-ibus	animāl-ibus	ibus	ibus

114. Examine the following : —

1. In prōvinciam multis cum¹ cīvibus venit, *he comes into the province with many citizens.*
2. In castra multis militibus contendit, *he hastens into the camp with many soldiers.*

RULE. — The Ablative with *cum* is used to express accompaniment, but in military phrases *cum* may be omitted, especially when there is a modifying adjective.

115.

VOCABULARY

castellum, I, n., <i>fortress, redoubt.</i>	dispōnō, ere, posui, positus, <i>set, place.</i>
cīvis, is, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i>	
finis, is, m., <i>end, limit, pl., territory.</i>	occupō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>seize, occupy.</i>
praesidium, I, n., <i>guard, garrison, protection.</i>	autem, postpositive conj., ² <i>but, however.</i>
rēgnum, I, n., <i>kingdom, royal power.</i>	
commūniō, īre, īvi, itus, <i>fortify on all sides.</i>	-que, ³ enclitic conj., <i>and.</i>

116.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs oppida occupant et praesidia dispōnunt. 2. Castris multis militibus in castra hostium⁴ veniēbat. 3. In finēs prōvinciae veniēbat et castra commūniēbat. 4. Rēgnum in civitate finitimorum occupat. 5. Dux hostium multōs obsidēs, principēs civitatis, dat, et pācem amicitiamque cum populō Rōmānō

¹ Notice the position of *cum*.

² A postpositive word is one that is placed after one or more words in its clause.

³ -que is always attached to the latter of the two words which it connects.

⁴ See 112, a.

cōnfirmat. 6. Nōne¹ est in agrīs cōpia frūmentī? 7. Cōpia frūmentī in agrīs est. 8. Rēgnum in cīvitatē Gallōrum occupat, castella autem nōn commūnit. 9. Hostēs oppidum nōn capiunt quod fossae lātae et mūrī altī sunt. 10. Lēgātōs cum multīs militibus ad princīpem hostium mittunt, quod nova bella gerit.

II. 1. The leaders of the enemy send ambassadors concerning peace. 2. They were coming with many soldiers into the territory of the enemy. 3. They were assaulting the town because the wall was not high. 4. They are placing garrisons in the towns of the enemy. 5. We were coming with our friends. 6. We are bringing supplies into the camp, because the enemy are coming with many soldiers. 7. The leaders of the enemy were fortifying redoubts, but were not calling (their) soldiers together. 8. The lieutenant with many soldiers is seizing the town, but he is not placing a garrison in the fortress.

LESSON XIX

THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS, FUTURE TENSE— THE SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

117. In the First and Second Conjugations -bī is the sign of the Future tense.

The Future tense of *vocō* consists of the Present stem *vocā* + the Future tense sign -bī + the personal endings.

The Future tense of *monē* consists of the Present stem *monē* + the Future tense sign -bī + the personal endings.

118.

SINGULAR

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>vocā-b-ō, I shall call</i> | <i>monē-b-ō, I shall advise</i> |
| 2. <i>vocā-bi-s, you will call</i> | <i>monē-bi-s, you will advise</i> |
| 3. <i>vocā-bi-t, he will call</i> | <i>monē-bi-t, he will advise</i> |

¹ See 96.

PLURAL

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. vocā-bi-mus, <i>we shall call</i> | monē-bi-mus, <i>we shall advise</i> |
| 2. vocā-bi-tis, <i>you will call</i> | monē-bi-tis, <i>you will advise</i> |
| 3. vocā-bu-nt, <i>they will call</i> | monē-bu-nt, <i>they will advise</i> |

Observe that *i* of the tense sign is lost before *-ō* in the first person singular, and changes to *u* before *-nt* in the third person plural.

119. Examine the following: —

1. **Nostri in castra veniēbant**, *our men were coming into the camp.*
2. **Māgna oum parvis compōnit**, *he compares great things with small.*

RULE. — Plural adjectives are quite freely used as nouns, the masculine to denote persons, the neuter to denote things.

NOTE. — This usage occurs sometimes in the singular.

120.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|---|
| Caesar , aris, m., <i>Caesar.</i> | parvus , a, um, <i>little, small.</i> |
| iniūria , ae, f., <i>injury, harm, injustice.</i> | pervenio , ire, vēni, ventus, <i>come through, arrive.</i> |
| maleficiūm , i, n., <i>wrong-doing, mischief.</i> | recūsō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>refuse.</i> |
| Rhodanus , i, m., <i>the Rhone.</i> | circum , prep. w. Acc., <i>around, about.</i> |
| inimicus , a, um, <i>unfriendly, hostile, as subst. enemy (personal), foe.</i> | sine , prep. w. Abl., <i>without.</i> |
| | ubi , adv. and conj., <i>where, when.</i> |

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar nostrōs in castra convocābit. 2. Per prōvinciam multōs sine iniūriā maleficiōque dūcēbat. 3. Circum castra castris dispōnit. 4. Bona amicis nōn recūsābit. 5. Pācem amicitiamque cum hostibus nōn cōfirmābimus. 6. In insulā cum multis amicis manēbimus. 7. Mūrum ā castris ad oppidum perducit et praesidia dispōnit. 8. Caesar cum nostris ad flūmen Rhodanum pervenit. 9. Circum oppida praesidia dispōnit ubi inimicās cōpiās videt. 10. Bellum cum hostibus saepe renovābunt.

II. 1. Will Caesar refuse to send ambassadors to the Helvetians? 2. The forces of the Roman people will seize the hostile camp. 3. Our¹ men were contending in daily battles. 4. You will hasten through the broad fields of the enemy and attack their towns. 5. Around the towns of the enemy were many² high towers. 6. When we arrive at the city we shall call our men together. 7. We are prolonging walls, and placing garrisons in the towns. 8. They are leading their forces across the river Rhone. 9. We shall always praise the good.



LESSON XX

I-STEMS (*Continued*) — WORD LIST III — READING LESSON

122. Certain nouns of the Third Declension are inflected in the singular like consonant stems,³ and in the plural like i-stems.⁴ These were originally vowel stems, but have taken on certain consonantal forms. Among these are monosyllables with two consonants preceding the vowel of the stem ending, together with *imber*, *bris*, *m.*, *shower*, and some other dissyllables. These are best classed as i-stems.

123. Urbs, urbis, f., city;		Nox, noctis, f., night;		Imber, bris, m., shower;	
Stem <i>urbi-</i> , base <i>urb-</i>		Stem <i>nocti-</i> , base <i>noct-</i>		Stem <i>imbri-</i> , base <i>imbr-</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. <i>urb-s</i>	<i>urb-ēs</i>	<i>nox</i>	<i>noct-ēs</i>	<i>imber</i>	<i>imbr-ēs</i>
G. <i>urb-is</i>	<i>urb-ium</i>	<i>noct-is</i>	<i>noct-ium</i>	<i>imbr-is</i>	<i>imbr-ium</i>
D. <i>urb-i</i>	<i>urb-ibus</i>	<i>noct-i</i>	<i>noct-ibus</i>	<i>imbr-i</i>	<i>imbr-ibus</i>
Ac. <i>urb-em</i>	<i>urb-is(ēs)</i>	<i>noct-em</i>	<i>noct-is(ēs)</i>	<i>imbr-em</i>	<i>imbr-is(ēs)</i>
Ab. <i>urb-e</i>	<i>urb-ibus</i>	<i>noct-e</i>	<i>noct-ibus</i>	<i>imbr-e</i>	<i>imbr-ibus</i>

Observe that in the Nominative singular of *imber*, *e* is inserted before *-ri* of the stem.

¹ See 110, 1.² *many and high.*³ See 70.⁴ See 113.

124.

VOCABULARY

iter, itineris, n., <i>road, march, journey.</i>	angustus, a, um, <i>narrow.</i>
Iūra, ae, m., <i>Jura, a mountain range in Gaul.</i>	conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, <i>come together, assemble.</i>
mōns, montis,¹ m., <i>mountain.</i>	pertineō, ēre, uī, tentus, <i>extend, pertain.</i>
pars, partis,¹ f., <i>part, direction.</i>	inter, prep. w. Acc., <i>between, among.</i>
pōns, pontis,¹ m., <i>bridge.</i>	neque . . . neque, <i>correl. conj., neither . . . nor.</i>
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., <i>the Sequani.</i>	tum, adv., <i>at that time, then.</i>

125.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Erat iter inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. 2. Iter per finēs Sēquanōrum angustum erat. 3. Pōns erat in² flūmine Arare. 4. Cum māgnā parte cīvium in castra veniēbat. 5. Hostēs ad flūmen Ararim perveniēbant. 6. Militēs multās in partēs urbium conveniunt et in Galliam contendunt. 7. Helvētī cōstituunt incolās montium per prōvinciam dūcere. 8. Tum erant neque castella neque praesidia in oppidis. 9. Mūrus ā monte ad flūmen pertinēbit. 10. Hostēs māgnam partem montium occupābant.

II. 1. A wall and a ditch extend from the mountain to the camp. 2. A narrow road extends from a part of the mountain to the river. 3. They come together and prepare to lead their forces to Mt. Jura. 4. They arrive at the bridge, and place redoubts on the river bank. 5. The enemy lead a part of their forces across the river Rhone and assault the towns. 6. There were then neither good roads nor high buildings in Gaul. 7. They wage war continually because they excel the rest of the Gauls in valor. 8. Caesar will refuse the right-of-way³ to the Helvetians. 9. The Helvetii assemble near the river and decide to lead their forces across.

¹ To what class of stems does this word belong?

² *over.*

³ *iter.*

126.

WORD LIST III

**aedificium	**compōnō	incendō	**neque . . . neque	*recūsō
**amicitia	**cōnficiō	**inimicus	**nōbilitās	*rēgnum
**amicus	cōnfirmō	*iniūria	**nōmen	*renovō
angustus	*coniūratiō	inter	**nōnne	Rhēnus
animal	*cōnsul	**inveniō	*nox	Rhodanus
Arar	*conveniō	*ita	num	semper
audiō	corpus	*iter	**occupō	*sentīō
autem	dēfendō	Iūra	pars	Sēquanī
Caesar	**dispōnō	labor	parvus	sine
**capiō	**faciō	**lēgatiō	pāx	*trādūcō
*castellum	**finis	**legiō	*pertineō	*tum
Casticus	**finitimus	**malefīcium	**perveniō	*turre
*circum	*flūmen	manēō	*pōns	*ubi
*civis	*genus	mare	*praesidium	urbs
*clārus	*homō	mōns	*praestō	**veniō
*cohors	*hostis	mōs	*privātus	vinciō
**commūniō	imber	**mūniō	**que	*virtūs
		**ne		

127.

READING LESSON : *Duo*¹ *Itinera*

Erat iter angustum per finēs Sēquanōrum inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. Erat per prōvinciam quoque iter. Helvētī ē finibus exīre² cōstituunt et per prōvinciam cōpiās ēdūcere. Ubi Caesar hōc³ audit, properat ab urbe, et in Galliam venit. Helvētīs iter per prōvinciam recūsāt et mūrū ad montem Iūram perdūcit. Tum praesidium dispōnit et castella commūnit.

¹ *duo, two.*

² *exīre, go forth*, Pres. Inf. of irreg. verb *exēō*.

³ *hōc, this*, Acc. sing. neut. of *hic, haec, hōc*.

LESSON XXI

THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS, FUTURE TENSE—
THE THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN -*io*, FUTURE—THE
DOUBLE DATIVE

128.

SINGULAR

1. <i>rega-m</i>	<i>audia-m</i>	<i>capia-m</i>
2. <i>regē-s</i>	<i>audiē-s</i>	<i>capīē-s</i>
3. <i>rege-t</i>	<i>audie-t</i>	<i>capie-t</i>

PLURAL

1. <i>regē-mus</i>	<i>audiē-mus</i>	<i>capīē-mus</i>
2. <i>regē-tis</i>	<i>audiē-tis</i>	<i>capīē-tis</i>
3. <i>rege-nt</i>	<i>audie-nt</i>	<i>capie-nt</i>

Observe the similarity in the inflection of these three verbs. The Future first sing. of *regō* is formed by changing *e* of the stem to *a*, and adding the personal ending *m*. The *e* of the stem is retained in the other forms.

The Future of *capīō*, stem *capie-*, is formed in the same way.

The Future of *audiō* is formed in the first sing. by changing the stem vowel to *ia* and adding the personal ending *m*, and in the other forms by changing it to *iē* and adding the personal endings.

The *ē* is long in the second sing. and in the first and second plural.

129. Examine the following: —

Caesari erat cūrae, it was a care to Caesar (it was to Caesar for a care).

The Latin often uses a Dative of the object for which, together with a Dative of the person for whom, where the English uses a predicate noun and an indirect object. This is called the double Dative, and is found principally with the verb *sum*.

130.

VOCABULARY

impedimentum, I, n., *hindrance*, **cōnscrībō**, ere, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptus**,
pl. *baggage*. **enroll**.

locus, I, m., *place*, n. in pl. *loca*. **dēligō**, ere, **lēgī**, **lēctus**, *select, choose*.

mors, **mortis**, f., *death*.

impediō, Ire, **ivī**, **itus**, *hinder*.

periculum, I, n., *danger*.

enim, postpositive¹ conj., *for*.

intereā, adv., *in the meantime*.

131.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen erat hostibus impedimentō. 2. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgē dē itinere mittent quod amīcus est Sēquanōrum. 3. Sēquanī Helvētīōs itinere nōn prohibēbunt. 4. Caesar novam legiōnem in Galliā cōnscrībet. 5. Legiō impedimentis praesidiō erat. 6. Caesar bellum in Galliā cōnficiet. 7. Multa oppida capiētis quod multōs militēs habētis. 8. Dux in Galliam māgnis² itineribus contendit, cōpia enim frūmenti nōn māgna est. 9. Intereā ad Sēquanōs lēgātum dē pāce mittet.

II. 1. He was enrolling a new legion in the province. 2. The Sequani did not hinder the march of the Helvetians. 3. The Helvetians will not lead their forces through the territory of the Sequani, for the way is narrow. 4. The bridge was a protection³ to the town. 5. The scarcity of grain was a care to Caesar. 6. Caesar hastens toward the enemy, for they are assaulting the town. 7. In the meantime they will select a place on⁴ the bridge. 8. We shall hasten to the camp, for the danger of death is great. 9. The baggage was a hindrance to Caesar.

LESSON XXII

THE FOURTH DECLENSION—THE PRONOUN **Is**

132. Nouns of the Fourth Declension have stems in **ū**, generally weakened to **i** before **-us**. Those having the Nominative in **us** are masculine with a few exceptions, those in **u** are neuter.

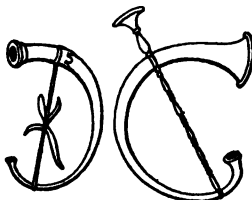
¹ See 115, n. 2.

² by forced marches.

³ See 129.

⁴ in.

133. <i>Cāsus, ūs, m., chance, misfortune ; Stem ? base ?</i>		<i>Cornū, ūs, n., horn, wing, flank ; Stem ? base ?</i>		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS			
				<i>Masc. Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. Neut.</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	
N.V.	<i>cās-us</i>	<i>cās-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ŭ</i>	<i>corn-ua</i>	<i>us ŭ</i>	<i>ŭs ūa</i>	
G.	<i>cās-ūs</i>	<i>cās-uum</i>	<i>corn-ŭs</i>	<i>corn-uum</i>	<i>ŭs ūs</i>	<i>uum uum</i>	
D.	<i>cās-ŭ</i>	<i>cās-ibus</i>	<i>corn-ŭ</i>	<i>corn-ibus</i>	<i>ŭ ŭ</i>	<i>ibus ibus</i>	
Ac.	<i>cās-um</i>	<i>cās-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ŭ</i>	<i>corn-ua</i>	<i>um ŭ</i>	<i>ŭs ūa</i>	
Ab.	<i>cās-ŭ</i>	<i>cās-ibus</i>	<i>corn-ŭ</i>	<i>corn-ibus</i>	<i>ŭ ŭ</i>	<i>ibus ibus</i>	



CORNUA

134. *Domus, f., house, home*, is partly of the Second and partly of the Fourth Declension, and is inflected as follows : —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.V.	<i>dom-us</i>	<i>dom-ūs</i>
G.	<i>dom-ūs (dom-i)</i>	<i>dom-uum (dom-ōrum)</i>
D.	<i>dom-ŭ (dom-ō)</i>	<i>dom-ibus</i>
Ac.	<i>dom-um</i>	<i>dom-ōs (dom-ūs)</i>
Ab.	<i>dom-ō (dom-ŭ)</i>	<i>dom-ibus</i>

135. The demonstrative pronoun *is, this* or *that*, is used more frequently than any other of its class ; it often supplies the place of the lacking personal pronoun of the third person, and its inflection should be thoroughly learned.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G.	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
Ac.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
Ab.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

137.

VOCABULARY

collis, is, m., *hill*.cupīditās, ātis, f., *desire*.exercitus, ūs, m., *army*.Italia, ae, f., *Italy*.adducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead to*, sub *vesperum*, adv. phr., *at or induce.*dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *cast down*.interficiō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *kill*.sub, prep. w. Acc.¹ and Abl., *under*,
at the foot of.*towards evening.*ibi, adv., *there*.

138.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum per finēs Sēquanōrum dūcet. 2. In Italiam contendet et ibi legiōnem cōscribet. 3. Lēgātus castra sub eō colle pōnet. 4. Nostri in finēs hostium sub vesperum pervenient. 5. Orgetorix ad id flūmen castra sub vesperum pōnit. 6. Helvētīi dē rīpīs eius flūminis tēla in hostis dēiciēbant. 7. Dux hostium ad eum pontem exercitum dūcit, ibique castra pōnit. 8. Is cornū exercitūs flūmen trādūcit. 9. Māgna cupiditās rēgnī in eā terrā erat. 10. Auctōritās eōrum principum māgna erat in civitāte.

II. 1. That army was hastening into the territory of the Sequani. 2. Caesar was pitching his camp at the foot of this mountain. 3. The leader will move his camp towards evening. 4. The doors of these houses were wide and high. 5. The enemy were casting down missiles from the hill upon our army. 6. Caesar will hasten into that part of the province and enroll a new legion there. 7. The chances of war are great. 8. The enemy in the meantime were keeping the soldiers of our armies from the march. 9. The Helvetii did not kill a large part of our army.

¹ With Acc. with verbs of motion; with Abl. with verbs of rest.

LESSON XXIII

THE CARDINAL NUMERALS—THE ACCUSATIVE OF TIME
AND SPACE—READING LESSON

139. The Cardinal numerals are the numbers used in counting. The following furnish a basis for forming the others.

1, <i>ūnus</i>	15, <i>quīndecim</i>	80, <i>octōgintā</i>
2, <i>duo</i>	16, <i>sēdecim</i>	90, <i>nōnāgintā</i>
3, <i>trēs</i>	17, <i>septendecim</i>	100, <i>centum</i>
4, <i>quattuor</i>	18, <i>duodēvigintī</i>	101, <i>centum et ūnus</i>
5, <i>quīnque</i>	19, <i>ūndēvigintī</i>	200, <i>ducentī, ae, a</i>
6, <i>sex</i>	20, <i>vigintī</i>	300, <i>trecentī, ae, a</i>
7, <i>septem</i>	21, <i>vigintī ūnus</i>	400, <i>quadringentī, ae, a</i>
8, <i>octō</i>	22, <i>vigintī duo</i>	500, <i>quīngentī, ae, a</i>
9, <i>novem</i>	30, <i>trīgintā</i>	600, <i>sēscētī, ae, a</i>
10, <i>decem</i>	40, <i>quadrāgintā</i>	700, <i>septingentī, ae, a</i>
11, <i>ūndecim</i>	50, <i>quīnquāgintā</i>	800, <i>octingentī, ae, a</i>
12, <i>duodecim</i>	60, <i>sexāgintā</i>	900, <i>nōngentī, ae, a</i>
13, <i>tredecim</i>	70, <i>septuāgintā</i>	1000, <i>mille</i>
14, <i>quattuordecim</i>	75, <i>septuāgintā quīnque</i>	2000, <i>duo milia</i>

Of these, only *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the *hundreds*, and *milia*, the plural of *mille*, are declined.

140.	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
G.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
D.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
Ac.	<i>duōs</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs (trīs)</i>	<i>tria</i>
Ab.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

The hundreds are declined like the plural of *fidus*,¹ and *milia* like the plural of *animal*.

¹ They make the Gen. plur. in *-um* instead of *-ōrum*.

141. Examine the following :

1. **Multōs annōs in oppidō manet**, *he remains many years in the town.*
2. **Ducentōs pedēs liberōs portat**, *he carries the children two hundred feet.*

Observe that **multōs annōs** is in the Accusative case, and expresses duration of time, and that **ducentōs pedēs** is in the same case, and expresses extent of space.

RULE. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the Accusative.

142.

VOCABULARY

Alpēs, ium, f. pl., *the Alps.*

annus, i, m., *year.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt, undertaking.*

grātia, ae, f., *favor, influence.*

hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*

hōra, ae, f., *hour.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*

dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *desist, cease.*

dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, *divide, separate.*

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, *winter, spend the winter.*

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *devastate, lay waste.*

143.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Helvētīi sunt hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīcī.**
2. **Sex hōrās oppidum continenter oppugnābat, sub vesperum autem dē cōnātū dēsistit.**
3. **In Sēquanōrum finēs perveniunt et eōrum agrōs vāstant.**
4. **Flūmen Rhēnus agrōs Helvētiōrum ā Germānis dividit.**
5. **Trēs annōs in Galliā manēbunt.**
6. **Exercitum ab hibernīs in Galliam dūcit.**
7. **Per Alpēs in Galliam contendit et ibi duōs annōs manet.**
8. **Orgetorigis grātia in civitatē māgna erat.**
9. **Trēs legiōnēs in Italiā hiemābant, et Caesar ad eās contendit.**
10. **Duās legiōnēs in Italiā Caesar cōnscribit et cum iis quīque legiōnibus in Galliam iter facere contendit.**
11. **Mūrum sēscentōs pedēs perdūcit.**

II. 1. Caesar leads six legions into winter quarters in Gaul. 2. He marches from Italy into Gaul, and remains there seven years. 3. These legions were wintering in the territory of the Sequani. 4. The Germans are warlike men, and carry on war daily. 5. During¹ three years the influence of this man was great. 6. You will devastate their fields because they are enemies of the Roman people. 7. Does not the river Rhine separate the territory of the Helvetians from the Germans? Yes. 8. They will not desist from their attempt for² three years. 9. They prolonged the ditch two hundred feet from the camp to the town.

144. READING LESSON : *Profectiō³ Helvētiōrum*

Helvētīi per Sēquanōrum finēs iter facere cōstituunt. Caesar autem in Ītaliā contendit et ibi duās novās legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs ab hibernīs dūcit. Cum iis quīque legiōnibus per Alpēs in Galliā iter facit. Helvētīi intereā per finēs Sēquanōrum cōpiās trādūcunt et agrōs eōrum vāstant.

LESSON XXIV

THE IRREGULAR VERB *Sum*, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE
—DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR—THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

145.	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
SING.	1. <i>s-u-m, I am</i>	<i>er-a-m, I was</i>	<i>er-ō, I shall be</i>
	2. <i>es, you are</i>	<i>er-ā-s, you were</i>	<i>er-i-s, you will be</i>
	3. <i>es-t, he is</i>	<i>er-a-t, he was</i>	<i>er-i-t, he will be</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>s-u-mus, we are</i>	<i>er-ā-mus, we were</i>	<i>er-i-mus, we shall be</i>
	2. <i>es-tis, you are</i>	<i>er-ā-tis, you were</i>	<i>er-i-tis, you will be</i>
	3. <i>s-u-nt, they are</i>	<i>er-a-nt, they were</i>	<i>er-u-nt, they will be</i>

Learn the inflection of this verb thoroughly. It occurs very frequently as a principal verb, and is used in the conjugation of certain passive forms.

¹ See 141, 1.

² per with Acc.

³ *The Departure.*

146. Examine the following : —

Domus erat agricolae, the farmer had a house (there was to the farmer a house).

Agricolae is in the Dative case, and denotes the possessor of the house.

RULE. — The Dative is used with *sum* and similar verbs to denote the possessor.

147. The Relative Pronoun.

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

148. Examine the following : —

1. *Militēs quōs videō, the soldiers whom I see.*
2. *Muller quam videō, the woman whom I see.*
3. *Pilum quod habeō, the javelin which I have.*
4. *Ego quī videō, I who see.*
5. *Vir cūius filiī sunt inimici, the man whose sons are hostile.*

Observe the gender, person, number, and case of the above relatives with their antecedents.

RULE. — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number ; but its case depends upon its relation to other words in the sentence.

149.

VOCABULARY

adventus, *ſis*, m., *arrival, approach.*
oōnspectus, *ſis*, m., *sight.*
explōrātor, *ōris*, m., *scout.*
imperātor, *ōris*, m., *commander.*

impetus, *ſis*, m., *attack.*
lacus, *ſis*, m., *lake.*
ōrātiō, *ōnis*, f., *speech, oration.*
spatium, *i*, n., *space.*

laetus, a, um, *glad.*

discēdō, ere, cessā, cessus, *with-*
draw.

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*

trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *give up, sur-*
render.

150. SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE

I. 1. Montēs altī, quōs vidēmus, praesidiō oppidō erant.
2. Castra quae pōnis māgna erunt. 3. Dux cui erat māgnus
exercitus multa oppida capiēbat. 4. Multa aedificia incendunt
in quibus erat cōpia frūmentī māgna. 5. Quī fidī sunt, eis amīcī
sunt fidī.

II. 1. The attack of the Belgae, who had many armed men,
was long. 2. The frequent showers were a hindrance¹ to the
enemy who were pitching their camp. 3. The island to which we
are hastening is large. 4. The river whose banks we see is wide.
5. Caesar was a Roman commander to whom the Gauls often
surrendered their arms. 6. There were many inhabitants in the
city which the Germans attacked. 7. Those who² are faithful
will not be wretched. 8. The farmers whose fields you are
devastating are fleeing to the city.

151. EXERCISES

I. 1. Explōrātōrēs in cōspectū exercitūs interficit. 2. Ā
castrīs hostium māgnū spatium discēdit et duās noctēs in agrīs
manet. 3. Eī explōrātōrī erant arma. 4. In hiberna ad lacum
imperator exercitum dūcēbat. 5. Arma in cōspectū hostium
trādunt, et laetī sunt quod Caesar obsidēs nōn postulat. 6. Mul-
tās et longās ōratiōnēs audiēmus in domibus amīcōrum nostrōrum.
7. In agrīs castra pōnit et ibi adventum inimicārum cōpiārum
impedit. 8. Explōrātōrēs laetī erunt quod hostibus nōn multī
militēs sunt. 9. Nōn māgnū spatium ab oppidō erat lacus
māgnus et pulcher. 10. Eī lēgātō erit grātia in civitāte, quod eī
sunt multī finitimī amīcīque.

¹ See 129.

² Those who = qui.

II. 1. The arrival of the hostile army hindered Caesar's undertakings. 2. There were many towns in sight of Caesar's forces. 3. Is not the consul withdrawing from the lake? He is.¹ 4. I shall have² a supply of grain because I live no³ long distance from the fields. 5. The commander of the enemy's forces has arms and standards in the camp. 6. They will lead their soldiers out of the town and surrender their arms. 7. Three legions of soldiers will attack the town and the camp. 8. You are demanding hostages, but the enemy will not give them.

LESSON XXV

THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM — THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

152. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses — called tenses of completed action — correspond in the main to the tenses of the same name in English, except that the Perfect has two uses, one to express an act done in past time — the Perfect Historical — and one to express an action begun in the past and continued to the present — the Perfect Definite.

Examples : *vocā-v-i*, perfect, *I called* or *have called*.

vocā-v-er-a-m, pluperfect, *I had called*.

vocā-v-er-ō, future perfect, *I shall have called*.

153. To form the Perfect stem *v(u)* is regularly added to the Present stem : *vocā-v-*, but it is sometimes added to the root :⁴ *son-u-*.

154. Latin verbs have special personal endings in certain forms of the Perfect tense. Hence, attention should be given to the following table, as well as to the paradigms.

¹ See 97.

² *mihī erit*. See 146.

³ See 151, I, 9.

⁴ The root is the ultimate part of a word underlying the stem, and contains the idea of the word without modifications.

155.

PERFECT TENSE. — TABLE OF ENDINGS

SINGULAR

1. -ī
2. -stī
3. -t

PLURAL

- mus
-stis
-ērunt or -ēre

156.

SINGULAR

PERFECT

PLURAL

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. vocā-v-ī, <i>I called or have called</i> | vocā-v-ī-mus, <i>we called, etc.</i> |
| 2. vocā-v-ī-stī, <i>you called, etc.</i> | vocā-v-ī-stis, <i>you called, etc.</i> |
| 3. vocā-v-ī-t, <i>he called, etc.</i> | vocā-v-ērunt, <i>they called, etc.</i> |

PLUPERFECT

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. vocā-v-erā-m, <i>I had called</i> | vocā-v-erā-mus, <i>we had called</i> |
| 2. vocā-v-erā-s, <i>you had called</i> | vocā-v-erā-tis, <i>you had called</i> |
| 3. vocā-v-erā-t, <i>he had called</i> | vocā-v-erā-nt, <i>they had called</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. vocā-v-er-ō, <i>I shall have called</i> | vocā-v-er-i-mus, <i>we shall have called</i> |
| 2. vocā-v-er-i-s, <i>you will have called</i> | vocā-v-er-i-tis, <i>you will have called</i> |
| 3. vocā-v-er-i-t, <i>he will have called</i> | vocā-v-er-i-nt, <i>they will have called</i> |

Observe that *ī*, *erā*, *eri* are the tense signs of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect respectively.

Apply 47, note, to *convocō*, *postulō*, and *privō* in the Perfect system.

157. Examine the following : —

1. *Orgetorix erat vir māgnā auctōritāte in civitāte, Orgetorix was a man of great authority in the state.*
2. *Fillae agricolae erant bonō animō, the farmer's daughters were of good disposition.*

Observe that in 1 *auctōritāte* is in the Ablative, and that *māgnā* agrees with it. Observe that in 2 *bonō animō* is used in the same way as *māgnā auctōritāte* except that it is in the predicate.

RULE — The Ablative with an adjective in agreement with it is used to express quality (Ablative of Description).

NOTE. — This ablative may have either an adjective or predicate use.

158.

VOCABULARY

Aeduī , ōrum, m. pl., <i>the Aedui</i> .	concidō , ere, i, cīsus, <i>kill</i> .
clāmor , ōris, m., <i>noise, outcry, clamor</i> .	fugīō , ere, fūgi, fugitus, <i>flee</i> .
Dīvicō , ōnis, m., <i>Divico</i> .	ē , ex, prep. w. Abl., <i>out of, from</i> (ē before consonants only).
eques , itis, m., <i>horseman</i> ; pl. <i>cavalry</i> .	nunquam or numquam , adv., <i>never</i> .
reliquus , a, um, <i>remaining, rest of</i> ;	sed , conj., <i>but</i> .
pl., as subst., <i>the rest</i> .	

159.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitēs erant māgnā virtūte et bonō animō in populum Rōmānum. 2. Ex oppidō ad lacūs silvāsque Caesar reliquōs equitēs convocāverit. 3. Multī militēs castra hostium oppugnāvērunt, reliquī autem māgnō cum clāmōre fugiēbant. 4. Māgnā grātiā Orgetorix erat in cīvitate. 5. Pācem amicitiamque cum hostibus cōfirmāverāmus. 6. Ad urbem properāverās quod militēs inimīci ad castra veniēbant. 7. Reliquī Aeduī in Ītaliā nunquam venient. 8. Dīvicō, Helvētiōrum dux, vir māgnā virtūte erat. 9. Agricolaē fugiēbant, quod Aeduī finitimōs concidēbant.

II. 1. They will have hastened into the town. 2. The horsemen had assaulted the camp of the enemy. 3. The soldiers hastened with a great outcry into the territory of the Aedui. 4. The Aedui will have wintered in the country of the enemy. 5. You will have deprived (your) friends of (their) beasts-of-burden and carts. 6. We shall lead the children of the nobility out of the city into the fields. 7. The horsemen will flee across the Arar into the deep forests. 8. They are warlike men of great courage, and will never surrender their children as hostages. 9. They were men of good disposition,¹ but of small influence.

¹ See 157, 2.

LESSON XXVI

ORDINAL NUMERALS—WORD LIST IV—READING LESSON

160. Ordinal numerals are adjectives derived from the cardinals to express order or place. They are declined like *fidus*, *a*, *um*.

1st, <i>prīmus</i>	9th, <i>nōnus</i>	17th, <i>septimus decimus</i>
2d, <i>secundus</i>	10th, <i>decimus</i>	18th, <i>duodēvicēsīmus</i>
3d, <i>tertius</i>	11th, <i>ūndecimus</i>	19th, <i>ūndēvicēsīmus</i>
4th, <i>quārtus</i>	12th, <i>duodecimus</i>	20th, <i>vicēsīmus</i>
5th, <i>quīntus</i>	13th, <i>tertius decimus</i>	21st, <i>vicēsīmus prīmus</i>
6th, <i>sextus</i>	14th, <i>quārtus decimus</i>	30th, <i>trīcēsīmus</i>
7th, <i>septimus</i>	15th, <i>quīntus decimus</i>	40th, <i>quadrāgēsīmus</i>
8th, <i>octāvus</i>	16th, <i>sextus decimus</i>	50th, <i>quīnquāgēsīmus</i>

161.

VOCABULARY

<i>Allobrogēs</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>m.</i> <i>pl.</i> , <i>the Allobroges.</i>	<i>abdūcō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductus</i> , <i>lead away.</i>
<i>centuriō</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>centurion.</i>	<i>dēcurrō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>cucurrī</i> or <i>currī</i> , <i>run down.</i>
<i>pāgus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>district, canton.</i>	<i>expectō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>expect, await.</i>
<i>sarcīna</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>bundle; pl., personal baggage.</i>	<i>inflūō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>fluxī</i> , <i>fluxus</i> , <i>flow into.</i>
<i>Tigurīnus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>Tigurinus.</i>	<i>intercōdō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>cessī</i> , <i>cessus</i> , <i>come or be between.</i>
<i>vīcus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>village.</i>	<i>paene</i> , <i>adv.</i> , <i>almost.</i>
<i>divīsus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>divided.</i>	
<i>varius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>varied, different.</i>	

162.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Per finēs hostium tertiam partem cōpiārum trādūcunt et in finibus Aeduōrum reliquōs milītēs expectant. 2. Aeduī, quod Helvētīi paene in cōspectū nostrī exercitūs agrōs eōrum vāstant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 3. Decimae legiōnis milītēs dē colle in castra dēcurrunt. 4. Civitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs divisa est, quōrum ūnus est Tigurīnus. 5. Nōne milītēs nōnae legiōnis sarcinās in itinere portant? 6. Allobrogēs quoque, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs habēbant, ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt. 7. Caesar milītēs quārtae legiōnis et variōs centuriōnēs

exspectāre cōstituit. 8. Flūmen Arar per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īfluit. 9. Prima cohors septimae legiōnis in vīcum Allobrogum venit. 10. Oppida expūgnābant et incolārum liberōs obsidēs abdūcēbant.

II. 1. Divico was the chief of the embassy. 2. Caesar kills a third part of the Helvetians. 3. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields of the Aedui, and storming their towns almost in sight of our army. 4. The soldiers of the tenth legion will run down to the river. 5. They will lead a fourth part of their forces across the river Arar. 6. The sixth cohort of the third legion will await the arrival of the rest of the cohorts. 7. The third district of the Helvetii is awaiting a supply of grain. 8. The soldiers are fleeing from the woods in¹ different directions. 9. The rest of the states will never send ambassadors to Caesar concerning peace.

163.

WORD LIST IV

*abducō	*dēligō	**impediō	*primus
*adducō	*dēsistō	*imperātor	**quārtus
*adventus	**discēdō	*impetus	**quattuor
Aeduī	Dīvicō	*īnfluō	*quī
Allobrogēs	dīvidō	**intercēdō	quīnque
Alpēs	*domus	**intercā	*reliquus
annus	**ducentī	*interficiō	sarcina
*bellicōsus	**duo	**is	*sed
*cāsus	ē, ex	Ītalia	septimus
*centuriō	enim	lacus	*sex
*clāmor	*eques	laetus	spatium
collis	*exercitus	*locus	sub
*cōnātus	*explōrātor	*mors	**tertius
*conclūdō	*exspectō	nōnus	Tigurīnus
cōnscribō	*fugiō	*nunquam	*trādō
*cōnspectus	grātia	ōratiō	trāns
cornū	**hiberna	paene	**trēs
cupiditās	**hiemō	pāgus	varius
*decimus	hōra	periculum	*vāstō
*dēcurrō	**ibi	**pēs	vīcus
*dēiciō	**impedimentum	*postulō	*vīgintī

¹ *in* with Acc.

164.

READING LESSON

Helvētīi per angustās viās et finēs Sēquanōrum cōpiās trādūcunt et in Aeduōrum finēs perveniunt, eōrumque agrōs vāstant. Aeduī, quod Helvētīi paene in cōspectū nostrī exercitūs agrōs eōrum vāstābant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē auxiliō mittunt. Allobrogēs quoque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. Tum Caesar ad Helvētiōs legiōnēs dūcere cōstituit. Ad ūnam partem Helvētiōrum pervenit, quae flūmen Ararim trānsibat,¹ et māgnam partem eōrum interficit. Tum pontem in Arare facit et ita cōpiās trādūcit.



LESSON XXVII

THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM—THE
ABLATIVE OF TIME

165. The Perfect stem of a few words of the Second Conjugation is formed by adding **▼(u)** to the Present stem: **dēleō**, stem **dēlē-**; Perfect stem **dēlēv-**; Perfect tense **dēlēvī**; but most verbs add **▼(u)** to the stem clipped of its characteristic vowel: **moneō**, stem **monē-**; Perfect stem **monu-**, Perfect tense **monuī**.

166.

	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	<i>I have advised, etc.</i>	<i>I had advised, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have advised, etc.</i>
SING.	1. mon-u-ī	mon-u-era-m	mon-u-er-ō
	2. mon-u-i-stī	mon-u-erā-s	mon-u-erī-s
	3. mon-u-i-t	mon-u-era-t	mon-u-erī-t
PLUR.	1. mon-u-i-mus	mon-u-erā-mus	mon-u-erī-mus
	2. mon-u-i-stis	mon-u-erā-tis	mon-u-erī-tis
	3. mon-u-ērunt	mon-u-era-nt	mon-u-erī-nt

State in regard to this verb and those in the following vocabulary its: Present stem, Perfect stem, tense-signs and personal endings in the perfect system.

Apply 47, note, to the verbs in the following vocabulary.

¹ *was crossing.*

167. Examine the following : —

1. *Tertiā hōrā in castra venit, he comes into camp at the third hour.*
2. *Tribus annis multa oppida dēlēbīt, within three years he will destroy many towns.*

Observe that in 1 *hōrā* expresses the time when he comes, and in 2 *tribus annis* expresses the time within which he will destroy.

RULE. — Time when and within which is expressed by the Ablative case.

168.

VOCABULARY

<i>dēlēō, ēre, ēvī, ētus; destroy, blot out.</i>	<i>terreō, ēre, uī, itus, frighten.</i>
<i>iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, order.</i>	<i>timeō, ēre, uī, —, fear.</i>
<i>praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, furnish.</i>	<i>ācritēr, adv., sharply, fiercely.</i>
<i>retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, hold back, restrain, retain.</i>	<i>facile, adv., easily.</i>
<i>teneō, ēre, uī, tus, hold.</i>	<i>cis, prep. w. Acc., on this side of.</i>
	<i>propter, prep. w. Acc., on account of.</i>

169.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Hostēs lēgātōs Rōmānōrum multās hōrās in oppidō retinuērunt.* 2. *Ūna pars Helvētiōrum cis flūmen Ararim erat.* 3. *Primā hōrā milītēs oppidum oppūgnāre iussit.* 4. *Aeduī multōs equitēs Rōmānis praebruērunt.* 5. *Hostēs nōmen populi Rōmāni semper timuerant.* 6. *Propter altam fossam Rōmāni oppidum nōn expūgnāverant.* 7. *Quīque hōris vicum hostium facile dēlēbis.* 8. *Quārtā hōrā hostēs cōpiās ē castrīs ēdūcunt et ad flūmen Ararim contendunt.* 9. *Caesar exercitum in castrīs retinuit, quod equitēs expectābat.* 10. *Caesar centuriōnēs iussit milītēs convocāre, et tum trāns flūmen exercitum dūcit.*

II. 1. Within four years Caesar will have destroyed many towns of the enemy. 2. The Romans will not easily seize the town on account of the bravery of the enemy. 3. The lieutenant will have held back the tenth legion, but he will send the seventh

as an aid¹ to Caesar. 4. Caesar had ordered the lieutenants to call together the soldiers at the third hour. 5. Within two years Caesar will have laid waste a great part of Gaul. 6. The district Tigurinus was on this side of the river Arar, but the rest of the Helvetii were across the river. 7. The Aedui will furnish grain and cavalry to the Romans. 8. In the third year they will hasten to lead the army across the river, and attack the towns of the enemy.



LESSON XXVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER— IRREGULAR NOUNS

170. 1. Nouns in **-ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs** (Gen. **-īdis, -ītis**) are masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ās** (Gen. **-ātis**), **-ēs** (Gen. **-is**) **-is, -ys, -x, -s** (preceded by a consonant), **-dō, -gō** (Gen. **-īnis**), **-iō** (abstract and collective), **-ūs** (Gen. **-ūdis, -ūtis**), are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -t, -men** (Gen. **-inis**), **-ar, -ur, -us** (Gen. **-ōris, -ōris**), are neuter.

These are the general rules for gender of nouns of the Third Declension; but there are many exceptions which should be noted as they occur.

171. In some nouns the stem in some of the cases is irregularly modified.

Senex, senis, m., old man		Iter, itineris, n., journey, road, march	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. senex	sen-ēs	iter	itiner-a
G. sen-is	sen-um	itiner-is	itiner-um
D. sen-i	sen-ibus	itiner-i	itiner-ibus
Ac. sen-em	sen-ēs	iter	itiner-a
Ab. sen-e	sen-ibus	itiner-e	itiner-ibus

¹ See 129.

Bōs, bovis, m. and f., ox, bull, cow

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	bōs	bov-ēs
G.	bov-is	bo-um
D.	bov-I	bō-bus
Ac.	bov-em	bov-ēs
Ab.	bov-e	bō-bus

Vīs, f., force

	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	vīs	vīr-ēs
G.	(vīs)	vīr-ium
D.	(vī)	vīr-ibus
Ac.	vīm	vīr-ēs
Ab.	vī	vīr-ibus

172.

VOCABULARY

cōpiaē domesticāe, f. pl., <i>home supplies.</i>	accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, <i>receive, accept.</i>
dēditō, ōnis, f., <i>surrender.</i>	agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, <i>set in motion, drive, do, act.</i>
Divitiācus, I, m., <i>Divitiacus.</i>	flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>demand.</i>
lātītūdō, inis, f., <i>width.</i>	interscindō, ere, scidī, scissus, <i>cut down, destroy.</i>
Liscus, I, m., <i>Liscus.</i>	suppetō, ere, ivī (īf), itūrus, <i>be at hand.</i>
domesticus, a, um, <i>domestic, private.</i>	ex itinere, adv. phr., <i>on the march.</i>
integer, gra, grum, <i>whole, fresh.</i>	nōndum, adv., <i>not yet.</i>
mātūrus, a, um, <i>ripe.</i>	

173.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Belgae oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 2. Hostēs pontem interscindēbant. 3. Aeduī continenter frūmentum flāgitābant. 4. Caesar principēs Aeduōrum in castra convocāverit. 5. Domesticae cōpiaē Aeduīs nōn suppetēbant. 6. Divitiācus et Liscus, populī Rōmānī amīcī, ad Caesarem veniēbant. 7. Nostri proelium integrīs viribus¹ renovāvērunt. 8. Frūmenta² in agrīs nōndum mātūra sunt. 9. Multa iūmenta ad flūmen māgnā lātītūdine³ agēbat. 10. Ex itinere hostium oppidum oppugnāvit.

II. 1. Caesar kept⁴ demanding ripe grain. 2. He had hastened to drive the beasts of burden across the bridge. 3. They will destroy the bridge, and hasten by forced⁵ marches towards the territory of the Belgae. 4. Caesar will have called Divitiacus

¹ with fresh strength.² the crops of grain.³ See 157.⁴ Use the Imperfect of flāgitō.⁵ māgnis itineribus.

and Liscus into the camp. 5. Caesar will demand home-supplies because the grain in the fields is not yet ripe. 6. They assaulted the towns on the march with fresh¹ strength. 7. A supply of grain was not at hand. 8. When will you send ambassadors concerning a surrender?



LESSON XXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION, EXCEPTIONS TO GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER—READING LESSON

174. In the following list will be found the principal exceptions to the general rules for gender, which will be needed in your work in this book. These words should be thoroughly learned.

collis , is , m., <i>hill</i>	mēnsis , is , m., <i>month</i>
dēns , dentis , m., <i>tooth</i>	mōns , montis , m., <i>mountain</i>
finis , is , m., <i>end, limit</i>	ōrdō , inis , m., <i>order, rank</i>
fōns , fontis , m., <i>fountain</i>	pēs , pedis , m., <i>foot</i>
ignis , is , m., <i>fire</i>	pōns , pontis , m., <i>bridge</i>
iter , itineris , n., <i>journey</i>	sanguis , inis , m., <i>blood</i>
lapis , idis , m., <i>stone</i>	sōl , sōlis , m., <i>sun</i>
vertex , icis , m., <i>summit</i>	

State the rule to which each of the above is an exception.

175. Account for the gender of the following (see 25):—

cōnsul , ulis , m., <i>consul</i>	rēmex , igis , m., <i>rower</i>
dux , ducis , m., <i>leader</i>	senex , senis , m., <i>old man</i>
iūdex , icis , m., <i>judge</i>	soror , ōris , f., <i>sister</i>

176. The Ablative Absolute.—Examine the following:—

Urbe captā, **arma trādidērunt**, *after the city had been captured, they gave up their arms* (lit. the city having been captured).

Observe that **urbe** is in the Ablative, that **captā** agrees with it, and that **urbe captā** shows the time of giving up their arms.

¹ See 173, I., 7.

RULE.—A noun or pronoun limited by a participle is often used in the construction called the Ablative Absolute to denote the time or other circumstances of the action.

NOTE.—The Ablative Absolute is often translated into English by a subordinate clause of time, cause, condition, etc.

177. Observe carefully the translation of the following sentences :—

1. **Datō signō, ad mare properāvērunt,** *at the given signal, they hastened to the sea* (lit. the signal having been given).
2. **Nostris timentibus, proellum hostēs renovāvērunt,** *since our men were afraid, the enemy renewed the battle* (our men being afraid).
3. **Multis occisis, ācritēr pūgnāvērunt,** *although many were killed, they fought fiercely* (many having been killed).

178. Examine the following :—

Caesare duce, oppidum oppūgnāvērunt, *under Caesar's leadership, they attacked the town* (Caesar [being] leader).

RULE.—Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may be used together in the Ablative Absolute.

179.

VOCABULARY

Agmen, inis, n., *line of march.*

Crassus, I, m., *Crassus.*

culpa, ae, f., *fault.*

frīgus, oris, n. (sing. or pl.), *cold.*

meus, a, um, my, mine.

suus, a, um, his, her, their, its.

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell.

inōiūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, accuse.

occidō, ere, I, cōisus, kill.

prōmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, send forward, promise.

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, fight.

fortiter, adv., bravely.

graviter, adv., gravely, severely.

itaque, conj., and so, therefore.

180.

EXERCISES¹

I. 1. **Frūmentum quod Aeduī prōmittēbant² nōndum suppetēbat.** 2. **Graviter Aeduōs incūsāt quod frūmentum nōn praebeant.**

¹ Refer constantly to 176, 177, 178.

² *kept promising.*

3. Dēditionē factā obsidēs et arma Caesarī trādēbant. 4. Caesar āgmine ēductō ad verticem montis altī properāvit. 5. Liscus dīcit : "Culpa mea nōn est." 6. Ponte interscissō āgmen flūmen nōn trādūcēbat. 7. Frūmentum propter frīgora in agrīs nōndum mātūrum erat ; itaque Aeduī nōn praebent. 8. Longum iter, multis prohibentibus, per collēs et montēs faciēbat. 9. Ducentōs pedēs ā vertice eius montis erat pōns.

II. 1. Since¹ the cold was great, the grain was not yet ripe. 2. The fault is mine ; therefore I shall not severely accuse you. 3. Although many were killed,¹ the rest-of-the soldiers fought fiercely. 4. The mountains were high, and so the soldiers were remaining in the fields. 5. When¹ the signal had been given, the line of march hastened to the neighboring hill. 6. In the consulship² of Crassus they took many towns by storm. 7. The soldiers say : "We will wage war bravely, if¹ Caesar is (our) leader." 8. Caesar accused the Aeduans gravely, because grain was not at hand.

181.

READING LESSON

Frūmentum quod Aeduī Rōmānīs prōmittēbant nōn suppetēbat, itaque Caesar id cottīdiē flāgitābat ; Aeduī autem dixerunt³ : "Frūmentum in agrīs propter frīgora nōndum mātūrum est." Caesar principēs Aeduōrum convocāvit, in quibus Divitiācus, amicus populi Rōmānī, et Liscus erant. Graviter eōs incūsāvit quod frūmentum nōn praebērent.⁴ Liscus autem dīcit : "Nōn est mea culpa, sed Dumnorigis. Is contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrātiōnem facit."

¹ Observe all indications of the Abl. Abs.

² Lit. *Crassus being consul*, see 178.

³ *dixerunt*, third pers. plur. of the Perf. of *dīxō*.

⁴ *they did not furnish*.

LESSON XXX

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, THE PERFECT SYSTEM—THE
ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

182. The Perfect stem of verbs of the Third Conjugation is formed in various ways. A large number is formed by adding *-s* to the root: *regō*, *rēxī* (for *reg-sī*).

183. PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
<i>I ruled or have ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I had ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have ruled, etc.</i>
SINGULAR		
1. <i>rēx-i</i>	<i>rēx-er-a-m</i>	<i>rēx-er-ō</i>
2. <i>rēx-i-stī</i>	<i>rēx-er-ā-s</i>	<i>rēx-er-i-s</i>
3. <i>rēx-i-t</i>	<i>rēx-er-a-t</i>	<i>rēx-er-i-t</i>
PLURAL		
1. <i>rēx-i-mus</i>	<i>rēx-er-ā-mus</i>	<i>rēx-er-i-mus</i>
2. <i>rēx-i-tis</i>	<i>rēx-er-ā-tis</i>	<i>rēx-er-i-tis</i>
3. <i>rēx-erunt</i>	<i>rēx-er-a-nt</i>	<i>rēx-er-i-nt</i>

Compare the formation of the Perfect system of this verb with those of the two preceding conjugations. See 156 and 166.

What are the stem, tense signs, and personal endings in the above paradigm?

184. Examine the following:—

1. *Militēs Caesarem liberālitāte laudant, the soldiers praise Caesar for his generosity.*
2. *Multis dē causis Caesar militēs laudāvit, for many reasons Caesar praised the soldiers.*

Observe that *liberālitāte* and *causis* are in the Ablative, and denote cause.

RULE.—The Ablative is used with or without a preposition to denote cause.

NOTE.—The prepositions *dē* and *ex* with the Ablative and *ob* and *propter* with Accusative are used to express cause.

185.

VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason.***frāter**, tris, m., *brother.***fuga**, ae, f., *flight.***furor**, ōris, m., *fury.***initium**, i, n., *beginning.***initium faciō**, *begin.***liberālitās**, ātis, f., *liberality, generosity.***amplus**, a, um, *large, spacious.***reprehendō**, ere, i, **hēnsus**, *blame.***apud**, prep. w. Acc., *at, near, among, in the presence of.*

186.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar Dumnorīgem, frātre^m Divitiāci, cupiditāte reprehenderat. 2. Dumnorix māgnā apud suam civitātem propter liberālitātem grātiā¹ erat. 3. Equitēs hostium initium fugae faciunt. 4. Multis dē causis Caesar pontem in Arare facit et ad hostēs contendit. 5. Intereā in ūnum locum contendērunt et castra mūnire cōstituērunt. 6. Cōpiās ad flūmen dūximus et hostēs ab itinere prohibuimus. 7. Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, in finēs Helvētiōrum propter cupiditātem agrōrum suās cōpiās trādūcēbant. 8. Castra Rōmānōrum ampla erant, quā dē causā hostēs discēdere cōstituērunt. 9. Armis trāditis in dēditionem hostēs Caesar accipit. 10. Primā hōrā ē castris Helvētiōrum ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendimus.

II. 1. For many reasons Caesar decided to attack the enemy near the river. 2. The brother of Divitiacus begins (makes a beginning of) a conspiracy. 3. Caesar praised Divitiacus for his generosity, but blamed Dumnorix for his desire of royal-power. 4. They had sent messengers to Caesar concerning surrender, because they feared the name of the Roman people. 5. He will receive them in² surrender on account of the influence of Divitiacus. 6. Caesar ordered them to hasten toward the hill, and keep the enemy from the march. 7. Caesar hastened with all his troops towards the Helvetians, who sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender. 8. The enemy easily defended the town on account of the width of the ditch.

¹ Abl. of quality. See 157.² in with Acc.

LESSON XXXI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

187. Adjectives of the Third Declension have in the Nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

1. Those of two or three terminations have the same number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive singular, and are vowel stems.

2. Adjectives of three terminations end in the masculine singular in *-er*, feminine *-is*, neuter *-e*. They have regularly *-ī* in the Ablative singular, *-ium* in the Genitive plural, *-ēs* or *-īs* in the Accusative plural of masculines and feminines, and *-ia* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural of neuters.

188. *Ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp, fierce*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.V. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
G. ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-ium	ācr-ium	ācr-ium
D. ācr-I	ācr-I	ācr-I	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
Ac. ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-ēs(īs)	ācr-ēs(īs)	ācr-ia
Ab. ācr-I	ācr-I	ācr-I	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

189. Adjectives of two terminations have but one form for the masculine and feminine.

Facilis, facile, easy

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.V. facil-is	facil-e	facil-ēs	facil-ia
G. facil-is	facil-is	facil-ium	facil-ium
D. facil-I	facil-I	facil-ibus	facil-ibus
Ac. facil-em	facil-e	facil-ēs(īs)	facil-ia
Ab. facil-I	facil-I	facil-ibus	facil-ibus

190. All other adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems, and with the exception of comparatives have but one form for the Nominative singular. A few have *-um* in the Genitive plural.

191.

Ferāx, fertile

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.V. ferāx	ferāx	ferāc-ēs	ferāc-ia
G. ferāc-is	ferāc-is	ferāc-ium	ferāc-ium
D. ferāc-i	ferāc-i	ferāc-ibus	ferāc-ibus
Ac. ferāc-em	ferāx	ferāc-ēs	ferāc-ia
Ab. ferāc-i(e)	ferāc-i(e)	ferāc-ibus	ferāc-ibus

Compare the declension of these adjectives with that of nouns of the Third Declension. See 123.

192. Examine the following : —

1. **Cum olāmōre vērērunt**, *they came with a shout.*
2. **Māgnā celeritāte contēdērunt**, *they hastened with great speed.*
3. **Māgnā oūm celeritāte contēdērunt**, *they hastened with great speed.*

Observe that in 1 and 3 the Ablative with *oūm* and in 2 the Ablative alone expresses the manner of the action.

RULE. — The manner in which an act is performed is expressed by a noun in the Ablative with *oūm* when it has no qualifying adjective, by the Ablative with or without *oūm* when it has a qualifying adjective.

193.

VOCABULARY

audācia , ae, f., <i>boldness, daring.</i>	equester , tris, tre, <i>equestrian.</i>
celeritās , ātis, f., <i>speed, swiftness.</i>	equestrēs cōplae , <i>cavalry forces.</i>
cūstōs , ōdis, m. and f., <i>guard.</i>	fēlix , fēlicis, <i>happy.</i>
subsidiūm , ī, n., <i>help, reinforcement.</i>	fortis , e, <i>brave.</i>
brevis , e, <i>brief, short.</i>	omnis , e, <i>all, every.</i>
difficilis , e, <i>difficult, hard.</i>	pedester , tris, tre, <i>pedestrian.</i>
dissimilis , e, <i>unlike, dissimilar.</i>	pedestrēs cōplae , <i>infantry forces.</i>
	similis , e, <i>like, similar.</i>

Decline **equester**, **fortis**, and **fēlix**.

194.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In finēs Aeduōrum contendērunt et eōrum agrōs vāstāverunt. 2. Cum clāmōre per longam et difficilem viam ad finēs Allobrogum veniēbant. 3. Per brevem facilemque viam suās cōpiās ad collem altum addūxerat. 4. Pedestrēs cōpiae erant Caesarī subsidiō, equestrēs cōpiae impedimentō. 5. Sorōrēs similēs erant, frātēr dissimilēs. 6. Māgnā audāciā in hostēs pedestrēs cōpiās dūxisti. 7. Eā dē causā māgnū numerum obsidum postulāvimus. 8. Cūstōdēs fēlicēs erant, quod oppidum dēfenderant. 9. Caesar omnēs equitēs audāciā laudāvit, quod hostēs ab itinere prohibēbant. 10. Tribus hōrīs mūrum audāciā militum dēlēverit. 11. Oppidō māgnā celeritatē expūgnātō, cūstōdēs in mūrō Caesar posuit.

II. 1. The boy is not happy, because the master blames him. 2. All the army hastens from the camp towards the mountain. 3. Caesar is a man of great influence among his soldiers. 4. The way through our province was easy, through the mountains difficult. 5. The soldiers were brave, because they were fighting in sight of Caesar. 6. The Helvetians will lead their forces with speed across the Rhine to the fertile fields of the Germans. 7. For many reasons Caesar decided to send aid to the Aedui.

LESSON XXXII

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION AND VERBS IN -*io* OF THE
THIRD CONJUGATION, PERFECT SYSTEM—WORD LIST—
READING LESSON

195.

Audiō, ire, ivi, itus

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I heard, have heard, etc.</i>		<i>I had heard, etc.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1. audi-v-i	audi-v-i-mus	audi-v-er-a-m	audi-v-erā-mus
2. audi-v-i-sti	audi-v-i-stis	audi-v-erā-s	audi-v-erā-tis
3. audi-v-i-t	audi-v-ērunt	audi-v-er-a-t	audi-v-er-a-nt

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.

SING.

PLUR.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. audīv-er-ō | audīv-erī-mus |
| 2. audīv-erī-s | audīv-erī-tis |
| 3. audīv-erī-t | audīv-erī-nt |

196.

Capiō, ere, cēpī, captus

PERFECT

I took, have taken, etc.

SING.

PLUR.

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. cēp-I | cēp-i-mus |
| 2. cēp-i-stī | cēp-i-stis |
| 3. cēp-i-t | cēp-ērunt |

PLUPERFECT

I had taken, etc.

SING.

PLUR.

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| cēp-erā-m | cēp-erā-mus |
| cēp-erā-s | cēp-erā-tis |
| cēp-erā-t | cēp-erā-nt |

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.

SING.

PLUR.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. cēp-er-ō | cēp-erī-mus |
| 2. cēp-erī-s | cēp-erī-tis |
| 3. cēp-erī-t | cēp-erī-nt |

Inflect through the Perfect system faciō, facere, fecī, factus, and mūniō, ire, ivī, itus.

197.

VOCABULARY

lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

primā lūce, at daybreak.

profectiō, ōnis, f., *departure, setting*speculātor, ōris, m., *spy*.timor, ōris, m., *fear*.certus, a, um, *fixed, certain*.āvertō, ere, ī, *versus, turn aside*.interdiū, adv., *by day*.noctū, adv., *by night*.[out. quā dē causā, adv. phr., *for this reason, therefore, why*.quārē, adv., *wherefore, why*.

198.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In finēs Aeduōrum Caesar primā lūce pervēnit. 2. Speculātōrēs in finēs hostium noctū pervēnērunt et agrōs eōrum vāstāvērunt. 3. Quā dē causā profectiōnem ex urbe cum omnibus cōpiis properāvit? 4. Helvētiī oppida propter timōrem incolārum castellis mūniverant. 5. Saepe interdiū, saepe noctū āgmen

per finēs Aeduōrum dūximus. 6. Certā dē causā ei¹ timor erat ; quārē iter ā flūmine āvertit. 7. Primā lūce certō ōrdine ē castris exercitum dūxerit et in Helvētiōs impetum fēcerit. 8. Ad portam interdiū pervēnērunt, noctū autem in urbem militēs dūxērunt.

II. 1. He will have turned his march aside from the mountains, because the way is narrow and difficult. 2. The scouts came by night into the towns of the Aedui. 3. The line of march had not yet a fixed order. 4. He will have arrived at daybreak in the towns of the Aedui, who are friends of the Roman people. 5. For a certain reason I have not yet sent the scouts into the camp of the Romans. 6. On account of fear of the enemy he has moved his camp to the river-bank. 7. Why did the scouts come by day into the Roman province?

199.

WORD LIST V

*accipiō	Divitiācus	*interdiū	*prōmittō
**ācer	*domesticus	*interscindō	propter
**ācriter	*equester	*itaque	*pūgnō
**āgmen	*equestrēs cōpiaē	*iubeō	*quā dē causā
**agō	*ex itinere	**iūdex	*quārē
amplus	**facile	lapis	*rēmex
apud	**facilis	*lātitudō	*reprehendō
*audācia	fēlix	*liberālītās	**retineō
**āvertō	ferāx	Liscus	*sanguis
brevis	flāgitō	lūx	*senex
causa	fōns	*mātūrus	**similis
certus	**fortis	mēnsis	sōl
cis	**fortiter	*meus	soror
*cōpiaē domesticaē	frāter	*noctū	*speculātor
Crassus	frīgus	*nōndum	*subsidiū
*culpa	*fuga	*occidō	*suppetō
*cūstōs	furor	*omnis	*suus
*dēditio	graviter	*ōrdō	**teneō
dēleō	īgnis	*pedester	*terreō
dēns	*incūsō	*pedestrēs cōpiaē	**timeō
*dicō	*initium	*praebeō	**timor
**difficilis	*initium faciō	*primā lūce	**vertex
**dissimilis	integer	*profectiō	vīs

¹ See 146.

200.

READING LESSON

Dumnorix, frater Divitiaci, vir magna audacia magnaque gratia apud plebem¹ propter liberalitatem, initium fugae fecit, Helvetiosque per fines Sequanorum traduxit. Eum Caesar ad se² vocavit. Ostendit quae³ in eo reprehenderet⁴ et ei custodes posuit. Labienum⁵ legatum cum duabus legionibus ad montem misit. Prima luce nuntius ad Caesarem venit, qui dixit: "Hostes montem tenent, vidi enim arma Gallorum." Caesar copias in proximum⁶ collem duxit et milites a proelio prohibuit.



LESSON XXXIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES

201. As in English, adjectives have three degrees of comparison,—the positive, comparative, and superlative. Those regularly compared drop the stem vowel of the positive, if there is one, and add *-ior, -ius* to form the comparative, and *-issimus, a, um*, to form the superlative; but

1. Adjectives in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the Nominative.

2. Six adjectives in *-lis* (*facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, graceful; humilis, humble*) form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the stem after its final vowel has been dropped.

¹ *plēbem*, Acc. sing. of *plēbs*, the common people.

² *se*, himself.

³ *quae*, inter. pron. neut., plur., what.

⁴ *reprehenderet*, third pers. sing. Imperf. Subj., he blamed.

⁵ *Labienus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

⁶ *proximum*, the next or nearest.

202. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
dēnsus (dēnso-)	dēnsior	dēnsissimus
fortis (forti-)	fortior	fortissimus
ācer (ācri-)	ācior	ācerrimus
similis (simili-)	similior	simillimus

Compare : altus, brevis, difficilis, liber, potēns, vāstus, laetus, parātus.

203. Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.V. fortior	fortius	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
G. fortiōr-is	fortiōr-is	fortiōr-um	fortiōr-um
D. fortiōr-I	fortiōr-I	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus
Ac. fortiōr-em	fortius	fortiōr-ēs(is)	fortiōr-a
Ab. fortiōr-e(I)	fortiōr-e(I)	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus

All superlatives are declined like fidus, a, um.

204. Examine the following :

1. Honor hominibus cārior vitā est, *honor is dearer to men than life.*
2. Honor hominibus cārior est quam vitā, *honor is dearer to men than life.*

In 1 vitā is in the Ablative case after the comparative cārior :
in 2 vitā is in the Nominative case after cārior with quam, *than*.

RULE. — The Ablative is used after the comparative when quam is omitted ; but when it is expressed the same case follows as precedes.

NOTE. — Quam may be used with any case preceding ; it need not be used after the Nominative or Accusative ; it must be used after the other cases.

205. Examine the following :

1. Puer erat audācior, *the boy was rather bold* (or too bold).
2. Vir fortissimus erat Caesar, *Caesar was a very brave man.*

- RULES.** — 1. The comparative is sometimes used to express a rather high or too high a degree of the quality.
 2. The superlative is often used to express, not the highest, but a very high degree of the quality.

206.

VOCABULARY

honor, ōris, m., *honor*.mora, ae, f., *delay*.tempus, oris, n., *time*.

audāx, ācis, bold.

cārus, a, um, *dear, precious*.parātus, a, um, *prepared, ready*.potēns, entis, *powerful*.vāstus, a, um, *vast*.dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead down*.intrōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead into, introduce*.postquam, conj., *after*.quam, conj., *than*.

207.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī ex cīvitatibus multīs brevī tempore convēnērunt.
 2. Divitiācus Dumnorige potentior erat. 3. Germānī finitimīs fortiōrēs erant. 4. Oppidō expūgnātō, incolae lēgātōs sine morā ad Caesarem dē dēditionē misērunt. 5. Puerī sunt miserrimī quod magister semper amīcōs incūsāt. 6. Puer audācior est quam senex. 7. Dux erat fēlicissimus postquam suās cōpiās māgnā celeritatē ad flūmen dēdūxit.¹ 8. Parātī erant breviōre tempore convenīre. 9. In Galliam Caesar multōs et² fortissimōs milītēs intrōdūxit. 10. Puer ācerrimus erat, nōn autem gracillimus.

II. 1. Life is very precious³ to all men. 2. In a very short time the enemy hastened to the river. 3. The Aedui were more powerful than their neighbors. 4. The march through the territory of the Aedui was very easy. 5. The legions were a great protection to the city. 6. Caesar was in great honor among the Romans. 7. After they had come together⁴ into the vast fields they led their forces down to a very wide river. 8. War is dearer to a soldier than peace.

¹ Trans. *had led down*.² Omit in translating.³ See 205, 2.⁴ Use the Perf.

LESSON XXXIV

THE VERB **Sum**, PERFECT SYSTEM — **Possum** — THE FIFTH
DECLENSION — READING LESSON

208.

Sum, esse, fui

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
<i>I was, have been, etc.</i>	<i>I had been, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been, etc.</i>
SINGULAR		
1. fu-ī	fu-erā-m	fu-er-ō
2. fu-i-stī	fu-erā-s	fu-er-i-s
3. fu-i-t	fu-erā-t	fu-er-i-t
PLURAL		
1. fu-i-mus	fu-erā-mus	fu-er-i-mus
2. fu-i-stis	fu-erā-tis	fu-er-i-tis
3. fu-erunt	fu-erā-nt	fu-er-i-nt

Observe points of resemblance to verbs of the regular conjugations.

209. **Possum**, *I am able, I can*, is compounded of **pot-** (**potis** or **pote**) and **sum**.

Possum, posse, potui

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>I am able, etc.</i>	<i>I was able, etc.</i>	<i>I shall be able, etc.</i>
SINGULAR		
1. pos-sum	pot-eram	pot-erō
2. pot-es	pot-erās	pot-eris
3. pot-est	pot-erat	pot-erit
PLURAL		
1. pos-sumus	pot-erāmus	pot-erimus
2. pot-estis	pot-erātis	pot-eritis
3. pos-sunt	pot-erant	pot-erunt

PERFECT <i>I have been able, etc.</i>	PLUPERFECT <i>I had been able, etc.</i>	FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been able, etc.</i>
SINGULAR		
1. pot-ui	pot-ueram	pot-uerō
2. pot-uisti	pot-uerās	pot-ueris
3. pot-uit	pot-uerat	pot-uerit
PLURAL		
1. pot-uimus	pot-uerāmus	pot-uerimus
2. pot-uistis	pot-uerātis	pot-ueritis
3. pot-uērunt	pot-uerant	pot-uerint

210. The Perfect **potui** is used for **pot-fui**. Compare this paradigm with that of **sum**. Note the change of **t** to **s** before **s**, and the dropping of **f** after **t**.

211. The use of the Infinitive with verbs denoting to be able, dare, undertake, hesitate, and the like, which imply a second act of the same subject is called the Complementary Infinitive. Some examples of this usage have already been given. It is exactly in accord with the English usage.

212. The Fifth Declension. — The stem ends in **ē**.

Diēs, diēi, m., day		Rēs, rei, f., thing		TABLE OF TERMINATIONS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	ēs	ēs
G. diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	ēi	ērum
D. diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	ēi	ēbus
Ac. diem	diēs	rem	rēs	em	ēs
Ab. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	ē	ēbus

213. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of the Fifth Declension that are declined throughout. The others are declined in the singular, and a few are found also in the Nominative and Accusative plural.

Observe that **ē** is long in the Genitive and Dative singular of **diēs**, and short in **rēs**. The **ē** of the stem is shortened in the Genitive and Dative singular when it is preceded by a consonant.

214. Gender.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine with the exception of *diēs*, which is always masculine in the plural, and generally in the singular, except where it refers to some specified time.

215.**VOCABULARY**

aciēs, *ēī*, f., *line of battle*.

Bibracte, *is*, n., *Bibracte*.

bīduum, *ī*, n., *space of two days*.

equus, *ī*, m., *horse*.

manus, *ūs*, f., *hand, band*.

rēs, *rei*, f., *thing, fact, affair*.

scūtum, *ī*, n., *shield*.

cōnfertus, *a, um*, *closely crowded*.

cōnfertissimō agmine, *in close array*.

triplex, icis, *triple*.

compleō, *ēre*, *ēvī*, *ētus*, *fill completely*.

ēmittō, *ere*, *miſi*, *miſsus*, *send out, let loose*.

instruō, *ere*, *struxī*,

structus, *draw up*.

nūntiō, *āre*, *āvī*,

ātus, *announce, proclaim*.

obtineō, *ēre*, *uī*,

tentus, *obtain, hold*.



SCUTUM

216.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Bibracte erat oppidum māgnum Aeduōrum. 2. Caesar iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit quod cōpiam frūmentī obtinēre nōn potest. 3. Equitēs Gallōrum eam rem hostibus eō diē nūntiāvērunt. 4. Itaque Helvētiī dixerunt: "Rōmānī bellicōsī sunt, eōs ab itinere prohibēre nōn possumus." 5. Caesar in colle triplicem aciem quattuor legiōnum instrūxit. 6. In¹ summō colle duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā cōscripserat, dispōnere potuit. 7. Helvētiī cōnfertissimā aciē prīmam nostram aciem oppūgnāvērunt. 8. Caesar lēgātōs ex cōspectū omnium equōs abdūcere iussit. 9. Scūta Gallis māgnō impedimētō ad pūgnam fuērunt. 10. Multī ācritē sine scūtīs pūgnāre poterant. 11. Itaque scūta ē manū ēmīsērunt et sine eis pūgnāvērunt. 12. Multōs diēs in castris hostium fuerint speculātōrēs.

II. 1. Caesar on that day drew up a triple line of battle, and sent one legion as² a guard to the baggage. 2. Scouts will an-

¹ On the top of the hill.

² Double Dative; see 139.

nounce this fact to Caesar at daybreak. 3. The Gauls with a closely crowded line of battle hastened toward our camp. 4. We are able to remain a space of two days in the city. 5. Caesar could station two legions as a guard to the camp. 6. They can make a march of two days toward the enemy who are storming the town. 7. The horses of the Gauls were large and beautiful. 8. Will you not announce this fact to the soldiers who are letting loose the horses in the camp? 9. They cannot fight without shields.

217.

READING LESSON

Caesar, quod exercitui cōpia frūmentī nōn erat, iter ab Helvētīs āvertit et Bibracte,¹ ad oppidum māgnū Aeduōrum, contendit. Eā rē hostibus pēr equitēs nūntiātā,² Helvētīi quoque iter suum āvertere cōstituunt. Caesar in mediō colle³ triplicem aciem quattuor legiōnum īstrūxit; duās enim, quās in Galliā proximē⁴ cōscripserat, praesidiō impedimentīs disposuerat. Gallī fortiter ācritēque pūgnāvērunt, Rōmāni autem māgnā virtūte audāciāque contendērunt et multōs hostium⁵ interfēcērunt.



LESSON XXXV

THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE—THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

218. The passive voice in the Latin corresponds in general to the passive in English.

219. The principal parts of a verb in the passive voice are the first person singular of the Pres. Ind., the Pres. Inf., and the first person singular of the Perf. Ind.: *vocor, vocārī, vocātus sum*.

¹ *ad* is omitted after verbs of motion with names of towns; *hastens to Bibracte*. ² Abl. Abs. ³ *on the middle of the hill*. ⁴ *last, most recently*. ⁵ *many of the enemy*.

220.				
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	TERMINATIONS OF THE PASSIVE
	<i>I am called, etc.</i>	<i>I was called, etc.</i>	<i>I shall be called, etc.</i>	
SING.	1. voc-o-r	vocā-ba-r	vocā-bo-r	-r
	2. vocā-ris(re)	vocā-bā-ris(re)	vocā-be-ris(re)	-ris, -re
	3. vocā-tur	vocā-bā-tur	vocā-bi-tur	-tur
PLUR.	1. vocā-mur	vocā-bā-mur	vocā-bi-mur	-mur
	2. vocā-mini	vocā-bā-mini	vocā-bi-mini	-mini
	3. voca-ntur	vocā-ba-ntur	vocā-bu-ntur	-ntur
	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT	
	<i>I have been called, etc.</i>	<i>I had been called, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been called, etc.</i>	
SING.	1. vocā-t-us sum	vocā-t-us eram	vocā-t-us erō	
	2. vocā-t-us es	vocā-t-us erās	vocā-t-us eris	
	3. vocā-t-us est	vocā-t-us erat	vocā-t-us erit	
PLUR.	1. vocā-t-i sumus	vocā-t-i erāmus	vocā-t-i erimus	
	2. vocā-t-i estis	vocā-t-i erātis	vocā-t-i eritis	
	3. vocā-t-i sunt	vocā-t-i erant	vocā-t-i erunt	

221. Observe that the tense signs in the Present, Imperfect, and Future are the same as in the active voice, and that the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed by combining the Perfect passive participle with the Present, Imperfect, and Future of *sum*.

222. In the preceding paradigm the participle has, for convenience, been given in the masculine only; but it is declined like *fīdus*, and must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case.

223. Notice the change of the tense sign *bi* in the Future to *b* in the first person singular, *be* in the second person singular, and *bu* in the third person plural.

Inflect *armō* and *expectō* in the passive voice.

224. Examine the following: —

1. *Tēlis agricolās armant, they arm the farmers with weapons.*
2. *Pīlō miles pūgnāverat, the soldier had fought with a javelin.*

Tēlis and *pīlō* are in the Ablative case, and denote the means or instrument of an action.

RULE.—The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the Ablative case without a preposition.

225.

VOCABULARY

frūgēs, um, f. pl., *produce, fruits* (of field).

gladius, i, m., *sword.*



GLADIUS

nēmō, —, Dat., *nēmīnī, m., no one.*

trīdium, i, n., *space of three days.*

vāllum, i, n., *rampart, wall.*

appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, call, name.

fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētus, weep, cry

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, assist.

pōscō, ere, popōscī, —, demand.

restituō, ere, i, ūtus, restore.

supersum, esse, fui, futūrus, be over, survive.

226.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In eō locō imperātōrī mora trīdūi erat quod milītēs gladiis scūtisque armābantur. 2. Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum est.¹ 3. Lēgātī flēbant et pācem ab Caesare petēbant. 4. Nauta pilis scūtōque nōn armātur. 5. Suō adventū Caesar obsidēs armaque popōscit. 6. Impedimenta militum iumentis carrisque portāta sunt. 7. Reliquis omnibus in deditiōnem acceptis, Caesar Helvētiōs oppida vicōsque restituere iussit. 8. Milītēs quī superfuērunt tēlis ācriter pūgnāvērunt et proeliō factō māgnīs itineribus quārtō diē in finēs amicōrum pervēnērunt. 9. Nēmō eō diē frūmentō iūtus est. 10. Pūgnātum erit ab hōrā tertiā ad vesperum.

II. 1. The girl was weeping on account of the death of her brother. 2. No one could assist the Helvetians with grain. 3. The fruits of the field were being laid waste. 4. Caesar will demand many hostages. 5. Our soldiers were armed with swords and shields, and fought bravely for many hours. 6. The fields of the Aedui had been laid waste. 7. From this battle not many survived, because of the bravery of our soldiers. 8. The bridge will have been seized within two hours. 9. The baggage will be carried into the camp by beasts of burden.

¹ they fought, lit. it was fought.

227.

READING LESSON

Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum est; nēmō autem āversum¹ hostem vidēre potuit. In eō proeliō Orgetorīgis filiam et ūnum² ē filiīs nostrī militēs cēpērunt, et multōs interfēcērunt. Hominum³ milia CXXX quī superfuērunt māgnīs itinerībūs in finēs Lingonum⁴ contendērunt ibique quārtō diē pervēnērunt. Lingonēs autem eōs nōn iuvāre frūmentō, propter nūntiōs quōs Caesar mīserat, potuērunt. Helvētīi, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs ad eum dē dēditionē mīserunt. Armīs obsidībūsque trādītīs, Caesar eōs in dēditionem accēpit et oppida vicōsque quōs⁵ dēlēverant eōs restituere iussit.



LESSON XXXVI

PREPOSITIONS—THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT

228. Prepositions in Latin are properly used with but two cases, the Accusative and the Ablative.

Some govern the Accusative only, some the Ablative only, and some the Accusative or Ablative with a difference of meaning.

229. Examine the following:—

1. *Ab urbe properāvit, he hastened from the city.*
2. *Ex urbe properāvit, he hastened out of the city.*
3. *In urbem vēnit, he came into the city.*
4. *In urbe manēbat, he remained in the city.*
5. *Sub pontem vēnit, he came under the bridge.*
6. *Sub ponte manēbat, he remained under the bridge.*

¹ the back of an enemy, lit. an enemy turned away. ² one of his sons. ³ one hundred and thirty thousand men. ⁴ the Lingones. ⁵ which: quōs agrees with vicōs, its nearest antecedent, but belongs in thought to oppida also.

RULES. — 1. **Ab** is used where motion away from a place is indicated.

2. **Ex** is used where motion out of a place is indicated.

3. **In** and **sub** govern the Accusative with verbs of motion, the Ablative with verbs of rest.

NOTE. — You have already learned many of the prepositions, together with the cases governed by them. Note those given above as governing either the Accusative or Ablative. Recall those governing the Ablative only, and add to them **prō**, *for, before, in behalf of*, and **cōram**, *in the presence of*; you will then have learned the most important ones governing the Ablative. All others given in this book govern the Accusative.

230. Examine the following: —

Miltēs ā Caesare convocātī sunt, *the soldiers were called together by Caesar.*

Observe the use of **ā** with **Caesare** to express the agent of the action.

RULE. — The voluntary agent of an action is expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the Ablative case.

Notice the one point of difference between this usage and the Ablative of means or instrument. See **224**.

231.

VOCABULARY

campus, **i**, **m.**, *field, plain.*

capra, **ae**, **f.**, *goat.*

lupus, **i**, **m.**, *wolf.*

pābulum, **i**, **n.**, *fodder, forage.*

rūpēs, **is**, **f.**, *rock, cliff.*

dulcis, **e**, *sweet, pleasant.*

herbidus, **a**, **um**, *grassy.*

nūdus, **a**, **um**, *naked, bare.*

sterilis, **e**, *sterile, barren.*

tūtus, **a**, **um**, *safe.*

dēscendō, **ere**, **i**, **scēnsus**, *descend.*

inquit, *he says*, 3d pers. sing. of defective verb.

relinquō, **ere**, **liqui**, **lictus**, *leave.*

respondēō, **ere**, **spondi**, **spōnsus**, *reply, answer.*

cūr, **adv.**, *why.*

hūc, **adv.**, *hither, to this place.*

232.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Capra in campum herbidum vēnit.** 2. **Lupus capram in altā rūpe vidit.** 3. "**Cūr nōn**," inquit¹ lupus, "**relinquis illa**"²

¹ Placed regularly in the midst of a direct quotation.

² *those.*

sterilia loca et hūc in amplōs pulchrōsque campōs dēscendīs ?”
 4. “Nōn relinquam meum locum tūtum,” respondit capra, “neque in herbidōs campōs dēscendam.” 5. Rūpēs, in quā capra erat, appellāta est ā lūpō locus nūdus et sterilis. 6. Castra reliquērunt quod montēs ab hostibus tenēbantur. 7. Sub rūpe in campō herbidō erat dulce pābulum. 8. Num capram reprehendimus quod ab rūpe nōn dēscendit? 9. Rūpēs tūta ā caprā laudāta est. 10. Pābulum in amplō herbidōque campō ā lūpō dulce appellātum est.

II. 1. Goats often leave the naked and barren cliffs and descend into the grassy plains. 2. “There is good forage,” says the wolf, “in the broad fields.” 3. Why were the soldiers praised by their commander? 4. We saw two goats on a high and barren rock. 5. I will descend into the grassy plain because there is sweet forage there. 6. On the third day the grain will be brought from the fields into the cities. 7. We have come hither to the camp because the towns have been attacked by the enemy. 8. The town which was assaulted by the soldiers was called Bibracte. 9. The soldiers will be called together from the towns into the camp by their commander.

233. READING LESSON: *Capra et Lupus*

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem¹ cōnspicātus,² “Cūr nōn,” inquit, “relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca et hūc dēscendīs in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi³ laetum⁴ pābulum offerunt⁵?” Cui⁶ respondit capra: “Mihi⁷ nōn est in animō dulcia tūtis praepōnere.⁸”

¹ stantem, standing, Pres. part. of *stō*, stand, agreeing with *capram*.

² cōnspicātus, Perf. part. of *cōnspicor*, having seen.

³ tibi, to you.

⁶ cui, to whom. Translate to him.

⁴ laetum, pleasant.

⁷ mihi, to me.

⁵ offer.

⁸ praepōnere, to prefer.

LESSON XXXVII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

234. Some adjectives are irregularly compared. The following is a list of the most important : —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus , <i>good</i>	mellior , <i>better</i>	optimus , ¹ <i>best</i>
māgnus , <i>large, great</i>	māior , ² <i>larger, greater</i>	māximus , <i>largest, greatest</i>
malus , <i>bad</i>	pēior , <i>worse</i>	pessimus , ³ <i>worst</i>
multus , <i>much</i>	plūs , <i>more</i>	plūrimus , <i>most</i>
parvus , <i>small</i>	minor , <i>smaller, less</i>	minimus , <i>smallest, least</i>

235.⁴ Some comparatives and superlatives are formed from prepositions or adverbs and have no real positive.

cis , <i>citrā</i> , prep., <i>on this side</i>	citerior , <i>hither</i>	citimus , <i>hithermost</i>
in , <i>intrā</i> , prep., <i>within</i>	interior , <i>inner</i>	intimus , <i>inmost</i>
prae , <i>prō</i> , prep., <i>before</i>	prior , <i>former</i>	primus , <i>first</i>
prope , adv., <i>near</i>	propior , <i>nearer</i>	proximus , <i>nearest, next</i>
ultrā , adv., <i>beyond</i>	ulterior , <i>farther</i>	ultimus , <i>farthest</i>

236.⁴ The positive forms of the following seldom occur

(exterus)	exterior , <i>outer</i>	extrēmus , <i>ourmost</i>
(inferus)	inferior , <i>lower</i>	infimus , <i>lowest</i>
(posterus)	posterior , <i>latter</i>	postrēmus , <i>last</i>
(superus)	superior , <i>higher</i>	suprēmus or summus , <i>highest</i>

237. Examine the following : —

Interior Gallia, *the interior of Gaul.* **Summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain.*

¹ Associate with this *optimist*.

² **māiōrēs** = *ancestors*.

³ Associate with this *pessimist*.

⁴ The teacher should use his judgment as to how many of these should be required.

RULE. — Superlatives (sometimes also comparatives) denoting order and succession are used in agreement with a noun to denote what part of the object is designated. So also *cōterus*, *medius*, *reliquus*.

238. From *senex*, *old man*, and *iuvenis*, *young man*, come the comparatives *senior*, *elder*, and *iūnior*, *younger*.

239.**VOCABULARY**

<i>calamitās</i> , ātis, f., <i>calamity, disaster.</i>	<i>irācundus</i> , a, um, <i>irritable, passionate.</i>
<i>equitātus</i> , ūs, m., <i>cavalry.</i>	<i>āmittō</i> , ere, mīsi, missus, <i>send away, lose.</i>
<i>fābula</i> , ae, f., <i>story, fable.</i>	<i>sustineō</i> , ēre, uī, tentus, <i>sustain, endure.</i>
<i>imperium</i> , ī, n., <i>command, order, government.</i>	<i>diū</i> , adv., <i>long, for a long time.</i>
<i>senātus</i> , ūs, m., <i>senate.</i>	<i>diūtius</i> , adv., <i>longer.</i>
<i>barbarus</i> , a, um, <i>barbarous.</i>	
<i>ferus</i> , a, um, <i>wild.</i>	

240.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. *Fābula dē caprā et lupō optima pulcherrimaque¹ est.* 2. *In silvis Germānōrum erant multa et fera animālia.* 3. *Calamitatē māximā acceptā, omnem equitātum et omnēs cōpiās pedestrēs in castra reduxit.²* 4. "*Imperia Caesaris,*" inquit, "*diūtius sustinēre nōn possumus.*" 5. *Dux Germānōrum est homō barbarus irācundusque cūius imperia diū sustinēmus.* 6. *Omnem senātum omnemque equitātum āmisērunt.* 7. *Imperia ducis mīlitibus ā lēgātis nūntiāta sunt.* 8. *Summus collis ā cōpiīs pedestribus occupātus est.* 9. *In citeriōrem Galliā māximā cum celeritatē contendit.* 10. *Soror meliōre animō est quam frāter.* 11. *In proximō colle ācritēr pūgnātum est.* 12. *Iūnior est puer amīcō suō, senior sorōre.*

II. 1. The best men were violently accused by their irritable and barbarous leaders. 2. Our ancestors were of greater courage than authority.³ 3. The chiefs of Gaul feared the Germans, with whom they had contended in very many battles. 4. The Gauls had lost all their senate and all their cavalry. 5. We cannot

¹ See 205, 2.² Infer meaning.³ See 157.

longer endure the orders of that barbarous and passionate man. 6. You have received a very great disaster on the middle of the hill, and lost all your cavalry. 7. The top of the mountain was being seized by the forces of the enemy. 8. "The story of the goat and the wolf," says he, "is very beautiful." 9. "The forces of Caesar are in farther Gaul," says he, "and will hasten into winter quarters." 10. Our ancestors were very brave and good men.

241.

READING LESSON

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, lēgātī Galliae, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem convēnerunt. Auxilium ab eō petiērunt¹ quod Germanōs timēbant. Prō hīs² Divitiācus locūtus est:³ "Multī Germanī in Galliā sunt, quibuscum⁴ saepe contendimus. Māximam calamitatem accēpimus. Omnem senātum omnemque equitātum amīsimus. Ariovistus eōrum rēx est, homō barbarus et irācundus. Eius imperia diūtius sustinēre nōn possumus. Ad tē⁵ vēnimus auxilium rogātum."⁶



LESSON XXXVIII

THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE—WORD LIST

242. Princ. Parts, moneor, monēri, monitus sum

	PRESENT <i>I am advised, etc.</i>	IMPERFECT <i>I was advised, etc.</i>	FUTURE <i>I shall be advised, etc.</i>
SING.	1. monē-o-r	monē-ba-r	monē-bo-r
	2. monē-ris(re)	monē-bā-ris(re)	monē-be-ris(re)
	3. monē-tur	monē-bā-tur	monē-bi-tur
PLUR.	1. monē-mur	monē-bā-mur	monē-bi-mur
	2. monē-minī	monē-bā-minī	monē-bi-minī
	3. mone-ntur	monē-bā-ntur	monē-bu-ntur

¹ they sought. ² hīs, these; Abl. pl. of hīc, this one. ³ spoke. ⁴ with whom; cum is often attached to pronouns. ⁵ you. ⁶ rogātum, to ask; the supine (a form to be explained later) of the verb rogō. It expresses purpose.

	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	<i>I was or have been advised, etc.</i>	<i>I had been advised, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been advised, etc.</i>
SING.	{ 1. moni-t-us sum 2. moni-t-us es 3. moni-t-us est	moni-t-us eram moni-t-us erās moni-t-us erat	moni-t-us erō moni-t-us eris moni-t-us erit
PLUR.	{ 1. moni-t-i sumus 2. moni-t-i estis 3. moni-t-i sunt	moni-t-i erāmus moni-t-i erātis moni-t-i erant	moni-t-i erimus moni-t-i eritis moni-t-i erunt

243.

VOCABULARY

concordia , ae, f., <i>concord, harmony.</i>	adsum , esse, fui, futurus, <i>be near, assist (with Dat.).</i>
discidium , i, n., <i>quarrel, dispute.</i>	doceō , ēre, uī, tus, <i>teach.</i>
fera , ae, f., <i>wild beast.</i>	laniō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>tear in pieces, mangle.</i>
flētus , ūs, m., <i>weeping.</i>	nārro , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>narrate, tell.</i>
incursiō , ōnis, f., <i>attack, incursion.</i>	petō , ere, ivi, itus, <i>seek, beg, attack</i> (Fourth Conj. in Perf. and Supine systems).
prātum , i, n., <i>meadow.</i>	
puella , ae, f., <i>girl.</i>	
singuli , ae, a, <i>one by one.</i>	

244.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Trēs bovēs in ūnō prātō erant. 2. Concordia apud eōs mākima erat. 3. Quā dē causā ab omnī ferārū incursiōe tūtī erant. 4. Propter autem discidium singulī ā ferīs laniātī sunt. 5. Omnēs quī aderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petēbant. 6. Dumnorix ā Caesare monitus est, coniūrātiōnem autem contrā populum Rōmānum faciēbat. 7. Ā magistrō fābula pulcherrima nārābitur. 8. Concordia dulcis est, discidium autem apud amicōs nōn est bonum. 9. Puerī ā magistrīs docentur. 10. Multa oppida hostiū ā Caesare dēlēbuntur.

II. 1. The farmer was driving his oxen to the river. 2. One had been torn in pieces by the wild beasts. 3. A beautiful fable about three oxen was told that day by the master. 4. The soldiers had not been warned about the danger in the woods. 5. The girl was praised, but her brother says: "The girls are always praised,

the boys never (are).” 6. The enemy had been frightened by the name of the Roman people. 7. Many towns had been destroyed by Caesar. 8. You were hindered by the weeping of your friends.

245.

WORD LIST VI

*aciēs	*cōnfertus	*frūgēs	mora	*trēs
**adsum	*cūr	gladius	nārrō	*respondeō
**āmittō	**dēdūcō	gracilis	*nēmō	*restituō
*appellō	*dēscendō	herbidus	nūdus	rūpēs
*audāx	*discidium	honor	*nūntiō	scūtum
barbarus	**diū	*hūc	*obtimeō	*scnātus
Bibracte	**diūtius	humilis	*pābulum	*singuli
**biduum	doceō	*imperium	*petō	sterilis
bōs	dulcis	*incursiō	*pōscō	*stō
calamitās	**ēmittō	inquit	**possum	**supersum
campus	**equitātus	instruō	**postquam	*sustineō
capra	**equus	**intrōdūcō	**potēns	tempus
*cārus	fābula	*irācundus	*praepōnō	**trīdum
*celeritās	**fera	iuvō	prātum	**triplex
*cēlō	**ferus	laniō	*puella	tūtus
*compleō	**fleō	lupus	**quam	*vāllum
*concordia	**flētus	*manus	*relinquō	*vāstus

246.

READING LESSON: *Trēs Bovēs*

In eōdem¹ prātō erant bovēs trēs qui in māximā concordiā pāscēbantur,² et sic³ ab omni ferārum incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed discidiō inter illōs ortō,⁴ singuli ā feris petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet quantum bonī sit⁵ in concordiā.

¹ the same. ² used to feed: the form will be explained later. ³ thus.
⁴ having risen among them. ⁵ how much good there is.

LESSON XXXIX

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES—REVIEW OF COMPARISON

247. *Ūllus, any*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	ŭllus	ŭlla	ŭllum
G.	ŭllus	ŭllus	ŭllus
D.	ŭlli	ŭlli	ŭlli
Ac.	ŭllum	ŭllam	ŭllum
Ab.	ŭllō	ŭllā	ŭllō

Uter, which (of two)

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	uter	utra	utrum
	utrus	utrus	utrus
	utri	utri	utri
	utrum	utram	utrum
	utrō	utrā	utrō

248. In the plural these adjectives are declined like *fidus* and *puloher*, respectively. Observe that the Genitive singular of all genders ends in *-ius*, that the Dative singular ends in *-i*, and that in all other points these adjectives correspond to other *o-* and *a-* stems. Note the exception in quantity in *-ius*. Review the comparison of adjectives, Lessons XXXIII and XXXVII. Learn the following list of adjectives declined as above:—

alius, a, ud, another *tōtus, a, um, whole* *alter, era, erum, the other*
nūllus, a, um, no, no one *ŭllus, a, um, any* *neuter, tra, trum, neither*
sōlus, a, um, alone, only *ŭnus, a, um, one* *uter, tra, trum, which (of two)*

Observe the peculiar form of the neuter in *alius*.

249.

VOCABULARY

Ariovistus, I, m., Ariovistus.
adrogantia, ae, f., insolence.
commeātus, ūs, m., supplies, provisions.
conloquium, I, n., conference, dialogue.
cōnsanguineus, I, m., relative, kinsman.
fortūna, ae, f., fortune.
negōtium, I, n., business, trouble.

nihil, n., indec., nothing.
salūs, ūtis, f., safety.
spēs, spel, f., hope.
spīritus, ūs, m., pride, spirit.
alius . . . alius, one . . . another.
alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.
tristis, e, sad.
omnīnō, adv., at all, all together.
cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvi, suētus, be accustomed.

250. Notice the difference between *alius* . . . *alius* and *alter* . . . *alter*.

251. Examine the following:—

Alius aliam in partem properāvit, one hastened in one direction, another in another.

RULE. — *Alius* and *alter* repeated in another case express briefly a double statement.

252.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Alii bellum ācritēr gessērunt, alii salūtem fugā petiērunt.*
 2. *Alterī gladium dedit, alterī scūtum.* 3. *Neutrius fortūna erat bona.* 4. *Sēquanī sōli nihil respondērunt, sed tristēs in conloquiō manēbant.* 5. *Fortūna Sēquanōrum erat gravior quam reliquōrum.*¹ 6. *Spiritus Ariovistī erat māgnus, adrogantia autem māior.*
 7. *Germānī suās cōpiās trāns Rhēnum dūcere cōnsuēsunt, et in Galliam venīre.* 8. *Aliās in partēs Galliae venīre cōstituō, aliās autem in partēs venīre nōn possum.* 9. *Alius aliud*² *respondit.*
 10. *Māgnō commeātū māgnōque negōtiō militēs ūnum in locum dūxit.*

II. 1. The soldier was not at all brave, but fled into the woods.
 2. One³ hastened to the hill, another ran down to the sea. 3. The one was accustomed to lead his army without provisions, the other carried supplies on carts with great trouble. 4. They had chosen for a conference, a place on the hill. 5. The man's arrogance was very great, for he had been called a friend of the Roman people. 6. The pride of the one was great, of the other greater. 7. The kinsmen of Orgetorix were accustomed to fight bravely. 8. They will place all hope of safety in flight. 9. They gave hostages to no one.

¹ *than* (that) of the rest, pred. Gen. with *erat* understood.

² See 251.

³ See *alius* in the Vocabulary and 250.

253.

READING LESSON

Sēquanī in conloquiō nihil respondērunt, sed tristēs manēbant. Divitiācus autem prō iis respondit: "Fortūna Sēquanōrum est gravior quam reliquōrum, quod Ariovistus in eōrum finēs suās cōpiās intrōdūxit et omnia eōrum oppida occupāvit. Quā dē causā ēius adrogantia spīritusque māgnus¹ erat." Multis dē causis Caesar lēgātōs ad eum dē conloquiō mittere cōstituit, quibus lēgātis Ariovistus respondit: "Ad Caesarem nōn veniam, nam² neque sine māgnō exercitū in eas partēs Galliae, quās Caesar occupāvit, venīre audeō,³ neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū et negōtiō in ūnum locum contrahere⁴ possum."



LESSON XL

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

254. Formation of Adverbs. — Examine the following: —

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
1. cārus (cāro-), <i>dear</i>	cārē , <i>dearly</i>
pulcher (pulchro-), <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrē , <i>beautifully</i>

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declension by changing -o of the stem to -ē.

2. ācer (ācri-), <i>sharp</i>	ācritēr , <i>sharply</i>
lēnis (lēni-), <i>smooth</i>	lēniter , <i>smoothly</i>
prūdēns (prūdēt-), <i>prudent</i>	prūdēntēr , <i>prudently</i>

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding -ter to the stem. Stems in -nt drop -t before -ter.

3. multus , <i>much</i>	multum , <i>much</i>
subītus , <i>sudden</i>	subitō , <i>suddenly</i>
facilis , <i>easy</i>	facile , <i>easily</i>

¹ māgnus erat is used in agreement with spīritus and connected in thought with adrogantia also. ² for. ³ I dare. ⁴ bring together.

Sometimes the neuter Accusative singular is used as an adverb: **multum, facile**; sometimes the neuter Ablative singular: **subitō**.

255. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective. The superlative is formed by changing the final -o of the stem of the adjective in the superlative to -ē.

256. Learn the following:—

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
acriter	acrius	acerrimē
cārē	cārius	cārissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
prūdentē	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē

257. If the adjective is compared irregularly, the same irregularities will occur in the comparison of the adverb.

258. Learn the following, and review the comparison of adjectives, Lesson XXXVII.

bene, well	melius, better	optimē, best
male, ill	pēius, worse	pessimē, worst
—	magis, more	māximē, most, especially
multum, much	plūs, more	plūrimum, most
parum, not enough	minus, less	minimē, least

Note resemblances to the adjectives compared in **234**.

259.

VOCABULARY

haedus, I, m., kid.	timidus, a, um, timid.
mandātum, I, n., command, instructions.	maledicō, ere, dixi, dictus, revile, rail at (with Dat.).
respōsum, I, n., reply, response.	reddō, ere, didi, ditus, render, return, give back.
tēctum, I, n., roof.	iterum, adv., again, a second time.
vectigal, ālis, n., tax, revenue.	
dēterior, ius, adj. in comp., worse, of less value.	

260.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar Ariovistō vectigālīa dēteriōra fēcīt. 2. Haedus, quī in tēctō domūs erat, lupō māximē maledixit. 3. Locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.¹ 4. Eis respōnsīs audītīs iterum oppida hostium audācius oppūgnāvērunt. 5. Ariovistus obsidēs, quōs ab Aeduīs habuit, nōn reddidit. 6. Equīs ēmissīs ācerimē cum hostibus equitēs contendēbant. 7. Germānī multō ācrius quam fīnitimī cum hostibus contendunt quod eis vīrēs corporis māiōrēs sunt. 8. Oppidum facillimē dēlētum est quod incolae nōn fortiter dēfendērunt.

II. 1. He will very easily make the revenues of Ariovistus of less value. 2. When these commands had again been given (Abl. Abs.), he suddenly fled with the greatest swiftness to the river. 3. To praise is better² than to revile. 4. He acts more prudently than his friend, because he fears no one. 5. Kids are very timid, but time and place very often render them bold. 6. The supplies from home were not large, therefore they demanded ripe grain. 7. On account of the cold they came together and hastened into winter quarters beyond the river. 8. We arrived easily on that day in the territory of the Germans.

261.

READING LESSON³: *Haedus et Lupus*

Haedus stāns⁴ in tēctō domūs, lupō praetereuntī⁵ maledixit. Cui⁶ lupus, "Nōn tū," inquit, "sed tēctum mihi⁷ maledicit."

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.

¹ The singular is used because the two subjects are so closely associated in thought as to form one idea.

² Use neut. sing. comp. of *bonus*.

³ From this time on, in both reading lessons and exercises, occasional words not found in the special vocabularies will be used. These should be sought in the general vocabularies at the end of the book.

⁴ Pres. part. of *stō*, *standing*.

⁵ From *praetereō*, *pass by*, Dat. sing. of Pres. Part., agreeing with *lupō*.

⁶ *To him*, lit. to whom.

⁷ *mihi*, Dat. sing. of pers. pron., *to me*. Translate by *me* simply.

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE — SIMPLE FORMS OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

262.

*Regor, I am ruled*Princ. Parts, *regor, regī, rēctus sum*

	PRESENT <i>I am ruled, etc.</i>	IMPERFECT <i>I was ruled, etc.</i>	FUTURE <i>I shall be ruled, etc.</i>
SING.	{ 1. <i>rego-r</i> 2. <i>rege-ris (re)</i> 3. <i>regi-tur</i>	<i>regē-ba-r</i> <i>regē-bā-ris (re)</i> <i>regē-bā-tur</i>	<i>rega-r</i> <i>regē-ris (re)</i> <i>regē-tur</i>
PLUR.	{ 1. <i>regi-mur</i> 2. <i>regi-mini</i> 3. <i>regu-ntur</i>	<i>regē-bā-mur</i> <i>regē-bā-mini</i> <i>regē-ba-ntur</i>	<i>regē-mur</i> <i>regē-mini</i> <i>rege-ntur</i>
	PERFECT <i>I was or have been ruled, etc.</i>	PLUPERFECT <i>I had been ruled, etc.</i>	FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been ruled, etc.</i>
SING.	{ 1. <i>rēc-t-us sum</i> 2. <i>rēc-t-us es</i> 3. <i>rēc-t-us est</i>	<i>rēc-t-us eram</i> <i>rēc-t-us erās</i> <i>rēc-t-us erat</i>	<i>rēc-t-us erō</i> <i>rēc-t-us eris</i> <i>rēc-t-us erit</i>
PLUR.	{ 1. <i>rēc-t-i sumus</i> 2. <i>rēc-t-i estis</i> 3. <i>rēc-t-i sunt</i>	<i>rēc-t-i erāmus</i> <i>rēc-t-i erātis</i> <i>rēc-t-i erant</i>	<i>rēc-t-i erimus</i> <i>rēc-t-i eritis</i> <i>rēc-t-i erunt</i>

For changes in the stem vowel, see 128. Notice the formation of the Present Infinitive passive in this conjugation.

263. Examine the following :—

1. *Militēs pūgnant fortiter, the soldiers fight bravely.*
2. *Dicit militēs pūgnāre fortiter, he says that the soldiers fight bravely.*
3. *Dux castra movet, the leader moves the camp.*
4. *Videt ducem castra movēre, he sees that the leader is moving the camp.*
5. *Vidit ducem castra movēre, he saw that the leader was moving the camp.*

RULE. — Statements after verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, perceiving and the like are expressed by the Infinitive with a subject in the Accusative.

Observe in 5 the change in tense in the English translation of *movēre* after a verb of past time in the Latin.

NOTE. — The subject of the indirect discourse will be more fully discussed later.

264.

VOCABULARY

gallīna, ae, f., *hen*.

mulier, eris, f., *woman*.

socius, i, m., *comrade, ally*.

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary*.

necesse est, *it is necessary* (often used with an Infinitive as subj.).

coepi,¹ *isse*, def. verb, *begin*.

laccessō,² *ere*, ivi, itus, *provoke, annoy*.

reperiō, *ire*, *repperi*, *reptus*, *find, discover*.

superō, *āre*, āvi, ātus, *conquer, surpass*.

265.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Necesse est inimicōs superāre*. 2. *Dicunt necesse esse inimicōs superāre*. 3. *Caesar suō adventū vectigālia Germānōrum dēteriōra fēcerat*. 4. *Mulier gallinam habuit*. 5. *Dixit mulierem gallinam habēre*. 6. *Nihil in eīs nūdis et sterilibus locis repertum est*. 7. *Vidit eīus sociōs venīre*. 8. *Dicit Caesarem māximam iniūriam Ariovistō facere*. 9. *Hominēs barbari et irācundī finitimōs iniūriā³ continuō lacessivērunt*. 10. *Socii Aeduōrum ā Germānis saepe lacessēbantur*. 11. *Ad vāllum cum plūrimis mīlitibus mittētur, quod homō fortis et bellicōsus est*. 12. *Coepit sociōs iniūriā lacessere*. 13. *Dixit Ariovistum apud Germānōs regere*. 14. *Pōns ab hostibus interscinditur*.

II. 1. He was (being) sent to Caesar with these commands. 2. It is necessary to send hostages to Caesar. 3. Ariovistus replies that the Romans are his enemies. 4. Do you not see that

¹ The forms built on the Perfect stem correspond in time to those built on the Present stem in other verbs.

² Of the Third Conj. Note forms like verbs of the Fourth Conj.

³ *with injustice, unjustly*.

Caesar is doing a great injury to Ariovistus? 5. War will be waged by these states because hostages have not been given by their enemies. 6. The allies of the Roman people were provoked by the injustice of Ariovistus. 7. He says that the Aedui are beginning to assault the towns of the enemy on the march. 8. Nothing will be found in these barren places. 9. The Aedui will be annoyed by war because they will not give hostages. 10. He said that Caesar was doing a great injury.

266.

READING LESSON

His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis,¹ iterum ad Ariovistum lēgātōs cum iis mandātis mīsit. "Necesse est tibi² obsidēs quōs ab Aeduīs habēs reddere, neque Aeduōs neque eōrum sociōs iniūriā³ lacessere." Ad haec⁴ Ariovistus respondit Aeduōs, bellō superātōs, sibi⁵ stipendiāriōs⁶ esse. Caesarem māgnam iniūriam facere, quī adventū suō vectigālīa sibi dēteriōra faceret.⁷ Sē obsidēs Aeduīs redditūrum⁸ nōn esse, sed cum Germānis parātum esse bellum fortiter gerere.



LESSON XLII

REVIEW OF CARDINALS AND ORDINALS—ABLATIVE OF
DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

267. Make a careful review of Lessons XXIII and XXVI.

Examine the following:—

1. *Puer multō māior est quam soror, the boy is much larger than his sister (larger by much).*
2. *Mare multis pedibus altius est quam flūmen, the sea is many feet deeper than the river (deeper by many feet).*

¹ Abl. Abs., *When this answer was brought back.* ² *for you.* ³ See 265, n. 3. ⁴ *these things.* ⁵ *to him.* ⁶ *tributary*, adj. agreeing with *Aeduōs*. ⁷ Impf. Subj. of *faciō*. Translate, *was making.* ⁸ Fut. Inf. in indirect discourse with subject Acc. *ne* . . ., *that he would not return.*

Multō and **multis pedibus** are each in the Ablative, and express the degree of difference between two persons or things.

RULE. — The Ablative is used without a preposition to express the degree of difference between two persons or things.

268.

VOCABULARY

contentiō , ōnis , f., <i>contention, quarrel, exertion.</i>	dēfatīgō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>weary, exhausted.</i>
ūva , ae , f., <i>grape, bunch of grapes.</i>	subsiliō , īre , uī , —, <i>leap up.</i>
vītis , is , f., <i>vine.</i>	ante , adv. , <i>before.</i>
vulpēs , is , f., <i>fox.</i>	forte , adv. , <i>by chance.</i>
acerbus , a , um , <i>bitter, sour.</i>	nunc , adv. , <i>now.</i>
inānis , e , <i>empty.</i>	tandem , adv. , <i>at length, at last.</i>
attingō , ere , tigī , tāctus , <i>touch upon, reach.</i>	

269.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Vulpēs quondam ūvam in vīte vīdit. 2. Ad eam subsiluit omnium vīrium contentiōne. 3. Vulpēs autem ūvam attingere nōn potuit. 4. Tandem inānī labōre dēfatīgāta discessit. 5. "Acerbae," inquit, "sunt ūvae nec bonō sunt vulpī."¹ 6. Eās autem ūvās in viā repperī, itaque acerbae nōn sunt. 7. Vir multō senior quam mulier est. 8. Tribus diēbus ante in castra vēnit. 9. Itaque, commeātibus comparātis, māgnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 10. Eō tempore lēgātī ab Aeduīs ad Caesarem veniēbant. 11. Postquam iter trīdūī fēcit, ea rēs eī nūntiāta est.

II. 1. There was a large bunch of grapes on the vine. 2. The fox could not reach the grapes, for the vine was too high. 3. He leaped up with the exertion of all his strength, but at last went away without them. 4. "The grapes are sour," says the fox. 5. The town had been seized by Ariovistus five days before. 6. The enemy will have been overcome by Caesar within three hours. 7. The mountains were much higher than the hills. 8. The house is many feet higher than the wall.

¹ are not good for a fox. See 129.

270.

READING LESSON: *Acerbae Ūvae*

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōspicāta¹ ad illam² subsiluit omnium vīrium contentiōne, si³ eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dē-fatigāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit: "At⁴ nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec⁵ eās in viā repertās tollerem."⁶

Haec fābula docet multōs ea contemnere⁶ quae sē adsequi posse dēspērent.⁷



LESSON XLIII

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

271. Pronouns are divided into the following classes: personal, reflexive, possessive, demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

Personal pronouns correspond to the English personals, and are declined as follows:—

272. FIRST PERSON

	SING.	PLUR.
N.	ego	nōs
G.	meī	nostrum, nostrī
D.	mihi	nōbīs
Ac.	mē	nōs
Ab.	mē	nōbīs

SECOND PERSON

	SING.	PLUR.
	tū	vōs
	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
	tibi	vōbīs
	tē	vōs
	tē	vōbīs

273. The personal pronoun of the third person is lacking. Its place is supplied by the demonstratives, more usually by *is*.

274. The Reflexive.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

G.	sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
D.	sibi, to or for himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Ac.	se, sese, himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Ab.	se, sese, from, by, with himself, herself, itself, themselves.

¹ having seen. ² it. ³ si . . . posset, to see if it could. ⁴ but. ⁵ and I would not pick up. ⁶ that many despise, ind. disc. ⁷ which they despair of being able to obtain.

275. Observe carefully the following points in the use of these pronouns.

1. The Nominative of the personals is not expressed except for emphasis: *ego sum miser, tū es laetus, I am wretched, but you are happy.*

2. The personals of the first and second persons are often used in a reflexive sense: *ego mē culpō, I blame myself; tū tē laudās, you praise yourself.*

3. When reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of a sentence, the reflexive *sui*, etc., is used for the third person: *miles sē occidit, the soldier killed himself; miles eum occidit, the soldier killed him.*

4. When the preposition *cum* is used with the personal and reflexive pronouns, it is always an enclitic. With the relative or interrogative it may or may not be an enclitic: *mēcum, with me; sēcum, with him (himself); quibuscum or cum quibus, with whom.*

276.

VOCABULARY

<i>facultās, ātis, f., opportunity, supply.</i>	<i>prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus, proceed, advance.</i>
<i>Harūdēs, um, m. pl., the Harudes.</i>	
<i>ūsus, ūs, m., use, need, experience.</i>	<i>redimō, ere, ēmi, emptus, purchase.</i>
<i>Vesontīō, ōnis, m., Vesontio.</i>	<i>transportō, āre, āvi, ātus, bring over, transport.</i>
<i>imperō, āre, āvi, ātus, order, command.</i>	<i>vinoō, ere, vici, victus, conquer.</i>
<i>praesum, esse, fui, be over, be in command of (with Dat.).</i>	<i>celeriter, adv., quickly.</i>
	<i>nūper, adv., recently.</i>

277.

SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS

I. 1. *Ego sum nauta, tū es agricola.* 2. *Tēcum miser erō nunquam.* 3. *Vir sē laudat, ego autem eum nōn laudō.* 4. *Nōs omnēs in silvā erāmus.* 5. *Vestrī amīcī vōs nōn reprehendunt.* 6. *Mihi gladium dedit.* 7. *Tibi erat amīcus fidus.*

II. 1. The soldier was with you. 2. The girl will never praise him. 3. The man has always defended himself. 4. You will always have faithful friends. 5. You will be unhappy, your daughter happy. 6. You will give us many weapons.

278.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aeduī ad Caesarem celeriter vēnērunt quod Harūdēs eōrum finēs vāstābant. 2. Pācem Ariovisti redimere nōn potestis quod homō barbarus et irācundus est. 3. Dixit centum pāgōs Germānōrum ad ripās Rhēnī esse. 4. Pōstquam viam trīduī prōcessit, id Caesari nūntiātum est. 5. Omnium eārum rērum māgna facultās Vesontione¹ erat. 6. Hae rēs ūsuī ad bellum erant. 7. Hūc Caesar māgnīs itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi praesidium dispōnit. 8. Celeriter omnibus hostibus victīs, in hiberna exercitum redūxit.

II. 1. Two brothers were in command of² a hundred districts of the Germans. 2. Caesar and Ariovistus also were hastening by forced marches towards Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani. 3. The Germans had recently brought over a large number of their forces into the territory of the Aedui. 4. Ariovistus had proceeded a march³ of three days from his own⁴ territory. 5. Therefore Caesar decided to hasten to the town. 6. In this town were many things which were of use for war. 7. A great supply of all these things was in Vesontio.¹ 8. We can purchase all these things, and transport them on carts to the camp.

279.

READING LESSON

Aeduī ad Caesarem veniēbant quod Harūdēs eōrum finēs vāstābant. Lēgātī dixerunt: "Obsidibus datīs pācem Ariovisti redimere nōn possumus." Trēverī⁵ quoque veniēbant, quod Germānōrum centum pāgī ad ripās Rhēnī erant, quibus duo frātrēs praeerant. Eā dē causā Caesar contendere ad Ariovistum māgnīs itineribus cōstituit. Ariovistus autem Vesontionem, quod⁶ est māximum oppidum Sēquanōrum, occupāre mātūrābat. Itaque Caesar iter āvertit ad id oppidum; nam Vesontione¹ omnium rērum, quae ūsuī ad bellum erant, māgna facultās erat. Caesar id oppidum occupāvit et ibi praesidium disposuit.

¹ Vesontione, in *Vesontio*. ² See vocabulary. ³ Acc. of extent of space. ⁴ his own, *suus*. ⁵ The Treveri, a tribe of Gaul. ⁶ quod, relative pronoun in the neuter to agree with the predicate noun *oppidum*.

LESSON XLIV

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE — WORD LIST

280. Princ. Parts, audior, audiri, auditus sum

	PRESENT <i>I am heard, etc.</i>	IMPERFECT <i>I was heard, etc.</i>	FUTURE <i>I shall be heard, etc.</i>
SING.	1. audi-o-r 2. audi-ris (re) 3. audi-tur	- audiē-ba-r - audiē-bā-ris (re) - audiē-bā-tur	- audia-r - audiē-ris (re) - audiē-tur
PLUR.	1. audi-mur 2. audi-minī 3. audi-u-ntur	- audiē-bā-mur - audiē-bā-minī - audiē-ba-ntur	- audiē-mur - audiē-minī - audie-ntur
	PERFECT <i>I was or have been heard, etc.</i>	PLUPERFECT <i>I had been heard, etc.</i>	FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been heard, etc.</i>
SING.	1. audi-t-us sum 2. audi-t-us es 3. audi-t-us est	- audi-t-us eram - audi-t-us erās - audi-t-us erat	- audi-t-us erō - audi-t-us eris - audi-t-us erit
PLUR.	1. audi-t-i sumus 2. audi-t-i estis 3. audi-t-i sunt	- audi-t-i erāmus - audi-t-i erātis - audi-t-i erant	- audi-t-i erimus - audi-t-i eritis - audi-t-i erunt

Review the passive voice of the three preceding conjugations.

281. VOCABULARY

aurum, I, n., <i>gold.</i>	ingēns, entis, <i>large, huge, vast.</i>
māgnitūdō, inis, f., <i>size.</i>	inhiō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>gape for, desire.</i>
massa, ae, f., <i>mass.</i>	pariō, ere, peperī, partus, <i>bear, bring forth; ovum parere, lay an egg.</i>
mercātor, ōris, m., <i>merchant.</i>	perdō, ere, didī, ditus, <i>lose, destroy.</i>
ōvum, I, n., <i>egg.</i>	intus, adv., <i>within.</i>
percontātiō, ōnis, f., <i>questioning.</i>	
vōx, vōcis, f., <i>voice, word.</i>	
aureus, a, um, <i>golden.</i>	nisi, conj., <i>unless, if not, except.</i>

282.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dicit gallinam cottidiē ōvum aureum parere. 2. Gallina intus massam aurī nōn cēlat. 3. Vōcēs Germānōrum, quī dicunt hostēs¹ māgnā virtūte nōn esse, auditae sunt. 4. Ex percontātiōne nostrōrum timor subitō omnem exercitum occupāvit. 5. His rēbus auditis castra ā militibus celeriter mūniēbantur. 6. Nihil in eā gallinā reperiētur nisi quod in aliis reperitur. 7. Pilis scūtisque āmissis, spēs omnis salūtis perdita est. 8. Vōcēs mercātorum in castris Caesaris nōn saepe audientur. 9. Impediēris ab itinere quod nōn multī militēs tibi² sunt.

II. 1. The woman said that her hen was concealing within a large mass of gold. 2. The woman's hen laid daily a golden egg. 3. Nothing was found in the hen except what is found in other hens. 4. Goats will often be torn in pieces by wolves. 5. Men are often torn in pieces by wild beasts. 6. The voices of the enemy were heard before the rampart. 7. The redoubts will be fortified within ten days. 8. The standards of the Roman people will be carried a very great distance.

283.

READING LESSON: *Ōvum Aureum*

Mulier quaedam³ habēbat gallinam, quae ei cottidiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc⁴ suspicārī⁵ coepit illam⁶ aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallinam occidit, sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod in aliis gallinīs reperiri solet.⁷ Itaque dum māiōribus divitiis⁸ inhiābat, etiam minōrēs perdidit.

¹ Subj. Acc. in ind. disc. See 283. ² Dat. of the Possessor. See 146.
³ *quaedam*, a certain. ⁴ *Hinc*, hence. ⁵ *suspiciārī*, to suspect. ⁶ *illam*, her, demonstrative pronoun, subj. Acc. of cēlāre. Render, *that she* . . .
⁷ *solet*, is accustomed. ⁸ *wealth*, Dat. with *inhiābat*.

284.

WORD LIST VII

*acerbus	*dēterior	**maledīcō	parum	tandem
adrogantia	ego	*mandātum	percontātiō	*tēctum
**alius	facultās	massa	**perdō	*timidus
**alter	*forte	mercātor	*praesum	tōtus
Ariovistus	**fortūna	mulier	*prōcēdō	*trānsportō
*attingō	gallina	*multum	prūdentē	tristis
**aureus	haedus	*necesse	**reddō	*tū
**aurum	Harūdēs	*negōtium	*redimō	**ūllus
*bene	*imperō	**neuter	**reperiō	*ūnus
*cārē	inānis	nihil	*respōnsum	*ūsus
*celeriter	ingēns	*nisi	socius	**uter
coepī	inhīō	**nūllus	sōlus	ūva
commeātus	*intus	**nunc	spēs	*vectigal
*conloquium	*iterum	**nūper	spīritus	Vesontio
*cōnsanguineus	laccsō	*omnīnō	*subsiliō	*vincō
*cōnsuēscō	*māgnitūdō	ōvum	*suī	vītis
*contentiō	**male	**pariō	*superō	vulpēs
dēfatigō				*vōx

LESSON XLV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS—THE DATIVE WITH
ADJECTIVES

285. The demonstratives are *hic*, *this*; *is*, *this* or *that*; *ille*, *that*; *iste*, *that*; *idem*, *the same*; and *ipse*, *self*, which is intensive. *Is* has already been declined (see 136); *idem* is the demonstrative *is* with the emphatic suffix *-dem*. Its first part only is inflected. *Ipse* alone has a Vocative.

286.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
SING.	N. <i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
	G. <i>hīus</i>	<i>hīus</i>	<i>hīus</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
	D. <i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
	Ac. <i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
	Ab. <i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
PLUR.	N.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
	G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
	D.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
	Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
	Ab.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
SING.	N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	G.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
	D.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
	Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
	V.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
PLUR.	N.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
	G.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
	D.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
	Ac.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	V.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
	Ab.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
SING.	N.	Idem	eadem	idem
	G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
	D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
	Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem
	V.	—	—	—
	Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLUR.	N.	Idem (eīdem)	eadem	eadem
	G.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
	D.	īsdem, eīsdem	īsdem, eīsdem	īsdem, eīsdem
	Ac.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
	V.	—	—	—
	Ab.	īsdem, eīsdem	īsdem, eīsdem	īsdem, eīsdem

287. *Iste* is declined like *ille*. Note the resemblance in the Genitive and Dative singular to the pronominal adjectives, *ūnus*, etc. See 247.

Observe the change of *m* to *n* before *d* in forms of *īdem*.

288. *Hic* is used of that which is near the speaker ; the demonstrative of the first person.

Iste is used of that near the person spoken to ; the demonstrative of the second person.

Ille is used of that remote from the speaker ; the demonstrative of the third person. It often means that well-known or famous person or thing.

Hic often means the latter (nearer the speaker) ; *ille*, the former (more remote from the speaker).

The demonstratives have both an adjective and a substantive use. *Ipsē* is used with the personals, alone, or with a noun.

289. Examine the following : —

1. *Locus castris idōneus erat, the place was suitable for a camp.*
2. *Puer frātri similis erat, the boy was like his brother.*
3. *Nihil Caesarī difficile erat, nothing was difficult for Caesar.*

RULE.—The Dative is used with adjectives denoting resemblance, fitness, nearness, and the like, with their opposites.

NOTE.—Adjectives of fitness may take an Accusative with *ad*.

290.

VOCABULARY

<i>alacritās, ātis, f., alacrity.</i>	<i>cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus, learn,</i>
<i>exercitātiō, ōnis, f., exercise, practice.</i>	<i>know thoroughly.</i>
<i>mēns, mentis, f., mind.</i>	<i>convertō, ere, ī, versus, turn,</i>
<i>modus, ī, m., manner, way.</i>	<i>change.</i>
<i>falsus, a, um, false, groundless.</i>	<i>perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, disturb</i>
<i>idōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.</i>	<i>greatly, confuse.</i>
<i>incrēdibilis, e, incredible, remarkable.</i>	<i>praedicō, āre, āvī, ātus, proclaim,</i>
<i>mīrus, a, um, wonderful, strange.</i>	<i>announce.</i>
	<i>vehementer, adv., violently.</i>

291.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Dēlēgit locum vāllō idōneum et ibi castra mūnīvit.* 2. *Exercitus eandem alacritātem et exercitātiōnem in armīs, quās dux,*

praebuit. 3. Quod his idōneum est nōn est idōneum illis. 4. His rēbus cognitīs, in locum castris idōneum omnēs cōpiās dūxit. 5. Hunc hominem, meō amīcō inimicum, laudāre nōn possum. 6. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, subitō summa cupiditās bellī mentēs omnium hōrum occupāvit. 7. Proximī sunt Germānis, quī incolae eōrum locōrum sunt. 8. Celeritāte incrēdibili iter conversum est, postquam haec mandāta ducis audita sunt. 9. Vōcibus illōrum mentēs omnium vehementer perturbātae sunt. 10. Timor equitātūs falsus erat, quod omnia Caesarī facilia erant.

II. 1. All these things will be a care to those men. 2. It is not difficult for¹ a friend to praise a friend. 3. They announced that these Germans were of great size of body. 4. They will disturb in a wonderful manner the minds of all these. 5. They proclaim that this place is not suitable for a ditch. 6. I say that that fear is groundless. 7. The fear of those men is groundless, for Caesar is present. 8. He saw the same men that the Germans conquered. 9. The man himself sought a place suitable for a house. 10. He praises the latter, but blames the former.

292.

READING LESSON

Intereā ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum et mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitudine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicābant, timor subitō omnem exercitum occupāvit, et omnium mentēs perturbātae sunt. His rēbus cognitīs, Caesar longā ōrātiōne centuriōnēs omnium ōrdinum vehementer incūsāvit. Dixit eōrum timōrem falsum esse, omnia enim sibi futūra esse² cūrae. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mentēs omnium mīrum in modum³ conversae sunt summaeque alacritās et cupiditās bellī innāta est.⁴

¹ nōn est difficile amīcum laudāre, etc.

² would be.

³ in a wonderful manner.

⁴ sprang up, lit. was born.

LESSON XLVI

THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN **IO**, PASSIVE VOICE — DATIVE
WITH INTRANSITIVES293. Princ. Parts, **capior, capi, captus sum**

	PRESENT <i>I am taken, etc.</i>	IMPERFECT <i>I was taken, etc.</i>	FUTURE <i>I shall be taken, etc.</i>
SING.	{ 1. capi-o-r 2. cape-ris (re) 3. capi-tur	capiē-ba-r capiē-bā-ris (re) capiē-bā-tur	capia-r capiē-ris (re) capiē-tur
PLUR.	{ 1. capi-mur 2. capi-minī 3. capi-u-ntur	capiē-bā-mur capiē-bā-minī capiē-ba-ntur	capiē-mur capiē-minī capie-ntur
	PERFECT <i>I was or have been taken, etc.</i>	PLUPERFECT <i>I had been taken, etc.</i>	FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been taken, etc.</i>
SING.	{ 1. cap-t-us sum 2. cap-t-us es 3. cap-t-us est	cap-t-us eram cap-t-us erās cap-t-us erat	cap-t-us erō cap-t-us eris cap-t-us erit
PLUR.	{ 1. cap-t-I sumus 2. cap-t-I estis 3. cap-t-I sunt	cap-t-I erāmus cap-t-I erātis cap-t-I erant	cap-t-I erimus cap-t-I eritis cap-t-I erunt

1. For resemblance to verbs of the Fourth Conjugation, see 280.
Inflect, as above, *interficior*.

294. Examine the following : —

1. *Orgetorix Helvētīs persuāsit, Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians.*
2. *Caesar hostibus parōit, Caesar spares the enemy.*

Observe the meaning of these verbs, and notice that they are used with the Dative.

3. **Tantum spatī**, *so much (of) space.*
4. **Satis pābuli**, *enough (of) fodder.*

Observe in the above that **pars**, **alter**, **tantum**, **satis** denote a part taken from the whole expressed by **montis**, **militum**, **spatī**, **pābuli**. Observe the kind of words used to express the part.

RULE. — Words denoting a part are used with a Genitive of the whole to which the part belongs.

1. Partitive words are nouns, pronouns, and adjectives and adverbs used substantively.

300. Examine the following : —

1. **Ūnus ex militibus**, *one of the soldiers.*
2. **Quidam dē nostris**, *certain of our men.*
3. **Primus omnium**, *the first of all.*

Observe the use of **ex** and **dē** with **ūnus** and **quidam**, and of the Genitive with **primus**.

RULE. — Cardinal numerals and **quidam** generally take the Ablative with **ex** or **dē** to express the whole of which a part is taken ; the ordinals generally take the Partitive Genitive.

301. There are in each voice three tenses of the Infinitive, the Present, the Perfect, and the Future.

302.

	Active	
PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
1. vocā-re , <i>to call</i>	vocāv-isse , <i>to have called</i>	vocā-tūr-us esse , ¹ <i>to be about to call</i>
2. monē-re	monu-isse	moni-tūr-us esse
3. rege-re	rēx-isse	rēc-tūr-us esse
3. cape-re	cōp-isse	cap-tūr-us esse
4. audi-re	audi-v-isse	audi-tūr-us esse
es-se	fu-isse	fu-tūr-us esse

¹ Inflected to agree with the subject.

303.

Passive

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
1. vocā-rī, <i>to be called</i>	vocā-t-us ¹ esse, <i>to have been called</i>	vocā-t-um irī, ² <i>to be about to be called</i>
2. monē-rī	moni-t-us esse	moni-t-um irī
3. reg-ī	rēo-t-us esse	rēo-t-um irī
3. cap-ī	cap-t-us esse	cap-t-um irī
4. audi-rī	audi-t-us esse	audi-t-um irī

304. Examine the following :—

1. Dicit tē venīre, *he says that you are coming.*
2. Dixit tē venīre, *he said that you were coming.*
3. Dicit tē venīsse, *he says that you came (have come).*
4. Dixit tē venīsse, *he said that you came (had come).*
5. Dicit tē ventūrum esse, *he says that you will come.*
6. Dixit tē ventūrum esse, *he said that you would come.*

Observe that *venīre* denotes time present with reference to the verb on which it depends, *venīsse* time past, and *ventūrum esse* time future in the same way.

RULE.—The Infinitive expresses time relative to that of the verb upon which it depends.

305.

VOCABULARY

columba, ae, f., <i>dove.</i>	īustus, a, um, <i>just.</i>
formīca, ae, f., <i>ant.</i>	accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, <i>draw</i>
intervallum, i, n., <i>interval.</i>	<i>near, approach.</i>
mīnus, eris, n., <i>present.</i>	commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>call to</i>
necessitudō, inis, f., <i>alliance, friend-</i>	<i>mind, relate.</i>
<i>ship.</i>	doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus, <i>suffer, grieve.</i>
principātus, ūs, m., <i>chief place,</i>	mordeō, ēre, momordī, morsus, <i>bite, eat, sting.</i>
<i>leadership.</i>	vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus, <i>carry, bear;</i>
tumulus, i, m., <i>mound.</i>	<i>in the passive, ride (be carried).</i>
aequus, a, um, <i>equal.</i>	

¹ Inflected to agree with the subject.² Little used.

306.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Formica quondam ad flumen descendit. 2. Columba eam in flumine vidit et perturbata est. 3. Legionem Caesar, quam equis vixerat, aequo spatio ab eo tumultu constituit. 4. Ubi Ariovistus venit, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque beneficia in eum commemoravit. 5. Dixerunt amplissima munera a senatu missa esse. 6. Caesar dicit omni tempore Aeduos principatum totius Galliae tenuisse. 7. Dixit iustas causas necessitudinis sibi cum Aeduis esse. 8. Exploratores nuntiaverunt hostes ad oppidum accessisse. 9. Puer morsus est, quare maxime doluit.

II. 1. The Aedui had always held the leadership of all Gaul. 2. Caesar said that the Aedui had always held the leadership of all Gaul. 3. The ant had bitten the dove. 4. He said that the ant had bitten the dove. 5. The enemy are drawing near the camp. 6. The scout announces that the enemy are drawing near the camp. 7. The tenth legion was riding on horses. 8. The soldiers said that the tenth legion was riding on horses.

307.

READING LESSON

Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit, quī dicunt Ariovistum sine ullō periculō ad conloquium venire posse. Caesar diem conloquiō ex eō diē quintum dīxit.¹ Intereā saepe inter eōs lēgātī mittēbantur. Ariovistus ad conloquium sēsē nōn ventūrum esse nisi cum equitatū dīxit. Itaque Caesar decimam legiōnem, cui² māximē cōfidēbat, equis vehī iussit. Ubi ad conloquium vērunt, Caesar initio oratiōnis sua senātusque in eum beneficia commemorāvit. Ariovistus rēx appellātus est ā senātū, amplissima mūnera ad eum missa erant; quod Caesar paucis incidisse³ dīxit. Tandem postulāvit eadem quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat.

¹ appointed.

² in which he had the greatest confidence.

³ had happened to few.

LESSON XLVIII

COMPOUNDS OF **Sum** — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

308. **Sum** is compounded without any change with the prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō** (**prōd**), **sub**, and **super**. In the compound **prōsum**, *I help*, the original **d** of **prōd** is retained before **e**.

309.**Prōsum**, *I help*Princ. Parts, **prōsum**, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**

SINGULAR	PRESENT	PLURAL
1. prō-sum , <i>I help</i>		1. prō-sumus , <i>we help</i>
2. prōd-es , <i>you help</i>		2. prōd-estis , <i>you help</i>
3. prōd-est , <i>he helps</i>		3. prō-sunt , <i>they help</i>
IMPERFECT	prōd-eram , etc., <i>I helped</i> , etc.	
FUTURE	prōd-erō , etc., <i>I shall help</i> , etc.	
PERFECT	prō-fui , etc., <i>I helped</i> or <i>have helped</i> , etc.	
PLUPERFECT	prō-fueram , etc., <i>I had helped</i> , etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT	prō-fuerō , etc., <i>I shall have helped</i> , etc.	

310. Examine the following : —

1. **Lābiēnus ei oppidō praefuit**, *Labienus was in command of that town.*
2. **Caesar Aeduīs saepe adfuerat**, *Caesar had often assisted the Aedui.*
3. **Amicus amīcō nōn deerit**, *a friend will not fail his friend.*
4. **Caesar omnibus eōrum cōsiliis obstittit**, *Caesar opposed all their plans.*

Observe that the verbs in the above are compounded with **prae**, **ad**, **dē**, and **ob**, and that they are used with the Dative.

RULE. — Most verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super**, and some with **cir-cum**, are used with the Dative case.

311.

VOCABULARY

aqua, ae, f., *water*.auceps, ipis, m., *bird-catcher*.harundō, inis, f., *reed, arrow*.punctus, tis, m., *prick, sting*.virgula, ae, f., *twig*.abiciō, ere, iēcī, lectus, *cast aside*.ascendō, ere, i, scēsus, *climb*.conligō, ere, ligī, lectus, *gather together*.corripio, ere, ui, reatus, *seize, carry off*.dēcerpō, ere, ai, tus, *pluck*.dēsum, esse, fui, *be lacking, fail* (Dat.).obstō, ere, stitī, stitus, *oppose, resist* (Dat.).servō, āre, avi, ātus, *save, pre-serve*.submergō, ere, merai, mersus, *drown*.super, prep. w. Acc. and Abl., *above, upon*.

312.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Formica sē servāre nōn potuit quod sibi virēs deerant. 2. Columba autem ei adfuit et virgulam in aquam iniēcit. 3. Auceps columbam, harundine correptā, capere cōstituit, sed formica eam servāvit. 4. Dicit Ariovistum ad eum nūntiōs mittere. 5. Gallī Germānis saepe obsistunt. 6. Tū, Caesar, mihi nōn es amicus, obsistis enim mihi cottidiē. 7. Formica submersa nōn est, quod columba eam servāvit. 8. Auceps harundinem abiēcit, quod formica eius pedem momordit. 9. Formica ascendit super virgulam quam columba dēcerpserat et in aquam iniēcerat. 10. Dixit Gallōs saepe Germānis obsistere.

II. 1. The bird-catcher was bitten by an ant, because he had decided to catch a dove. 2. The dove had cast a twig into the water where the ant had been nearly drowned. 3. The ant climbed upon the twig and was not drowned. 4. After the ant had bitten the foot of the bird-catcher, he suffered from the sting and freed the dove. 5. "Gaul is my province," said Ariovistus. 6. Ariovistus said that Gaul was his province. 7. "I shall never fail my friends," says he, "but shall always assist (them)." 8. Within three days he will have helped all his friends. 9. He said that the ant cast a twig into the water.

313. READING LESSON: *Formica et Columba*

Formica quaedam¹ sitiēns² dēscendit ad fontem; sed flūmine correpta³ paene est submersa. Columba autem, hōc vidēns,⁴ virgulam dēcerpsit et in aquam iniēcit; super quam formica ascendēns, sēsē servāvit. Tum forte auceps, harundinibus conlētis, proficiscitur⁵ ad⁶ columbam capiendam. Quod vidēns,⁴ formica pedem aucipis momordit; et ille, punctū dolēns,⁷ harundinibus abiectis, columbam liberāvit.



LESSON XLIX

DEPONENT VERBS—THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN
DEPONENTS

314. Deponent verbs have for the most part passive forms with active meanings. They have the participles of both voices. The Perfect participle has sometimes a passive sense.

315. PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRESENT (1st Singular)	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT TENSE
1. cōn-o-r, <i>I attempt</i>	cōnā-rī	cōnā-t-us sum
2. pollice-o-r, <i>I promise</i>	pollicē-rī	pollicē-t-us sum
3. ūt-o-r, <i>I use, enjoy</i>	ūt-I	ūt-s-us sum
3. pati-o-r, <i>I suffer, allow</i>	pat-I	pas-s-us sum
4. poti-o-r, <i>I become master of</i>	potī-rī	potī-t-us sum

Observe that the forms of these verbs are built in the same way as the passive voice of other verbs of the corresponding conjugations.

¹ a certain. ² being thirsty, Pres. part. of *sitiō*. ³ *correpta* agrees with the subject of *submersa est*, a pronoun implied in the ending and referring to *formica*. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ sets out. ⁶ to catch the dove, a construction which will be explained later. ⁷ suffering.

316. Examine the following : —

1. *Armīs ūtitur, he uses arms.*
2. *Prōvinciā potitur, he becomes master of the province.*

Observe that the verbs in the above take the Ablative when in the corresponding English sentences a direct object is used.

RULE. — Certain deponents, with their compounds, take the Ablative. These verbs are : —

ŭtor, ŭtī, ŭsus sum, use, enjoy
fruor, fruī, fructus sum, enjoy
fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, perform
potior, potiū, potitus sum, become master of
vescor, vescī, —, eat

Learn this list.

317.

VOCABULARY

postulātum, ī, n., demand.

sēdēs, is, f., seat, abode.

sponte, Abl. (Gen. spontis), of one's own accord.

voluntās, ātis, f., wish, consent.

paucī, ae, a, few (seldom used in singular).

arcessō, ere, ivī, itus, summon.

concedō, ere, cessī, cessus, withdraw, concede.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, owe, ought.

Insequor, ī, secūtus sum, pursue.

iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, judge.

minitor, ārī, ātus sum, threaten.

potius, adv., rather.

priusquam, conj., before (the parts are often separated by intervening words).

318.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar pauca postulāta ab Ariovistō fēcit. 2. Omnia mortem nōbis minitantur, sed virī māximā virtūte sumus et nihil timēmus. 3. Pāce fruī dēbēmus, multa enim proelia commisi-mus. 4. Ariovistus prius in Galliam vēnit quam populus Rōmānus. 5. "Nōn meā sponte," inquit, "sed arcessitus ā Gallīs in Galliam vēnī." 6. Sēdēs in Galliā nōbis ā tē concessae sunt, quibus māximē fruimur. 7. Tuā voluntāte in Galliam prius vēnērunt quam ā Gallis arcessitī sunt. 8. Caesar hostis īsequētur et eōrum

oppidīs potiētur. 9. Iūdicāvit imperium Rōmānōrum iūstius esse quam Gallōrum.

II. 1. Caesar of his own accord gave them abodes in Gaul. 2. With your consent we shall accept the answer of Ariovistus. 3. We see that you are pursuing your enemies, and threatening them with death.¹ 4. Caesar's demands are few, but just, and we ought to accept them. 5. He came of his own accord into Italy before he was summoned. 6. He will have become master of all Gaul within three years. 7. We shall withdraw with your consent to this fertile plain. 8. The just will enjoy peace, and will be greatly disturbed by no one.

319.

READING LESSON

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca² respondit et dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit. Dixit sē³ Rhēnum trānsisse³ nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum⁴ et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum; Caesarem nōn amicum sibi sed hostem esse; prōvinciam suam hanc⁵ esse Galliam, nōn Rōmānōrum. Caesar autem respondit sē nōn iūdicāre Galliam potius⁶ esse Ariovisti quam populī Rōmānī; aut⁷ imperium Rōmānōrum iūstissimum esse in Galliā, aut liberam dēbere esse Galliam.

LESSON L

SEMI-DEPONENTS—REVIEW OF PASSIVE—WORD LIST

320. Some verbs have the forms from the Present stem active, the rest passive. These are called Semi-Deponents.

¹ Lit. death to them. ² *replied briefly* (a few things). ³ *that he had crossed.* ⁴ *asked*, Perf. pass. part. agreeing with **sē**. ⁵ **hanc** agrees with **Galliam**. Translate, *this part of Gaul*. ⁶ *belonged to Ariovistus rather than to . . .* (lit. was of . . .). ⁷ **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*

Learn thoroughly the following list : —

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
2. audeō, dare	audēre	ausus sum
2. gaudeō, rejoice	gaudēre	gāvisus sum
2. soleō, be wont	solēre	solitus sum
3. fidō, trust	fidere	fisus sum

Note the irregularity in form of the Perfect participle of **gaudeō**. Inflect **audeō** and **fidō** in the Indicative, and review the passive of all the conjugations.

321.

VOCABULARY

agnus, I, m., lamb.

deus, I, m., god.

pontifex, icis, m., chief priest, high priest.

Procillus, I, m., Procillus.

studium, I, n., desire, zeal.

templum, I, n., temple.

sacer, cra, crum, sacred.

cōnfugiō, ere, fūgi, —, flee for refuge.

iniciō, ere, iēcī, lectus, throw into, inspire.

perficiō, ere, fēcī, factus, accomplish.

sacrificiō, āre, āvi, ātus, sacrifice.

trucidō, āre, āvi, ātus, slay, kill.

at, conj., but, yet.

quō, adv., where, whither.

322.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pontifex erat in templō, quō multī celeriter cōnfugerant. 2. His populus Rōmānus ignōverat. 3. Caesar dicit populi Rōmānī imperium in Galliā esse iūstissimum. 4. Lupus in templum venīre nōn ausus est propter timōrem pontificis.¹ 5. Lupus dixit pontificem āgnum sacrificātūrum esse. 6. Multō māior alacritās studiumque bellī māius exercitūi iniectum est. 7. Māgnā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus uti solēbat. 8. Agnī ā lupīs trucidārī solent. 9. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est Ariovisti equitēs ad tumulum accēdere. 10. Ariovistus Caesarem peditēs nōn dūxisse ad tumulum gāvisus est.

II. 1. The chief priest was wont to sacrifice lambs in the temple. 2. Is the lamb sacred to the god? No, he is not, and for this reason the high priest will sacrifice him. 3. I rejoice that

¹ *fear of the high priest, objective Genitive.*

my friends have been faithful to me. 4. But the enemy did not dare to fight, and for this reason they fled with great speed to the woods. 5. Caesar threatens that he will kill all the inhabitants of the village. 6. C. Valerius Proculus was sent to Ariovistus in regard to a conference. 7. Much greater alacrity was inspired in the army. 8. The soldiers did not dare to leave the town, but decided to await the arrival of Caesar.

323.

READING LESSON: *Lupus et Agnus*

Lupus insecutus est agnum. At hic in templum confugit. Lupus autem agnum invocante¹ et minitante² pontificem eum sacrificaturum, respondit agnus: "Mallem³ quidem⁴ deo sacer esse quam a te trucidari."

324.

WORD LIST VIII

**abicio	*convertō	**iniciō	patior	*sedēs
**accēdō	*corripio	*insequor	pauci	*servō
*aequus	*dēbeō	**insolenter	**perficiō	**solēō
agnus	*lēcerpō	*intervallum	persuadeō	sponte
alacritās	**dēsum	**ipse	perturbō	*studeō
aqua	deus	**iste	plānitēs	*subitō
arcessō	doleō	**iūdicō	polliceor	submergō
*ascendō	*exercitātiō	**iustus	*pontifex	super
at	*falsus	leō	*postulātum	tantus
**auceps	*fidō	**iudificō	**potior	templum
*audeō	formica	*malum	**potius	tollō
**beneficium	gaudeō	*mēns	**praedicō	*trucidō
*circumveniō	harundō	minitor	**principātus	*tumulus
*cognoscō	*hic	*mirus	**priusquam	*tuus
columba	**idem	modus	Proculus	*utor
*commemorō	idoneus	mordeō	**prōsum	*vehementer
**concēdō	**ignoscō	*mūnus	punctus	*vehō
*confugiō	*ille	*necessitūdō	rēte	*vester
*conligō	*incidō	*obsistō	**sacer	virgula
*cōnor	*incrēdibilis	parcō	**sacrificō	*voluntās

¹ Ablative Absolute with *lupus*, calling upon.

² See 314. ³ I should prefer. ⁴ at least.

LESSON LI

THE PARTICIPLE

325. There are four participles in Latin, — two in the active voice, the Present and the Future, and two in the passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive.

326. The Present participle ends in **-ns**, and has regularly the same meaning as the English participle in **-ing**: **vocā-ns**, *calling*. It is inflected like an adjective of the Third Declension with one termination.

327. The Future active participle ends in **-ūrus**, and is regularly used to express something about to happen: **vocā-tūr-us**, *about to call*. It is often joined to the verb **sum** to form the First Periphrastic Conjugation, which will be explained later. It is inflected like **fidus**, **a**, **um**.

328. The Gerundive (sometimes called the Future passive participle) ends in **-ndus**, and is very often used to express necessity or obligation: **vocā-ndus**, *to be called*. It is often joined to the verb **sum** to form the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, which will be explained later. It is inflected like **fidus**, **a**, **um**.

329. The Perfect participle ends in **-tus**, **-sus**, and has two distinct uses.

1. It is often equivalent to the English Perfect passive participle in **-ed**: **mūni-t-us**, *fortified*.

2. It is joined to the verb **sum** to form certain tenses of the passive: **vocā-t-us sum**, *I have been called*.

330. The participles may all be used as adjectives, and the Present and Perfect as substantives.

1. Note that there is no Present passive or Perfect active participle in Latin.

331.

TABLE OF PARTICIPLES

Active		Passive	
PRESENT	FUTURE	PERFECT	GERUNDIVE (Fut.)
1. vocā-ns	vocā-tūr-us	vocā-t-us	voca-ndus
2. monē-ns	moni-tūr-us	moni-t-us	mone-ndus
3. regē-ns	rēo-tūr-us	rēo-t-us	rege-ndus
3. capiē-ns	cap-tūr-us	cap-t-us	capie-ndus
4. audiē-ns	audi-tūr-us	audi-t-us	audie-ndus
	fu-tūr-us		

1. Observe carefully the similarity of formation in the Present and the Gerundive on the one hand, and the Future and the Perfect on the other.

Make a table of the participles of *laudō*, *terreō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *mūniō*.

332. Examine the following :

1. *Caesar virum vidēns laetus erat, Caesar was glad upon seeing the man.*
2. *Permōtus frūmenti inopiā Caesar in Italiā vēnit, alarmed by the lack of grain, Caesar came into Italy.*

Observe that the Latin usage is the same as the English.

333.

VOCABULARY

<i>catēna</i> , ae, f., <i>chain</i> .	<i>exerceō</i> , ēre, ul, itus, <i>exercise, train</i> .
<i>hospitium</i> , i, n., <i>friendship</i> .	<i>interolūdō</i> , ere, olūā, olūsus, <i>cut off, shut off, hinder</i> .
<i>lingua</i> , ae, f., <i>tongue, language</i> .	<i>permovēō</i> , ēre, mōvī, mōtus, <i>alarm, move greatly</i> .
<i>vulgus</i> , ¹ i, n., <i>common people, crowd</i> .	<i>prōdūcō</i> , ere, dūxī, ductus, <i>lead forward</i> .
<i>adequitō</i> , āre, āvī, ātus, <i>ride toward</i> .	<i>versor</i> , āri, ātus sum, <i>be busy, be engaged, live</i> .
<i>conclāmō</i> , āre, āvī, ātus, <i>cry out</i> .	
<i>cōnsidō</i> , ere, sēdī, sessus, <i>settle down, encamp</i> .	

¹ An exception in gender among nouns in -us of the Second Declension.

334.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ariovistus liberam debere esse Galliam dixit. 2. Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti ad nostros adequitare. 3. In¹ vulgus militum nuntiatum est Ariovistum magnam adrogantiam in conloquio usum esse. 4. Conclamans "Virum video!" ad eum contendit. 5. C. Valerius Procillus, ad Ariovistum missus, pauca postulata fecit. 6. Hospitio Ariovisti usus magnam iniuriam faciebat. 7. Videns legatos, suo exercitu praesente,² conclamavit: "Quare ad me venistis?" 8. Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catenas coniecit. 9. Copiis interclusis, exercitum flumen traduxit. 10. Proelio facto, in castra milites reduxit et ibi multis in rebus versatus est.

II. 1. The troops were led forward to the nearest hill. 2. The scouts saw that the enemy were busy in our camp. 3. The enemy had cut off our men from supplies. 4. Upon³ seeing the ambassadors, Ariovistus threw them into chains. 5. Caesar, seeing the enemy, encamped at the foot of the mountain. 6. Our men had been trained in daily battles. 7. Ariovistus having used great arrogance in the conference made many demands. 8. He rode towards the crowd of soldiers and cried out: "I see the man."

335.

READING LESSON

Dum haec in conloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius⁴ tumulum accedere, et ad nostros adequitare, et lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Certis de causis Caesar proelium non committere constituit; itaque suos in castra reduxit. Postquam in vulgus militum nuntiatum est Ariovistum magnam adrogantiam⁵ usum esse, multo⁶ maior alacritas studiumque pugnae exercitui iniectum est. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos de conloquio misit. Itaque Caesar C. Valerium Procillum, summam virtute⁷ virum, propter linguae Gallicae⁸ scientiam mittere con-

¹ among. ² in the presence of his army; praesente, Pres. part. of praesum, be present. ³ See 332, I. ⁴ nearer to the mound. ⁵ See 316. ⁶ See 267. ⁷ See 157. ⁸ on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language.

stituit. Alter, quī hospitīō Ariovistī ūsus erat, missus est. Sed Ariovistus, lēgātōs vidēns in castrīs, conclāmāvit: Quārē ad mē vēnistis? et eōs in catēnās coniēcit.



LESSON LII

WORD FORMATION

NOTE. — It has been thought best to insert at this point two lessons upon Word Formation and Word Grouping. These lessons are not to be learned verbatim, but should be carefully read and frequently referred to in the preparation of the succeeding lessons.

The aim has not been to make an exhaustive treatment of the subject, but to present a few essential facts in a very simple manner, in the hope that the pupil, recognizing the fact that the Latin and the English are sister languages, and that both have been built up gradually and systematically, may form habits of observation in word study which will not only enliven his work in Latin, but help him to appreciate his own language better.

336. A Root is the essential part of a word unmodified by the addition of formative elements.

337. A Stem is that part of a word to which the inflectional endings are added: **son-**, root; **sono-**, stem; **sonus**,¹ a noise.

338. Examine carefully the following groups of words: —

ag-ō , do	āo-tor , one who does	āo-tiō , a doing
dēfend-ō , defend	dēfēn-sor , one who defends	dēfēn-siō , a defending

1. Observe that the ending **-tor** (**-sor**) denotes the agent, and that **-tiō** (**-siō**) is used in forming abstracts. Note also the change in the final letter of the root **ag** before **t**, and the dropping of **d** before **s**.

scribō , write	scrip-tor , —?	scrip-tiō , —?
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

¹ The final letter of the stem is often so changed by its contact with the inflectional endings as not to be evident without careful analysis.

339. <i>ag-ō, lead</i>	<i>āg-men, line of march</i>
<i>flu-ō, flow</i>	<i>flū-men, river</i>
<i>move-ō, move</i>	<i>mō-men-tum, movement</i>
<i>mone-ō, remind</i>	<i>monu-men-tum, reminder</i>

1. Observe that the endings **-men**, **-mentum**, denote acts, or the means or results of acts.

340. <i>arm-ō, arm</i>	<i>armā-tūra, armor, armed troops</i>
<i>scrib-ō, write</i>	<i>scrip-tūra, a writing</i>
341. <i>ar-ō, plow</i>	<i>arā-trum, that which plows, a plow</i>
<i>voc-ō, call</i>	<i>vocā-bulum, that by which one is called, a name</i>
<i>gubern-ō, guide</i>	<i>gubernā-culum, that which guides, a helm</i>

1. Observe that the endings **-trum**, **-bulum**, **-culum**, denote the means or instrument of an action.

From the meaning of the endings **-tor**, **-tiō** in 338, 1, tell the meaning of the following words: —

arā-tor, **arā-tiō**; **gubernā-tor**, **gubernā-tiō**; **vocā-tor**, **vocā-tiō**.

342. <i>lae-tus, glad</i>	<i>laeti-tia, gladness</i>
<i>levis, light</i>	<i>levi-tās, lightness, fickleness</i>
<i>māgnus, great</i>	<i>māgni-tūdō, greatness, size</i>
<i>servus, slave</i>	<i>servi-tūs, slavery</i>

1. Observe that the endings **-tia**, **-tās**, **-tūdō**, **-tūs** are added to noun and adjective stems to form abstracts. Note change in stem vowel.

343. The following words will give corresponding forms: —

<i>iūstus, just</i>	—? <i>justice</i>
<i>vērus, true</i>	—? <i>truth</i>
<i>lātus, broad</i>	—? <i>breadth</i>
<i>vir, man</i>	—? <i>manhood, courage</i>

344. <i>filius, son</i>	<i>fili-olus, little son</i>
<i>ager, field</i>	<i>agel-lus, little field</i>
<i>homō, man</i>	<i>homun-culus, manikin</i>

1. Observe that the Nominative endings **-ulus** (after a vowel **-olus**), **-lus**, **-culus** are added to noun stems to form diminutives.

Compare with these the English words *brooklet*, *rivulet*, *bracelet*, *versicle*, *reticule*.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 345. <i>homō</i> , man | <i>hum-ānus</i> , belonging to man, human |
| <i>lāc</i> , milk | <i>lact-eus</i> , belonging to milk, lacteal |
| <i>alius</i> , another | <i>ali-ēnus</i> , belonging to another, alien |
| <i>cīvis</i> , citizen | <i>cīv-icus</i> , belonging to a citizen, civic |
| <i>Rōma</i> , Rome | <i>Rōm-ānus</i> , belonging to Rome, Roman |

Observe the formation of the preceding adjectives, and of the corresponding English words.



ARATRUM



LESSON LIII

WORD FORMATION

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 346. <i>nāvis</i> , ship | <i>nāv-ālis</i> , pertaining to a ship, naval |
| <i>servus</i> , slave | <i>serv-ilis</i> , pertaining to a slave, servile |
| <i>cōnsul</i> , consul | <i>cōnsul-āris</i> , pertaining to a consul, consular |

1. Observe that the endings *-ālis*, *-ilis*, *-āris*, denote belonging or pertaining to. The very common English endings *-al*, *-ar*, *-il*, *-ile*, are derived from these.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 347. <i>eques</i> , horseman | <i>eques-ter</i> , belonging to a horseman, equestrian |
| <i>silva</i> , wood | <i>silves-ter</i> , belonging to a forest, wooded |
| <i>nōs</i> , we, us | <i>nos-ter</i> , belonging to us, our |

What is the adjective corresponding to *pedēs*, *foot soldier* — ?
to *terra*, *land* — ?

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 348. <i>capi-ō</i> , take | <i>capt-ivus</i> , captive |
| <i>cupi-ō</i> , desire | <i>cup-idus</i> , desirous, eager |
| <i>tene-ō</i> , hold | <i>ten-ax</i> , prone to hold, tenacious |
| <i>aude-ō</i> , dare | <i>aud-ax</i> , — ? |
| <i>pūgn-ō</i> , fight | <i>pūgn-ax</i> , — ? |

1. Observe that the endings *-ivus*, *-idus*, are added to verb stems to express state, and *-ax* to express tendency.

349. <i>ag-ō, drive</i>	<i>ag-ilis, active, agile</i>
<i>faci-ō, make, do</i>	<i>fac-ilis, easy (that which can be done)</i>
<i>nōsc-ō, know</i>	<i>nō-bilis, known, noble</i>
<i>exim-ō, select</i>	<i>exim-ius, selected, remarkable</i>

1. Observe that the endings *-ilis*, *-bilis*, *-ius*, are added to verb stems to express passive qualities.

350. <i>arma, arms</i>	<i>arm-ō, are, arm</i>
<i>hiema, winter</i>	<i>hiem-ō, are, pass the winter</i>
<i>albus, white</i>	<i>albe-ō, ere, be white</i>
<i>metus, fear</i>	<i>metu-ō, ere, fear</i>
<i>finis, end</i>	<i>fini-ō, ire, end</i>

1. Observe that verbs of the four conjugations are derived from noun stems. This is true of most of the three hundred and sixty verbs of the First Conjugation, some of the Second and Third, and many of the Fourth.

351. Compounds. — A simple word is one containing a single stem: *dux*, *duo*-. A compound word is one containing two or more stems: *agricola* = *agri* + *cola* (*agro*- + *cole*-); *ager*, *field*; *colō*, *cultivate*; *agricola*, *one who cultivates a field, a farmer*.

Pro-avus, *great-grandfather*, *prō* + *avus*, preposition + noun. *Arti-fex*, *artisan*, *arti*- (stem of *ars*) + *fex* (*faciō*), noun stem + verb stem. *Per-gravis*, *very heavy*, *per* + *gravis*, preposition + adjective. *Īn-fidus*, *not to be trusted*, *in* + *fīdus*, negative particle + adjective. *Māgn-animus*, *great-hearted*, *māgno* + *animus*. adj. stem + noun. *Ex-eō*, *go out*, *ex* + *eō*, preposition + verb.

352. In 338-351 you have seen how words are formed by the addition of prefixes and suffixes. A great many words in Latin group themselves about a single root. In learning a Latin vocabulary bear this in mind, and associate together words which have a common root. Many words are of doubtful origin, but in the following exercises only those whose origin is practically certain, and which are in frequent use, will be given.

353. Study carefully the words in the group in this and succeeding lessons, and endeavor to explain the formation of each word, referring to 338-350.

1. At the end of each group a list of English derivatives has been given which should be carefully studied for the purpose of enlarging your English vocabulary, and emphasizing the relation between your own language and the Latin.

354. Root *duc*, *lead*.

<i>dūc-ō</i> , <i>lead</i>	<i>duc-tor</i> , —?	<i>intrō-dūcō</i> , <i>lead into</i>
<i>dux</i> , <i>leader</i>	<i>in-duc-tiō</i> , —?	<i>intrō-duc-tiō</i> , —?

Form compounds with *ad*, *con*, *dē*, *in*, *re*, and give meanings.

ENG. DER. — Duke, ductile, conductor, induce, ducat, reduction, viaduct, aqueduct, subdue, educate, duchy.



LESSON LIV

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

355. *Quis? Quae? Quid? Who? Which? What?*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>quis</i> (<i>quī</i>)	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>)	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
Ac. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i> (<i>quod</i>)	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
Ab. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

356. In the Nominative singular, masculine and neuter, *quis* and *quid* are used substantively, *quī* and *quod* adjectively; as,—

Quis mē vocāvit, who called me?

Quī puer mē vocāvit, what boy called me?

Quid vidēs, what do you see?

Quod animal vidēs, what animal do you see?

Review the declension of the relative (147), and compare it with the interrogative.

357. Examine the following : —

1. Eum rēgem appellāverunt, *they called him king.*
2. Mē cōsulem fēcistis, *you made me consul.*
3. Urbe Rōma appellāta est, *the city was called Rome.*

RULE. — Verbs of naming, making, choosing, calling, showing, take two Accusatives, one of the person or thing affected, the other a predicate Accusative.

NOTE. — In the passive the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate Accusative a predicate Nominative.

358.

VOCABULARY

benefactor, ōris, m., *benefactor.*

gelus, ūs, m., *frost, cold.*

hiems, emis, f., *winter.*

serpens, entis, f. or m., *serpent.*

vestis, is, f., *garment.*

improbus, a, um, *wicked.*

condō, ere, didī, ditus, *hide, bring together, found.*

incalēscō, ere, calui, —, *grow warm.*

inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus, *find, discover.*

miserēscō, ere, —, —, *feel pity for, pity.*

morior, mori (moriri), mortuus sum, die.

reciperō, āre, avi, ātus, *recover.*

rigēō, ēre, ui, —, *become stiff.*

mox, adv., *soon.*

359.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis serpentem hiemis tempore in agrō invēnit? 2. Agricola serpentem invēnit et ei vitam servāvit. 3. Serpens quem agricola invēnit gelū riguerat. 4. Incalēscēns autem benefactōrem suum mox momordit interfēcitque. 5. Senex serpentem miserēscit, quārē eum in veste condit. 6. Serpentēs sunt improba animālia, quae saepe benefactōrēs suōs mordent. 7. Eum hominem improbum vocāmus quod amicis suis fidus nōn est. 8. Quis dixit Caesarem aciem triplicem instruere? 9. Quem rēgem appellāverunt? 10. Cūius vitam agricola servāvit? Servāvit vitam serpentis, quae eum mox momordit.

II. 1. A farmer hid under his garment a serpent which had become stiff with cold. 2. In the winter-time¹ serpents often

¹ hiemis tempore.

become stiff with cold. 3. The serpent, however, did not die, but was saved by a farmer, who, pitying it, hid it under his garment. 4. We easily suffer serpents to die, for they often bite their benefactors. 5. This serpent soon recovered, and bit the farmer. 6. Who saved the life of the wicked animal? 7. To whom did the Gauls give abodes on this side of the Rhine? To the Germans. 8. Whose life did the dove save? She saved the ant's life. 9. We called him our benefactor, because he saved the life of our brother.

360. READING LESSON: *Agricola et Serpens*

Agricola, senex, hiemis tempore, serpentem invēnit gelū rigentem, et miserēscēns sub veste condidit. Mox serpens incalēscēns, et indolem suam recipiēns, benefactōrem momordit interfēcit-que; quī moriēns dixit: "Iūsta patior, quī animālī improbō¹ vītam servāverim."

361. Study carefully the following word group. Determine the meaning of words marked —?

Root **spec**, *see, spy*.

spec-t-ō, *to behold*

spec-iēs, *appearance*

spec-u-lā-tor, *spy*

spec-tā-tor, —?

spec-tā-culum, —?

spec-trum, *image*

ENG. DER. — Species, specious, spectacle, spectrum, spectral, conspicuous.

LESSON LV

IRREGULAR VERBS, INDICATIVE — **Ferō** AND ITS COMPOUNDS

362. Certain verbs, called irregular verbs, annex the personal endings in the Present system for the most part directly to the root.

¹ *who have saved the life of a . . .*

363.

Ferō, bear, carryPrinc. Parts, **fer-ō, fer-re, tul-i, lā-t-us**

PRESENT		Active	
SING.	1. fer-ō	IMPERF.	fer-ē-ba-m , etc.
	2. fer-s	FUT.	fer-a-m , etc.
	3. fer-t	PERF.	tul-i , etc.
PLUR.	1. fer-i-mus	PLUPERF.	tul-ēra-m , etc.
	2. fer-tis	FUT. PERF.	tul-er-ō , etc.
	3. fer-u-nt		

PRESENT		Passive	
SING.	1. fer-o-r	IMPERF.	fer-ē-ba-r , etc.
	2. fer-ris (re)	FUT.	fer-a-r , etc.
	3. fer-tur	PERF.	lā-t-us sum , etc.
PLUR.	1. fer-i-mur	PLUPERF.	lā-t-us eram , etc.
	2. fer-i-mini	FUT. PERF.	lā-t-us erō , etc.
	3. fer-u-ntur		

1. Observe the quantity of the penult of **ferō**, and accent its compounds properly.

364. Inflect like **ferō** the following compounds:—

ad-ferō, ferre, attulī, adlātus, *bring to*, — **ad + ferō**
dē-ferō, ferre, dētulī, dēlātus, *bring down from, transfer*
in-ferō, ferre, intulī, inlātus, *bring in or on, inflict*
per-ferō, ferre, pertulī, perlātus, *bring to an end, endure*

1. Observe the change in **ad** in composition. Learn the above list of words with their forms and meanings.

365.

VOCABULARY

agricultūra , ae, f., <i>agriculture</i> .	redūcō , ere, dūxī, ductus , <i>lead</i>
occāsus , ūs, m., <i>a falling down;</i>	<i>back.</i>
sōlis occāsus , <i>sunset.</i>	circiter , adv., <i>about.</i>
passus , ūs, m., <i>pace.</i>	postrīdīē , <i>on the day after</i> (with Gen.).
vulnus , eris, n., <i>wound.</i>	praeter , prep. with Acc., <i>beyond.</i>
intelligō , ere, lēxī, lēctus , <i>under-</i>	ultrā , prep. with Acc., <i>beyond.</i>
<i>stand, perceive, know.</i>	ūsq̄ue , adv., <i>even up to, as far as.</i>

366.

EXERCISES

I. 1. His respōnsīs adlātīs, occāsū sōlis Caesar equitēs in castra redūxit. 2. Vulneribus multīs inlātīs, ūsque ad vesperum pūgnāvērunt et multōs hostīs interfēcērunt. 3. Omnem equitātum praeter oppidum redūxit quod hostēs integrīs vīribus pūgnābant. 4. Bellum, quod Germānīs intulerat, duōbus annīs¹ pertulit. 5. Postrīdiē ēius diēi montem reliquit, et, aciē instrūctā, ad lacum prōcessit, quō in locō erant castra hostium. 6. Ultrā eum locum, circiter mīlia² passuum duo ā Bibractī, cōpiās pedestrēs dūxit. 7. Contentiōne omnium vīrium sē agricultūrae dedit. 8. Intellēxit hostēs locum castris idōneum dēligere.

II. 1. Caesar led his army about three³ miles to the town (of) Bibracte.⁴ 2. On the day after that day, having received⁵ many wounds, they led their forces to a high hill near the river. 3. I know that you are drawing up a triple line of battle. 4. They fought even (up) to sunset, and no one saw an enemy turned away. 5. The army was led six hundred paces beyond the city. 6. The Germans had settled in a place beyond the Rhine. 7. You knew that they were surrendering their arms, and giving hostages to Caesar. 8. At sunset they will bring the battle to an end. 9. Were you not bringing the grain down from the hills into the town?

367.

READING LESSON

Eōdem diē Ariovistus castra prōmōvit,⁶ et mīlibus⁷ passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēi praeter Caesaris castra suās cōpiās trādūxit, et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit. Caesar ubi intellēxit Ariovistum sē castris tenēre, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōsēderant, circiter passūs sēscentōs ab eis, locum castris idōneum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā, ad eum locum vēnit. Proximō diē Caesar ē

¹ See 167, 2. ² *two thousands of paces — two miles.* ³ See 366, I, 6. ⁴ Acc. in apposition with *oppidum*. ⁵ Abl. Abs. ⁶ Infer meaning. ⁷ See 267.

castris utrisque¹ cōpiās suās ēdūxit et aciem īnstrūxit. Eō diē ācritēr pūgnātū² est utrimque³ ūsque ad vesperum. Sōlis occāsū Ariovistus, multis vulneribus et inlātis et acceptis, suās cōpiās in castra redūxit.

368. Root *mit*, *send*.

mit-tō, *send* *mis-sile*, *a javelin* *o-mit-tō*, *neglect*
mis-siō, *a sending* *ā-mit-tō*, *—?* *com-mis-sūra*, *a joining together*

Form compound words with *com*, *inter*, *per*, *prae*, *sub*, and give meaning.

ENG. DER. — Admit, omit, mission, promise, remittance, missionary.

LESSON LVI

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS — WORD LIST

369. The indefinite *quis* is rare except in the compound *aliquis*, *some one*, and the combinations *siquis*, *if any one*; *nē quis*, *lest any one*; *numquis*, *whether any one*; and a few others which will be explained later.

370.

	SINGULAR	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
N.	<i>aliquis (aliqui)</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
G.	<i>alioctus</i>	<i>alioctus</i>
D.	<i>aliocti</i>	<i>aliocti</i>
Ac.	<i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>
Ab.	<i>aliquō</i>	<i>aliquā</i>
	<i>Neut.</i>	
	<i>aliquid (aliquod)</i>	
	<i>alioctus</i>	
	<i>aliocti</i>	
	<i>aliquid (aliquod)</i>	
	<i>aliquō</i>	
	PLURAL	
N.	<i>aliqui</i>	<i>aliquae</i>
G.	<i>aliquorum</i>	<i>aliquarum</i>
D.	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>
Ac.	<i>aliquos</i>	<i>aliquas</i>
Ab.	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>

¹ Adj., agreeing with *castris*, *both*. ² Lit. it was fought. Translate, *they fought*. ³ Adv., modifying *pūgnātum est*, *on both sides*.

371. The forms **aliqui** (sing.) and **aliquod** are used adjectively : **aliqui deus**, *some god*; **aliquod malum**, *some evil*.

372. The most important indefinites besides **aliquis** are : —

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam) , <i>a certain one</i>
quisquam	(quaequam)	quidquam (quicquam) , <i>any one</i>
quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque) , <i>each one, every one</i>

1. These are declined like the simple pronoun, but **quidam** changes **m** to **n** before **d** : **quendam**, **quorundam**.

373. **Aliquis** means some one unknown to the speaker. **Quidam** means a certain one not described by the speaker.

374. VOCABULARY

acervus , i , m. , <i>heap, pile.</i>	carpō , ere , ai , tus , <i>pick, gather.</i>
indolēs , is , f. , <i>disposition, character.</i>	implōrō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>implore,</i> <i>beg for.</i>
ālārius , a , um , <i>belonging to the wing.</i>	invidēō , ēre , vidī , vīsus , <i>grudge,</i> <i>envy (w. Dat.).</i>
ālārīi , ōrum , m. pl. , <i>auxiliaries on</i> <i>the wing.</i>	mūtō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>change.</i>
aliēnus , a , um , <i>belonging to another,</i> <i>another's.</i>	dēmum , adv. , <i>at length.</i>
contentus , a , um , <i>content, satisfied.</i>	ōlīm , adv. , <i>formerly, once upon a time.</i>

375. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dicunt formicam olim hominem fuisse. 2. Hic homō agricultūrae m̄ximē studuit, suīs autem labōribus contentus nōn erat. 3. Quam ob rem¹ in animal quae² nunc formīca vocātur mūtātus est. 4. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar omnēs ālārīōs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit. 5. Dixistis eum, triplici acīe instrūctā, ūsque ad castra hostium accessisse. 6. Homō quod bonis aliēnīs invīdit frūgēs proximōrum carpsit. 7. Hostēs ad Caesarem mittentēs pācem implōrābant. 8. Dēmum, armīs trāditīs, condiciōnem pācis obtinuērunt. 9. Quidam primā

¹ *therefore.*

² Attracted into agreement with **formīca**.

lūce ad castra nostra vēnit. 10. Quārē quisquam bonis 'aliēnis invidet? 11. Quidam speculātōrēs ad castra hostium quāque nocte veniēbant.

II. 1. Each one was content with his own labors, and did not envy the good fortune of another. 2. A certain man was changed into an ant because he was not content with his own labors. 3. The ant kept picking up heaps of grain. 4. The disposition of the man was not changed. 5. Why does any one refuse to bring aid to his friends? 6. We saw some soldiers every day near the town. 7. The soldier does not envy the leader's danger. 8. Some are content with a brief story. 9. I shall not give this shield to any one.

376.

READING LESSON: *Formīca*

Formīca, quae nunc est, ōlim homō erat; et māximē agricultūrae studēns, labōribus suis contentus nōn erat; sed semper bonis¹ aliēnis invidēns frūgēs proximōrum carpēbat. Iuppiter² autem, irātus³ ēius avāritiae, mūtāvit eum in animal quae nunc formīca vocātur. Sed, fōrmā mūtātā, indolem nōn mūtāvit; nam etiam nunc, circumiēns⁴ ad acervōs frūmentī, frūgēs aliēnās conligit,⁵ sibi que repōnit.⁶

377.

WORD LIST IX

acervus	*circiter	implōrō	*mōrior	**quīdam
*adequitō	*conclāmō	improbū	**mox	**quisquam
**adferō	*condō	incalēscō	**mūtō	**quisque
*agricultūra	*cōnsidō	indolēs	*occāsus	*reciperō
ālārii	*contentus	**īnferō	*occāsus sōlis	rigēō
ālārius	**dēferō	*intelligō	**ōlim	serpēns
**aliēnus	*dēmum	*interclūdō	passus	*ultrā
**aliquis	*exerceō	*inveniō	**perferō	*ūisque
avāritia	**ferō	*invidēō	**permōveō	*versor
*benefactor	gelus	*īrāscor	*postrīdiē	vestis
*carpō	*hiems	lingua	*praeter	vulgus
catēna	*hospitium	*miserēscō	*prōdūcō	*vulnus

¹ the property of others. ² Jupiter. ³ angry at his avarice: avāritiae, Dat. after the intrans. Irāscor, see 294. ⁴ going around. ⁵ gathers. ⁶ lays up.

378. Root *fac*, *make* or *do*.

fac-i-ō, *make, do* *fac-tum*, *deed* *fac-ilis*, *easy*
fac-iēs, *appearance, make* *fac-ul-tās*, *ability* *diff-ic-ilis*, *hard*

1. Observe changes in the root in composition. Form compound verbs with *con*, *dē*, *per*, *prae*, making the same change in the root as in *difficilis*.

ENG. DER. — Fact, factor, factory, faction, facility, defect.

LESSON LVII

IRREGULAR VERBS — *Volō* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

379. *Volō*, *be willing, wish*. Princ. Parts, *volō*, *velle*, *volui*
Nōlō (*nōn* + *volō*), *be unwilling*. Princ. Parts, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlui*
Mālō (*magis* + *volō*), *wish rather, prefer*. Princ. Parts, *mālō*,
mālle, *mālui*

PRESENT

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1. <i>volō</i>	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>mālō</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
2. <i>vis</i>	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
3. <i>vult</i>	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālunt</i>

IMPERFECT

volē-ba-m, etc. *nōlē-ba-m*, etc. *mālē-ba-m*, etc.

FUTURE

vol-a-m *nōl-a-m* *māl-a-m*
vol-ē-s, etc. *nōl-ē-s*, etc. *māl-ē-s*, etc.

PERFECT

vol-u-ī, etc. *nōl-u-ī*, etc. *māl-u-ī*, etc.

PLUPERFECT

vol-u-eram, etc. *nōl-u-eram*, etc. *māl-u-eram*, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

vol-u-erō, etc. *nōl-u-erō*, etc. *māl-u-erō*, etc.

BEGIN. LAT. BK. — 10

1. Observe that *nōlō* and *mālō* are compounds of *volō*, and that the irregularities occur in the Present tense only.

380.

VOCABULARY

<i>hospes</i> , <i>itis</i> , m. and f., <i>host, guest</i> , <i>cōnfidō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>fisus sum</i> , <i>trust firmly, guest-friend.</i>	<i>rely upon.</i>
<i>nāvicula</i> , <i>ae</i> , f., <i>skiff.</i>	<i>dēligō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>bind fast, fasten.</i>
<i>phalanx</i> , <i>ngis</i> , f., <i>phalanx.</i>	<i>ēripō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>uī</i> , <i>reptus</i> , <i>snatch away.</i>
<i>quaestor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , m., <i>quaestor.</i>	<i>pereō</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ivī</i> (II), <i>itus</i> , <i>perish.</i>
<i>testis</i> , <i>is</i> , m. and f., <i>witness.</i>	<i>revellō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>I</i> , <i>vulsus</i> , <i>pull back, tear away.</i>
<i>uxor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , f., <i>wife.</i>	
<i>voluptās</i> , <i>ātis</i> , f., <i>pleasure.</i>	
	<i>trahō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>trāxī</i> , <i>trāctus</i> , <i>draw, drag.</i>

381.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs testēs suae¹ quisque virtūtis habēbat. 2. At Germāni phalange factā in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. 3. Ad flūmen Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnquāgintā, pervēnērunt. 4. Ibi paucī salūtem sibi repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariōvistus, quī nāviculam ad ripam dēligātam invēnerat. 5. Meīs amicīs cōfīdere mālō, fidī enim sunt. 6. Nostrī salūtem in fugā petere nōlēbant. 7. Hostēs ad flūmen contendere voluerant. 8. In urbe manēre mālet. 9. Caesar māgnā voluptāte hospitem suum ēreptum esse ē manibus hostium audīvit. 10. Mulierēs in castrīs manēre nōluerant; itaque multae occīsae sunt in fugā.

II. 1. Many perished in this battle, for it was long and fierce. 2. Caesar's guest friend was being dragged along the road. 3. There were many witnesses of his bravery, for the army had been drawn up upon the hill. 4. The enemy did not wish to give up their arms. 5. Caesar did not trust Ariovistus firmly. 6. The two wives of Ariovistus preferred to perish in flight. 7. The soldiers wished to assault the town at daybreak. 8. I was unwilling to snatch the shield away from my friend. 9. The skiff was bound fast to the bank.

¹ The reflexive regularly precedes *quisque* when used in the same sentence.

382.

READING LESSON

Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsq; castrīs paucōs reliquit et omnēs ālārīos in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit. Ipse, triplici īnstrūctā aciē, ūsq; ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum Germāni suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefecit; ipse ā dextrō¹ cornū proelium commisit. Nostri ācrit̄er in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt et diū in ūnō locō pūgnātum est. Tandem hostēs fugere coepērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt² quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnquāgintā, pervēnērunt. Multī in eā pūgnā atque fugā occīsī sunt; in hīs duae Ariovistī uxōrēs. Duae filiae; hārum altera occīsa est, altera capta. Ariovistus ipse ēvāsīt.³

383. Root *fer*, *bear*.*fer-ō*, *bear**for-tē*, *by chance**for-tūna*, —?*fer-t-ilis*, —?*fer-t-ili-tās*, —?*dē-fer-ō*, —?

ENG. DER. — Fertile, fortune, infer, offer, suffer. Give others.



LESSON LVIII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS

384. Review carefully 136, 147, 148, 272-275, 286-288, 298.

385.

VOCABULARY

gēns, *gentis*, f., *tribe*, *nation*.*commoveō*, *ēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtus*,*Lābiēnus*, I, m., *Labienus*.*move*, *disturb*.*littera*, ae, f., *letter*; pl. *epistle*, *letter*.*condūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*, *lead**rūmor*, *ōris*, m., *report*, *rumor*.*or bring together*.*cōgō*, *ere*, *cōgī*, *cōactus*, *drive* *coniūrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *conspire*.
together, *collect*.¹ *right*.² *neque dēstitērunt*, *did not cease*.³ *escaped*.

386. SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS

I. 1. Tū mihi litterās ā Lābiēnō dedistī, ego huīc lēgātō dedī.
 2. Hīc puer bonus est, ille malus. 3. Vōs ad herbida loca perveniētis, nōs ad montēs. 4. Cūius est tēlum? illius est. 5. In locum properās ultrā quem castra posita sunt. 6. Huīc ignōscit, illi nōn ignōscit. 7. Quidam homō contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvit. 8. Dicit sē litterās mihi dedisse. 9. Is est amīcus mihi, tibi inimīcus ille. 10. Tuus amīcus tibi nōn est similis.

II. 1. The man killed himself. 2. His friend is unlike him. 3. You are unfriendly to me, but I am friendly to you. 4. You gave me a letter from my friend. 5. Whose arms are in the town? The soldiers' arms (are). 6. Men and women are present; the former are brave, the latter graceful. 7. He gave his weapons to a certain man who was in our camp. 8. The men themselves will be in the village. 9. The king says that a supply of grain is at hand for you.

387.**EXERCISES**

I. 1. Rūmōrēs crēbrī ad Caesarem adlātī erant, quibus rūmōribus nōn est territus. 2. Dīcit Caesarem duās novās legiōnēs cōscribere, quās ē castrīs contrā hostēs dūcet. 3. Nūntiātum est omnēs Belgās inter sē obsidēs dare. 4. His litterīs rūmōribusque nōn omnīnō commōtus est, sed exercitum condūcere coepit. 5. Belgae, quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant, gēns fortis et bellicōsa erant. 6. Lābiēnus, ūnus ex Caesaris lēgātīs, eī nūntiōs et litterās mīsit. 7. Ubi est in agrīs pābuli cōpia, iter faciēmus in finēs hostium. 8. Dīcit manum māgnam Belgārum cōgī et contrā Caesarem armārī.

II. 1. Caesar came into Gaul into the winter quarters over which Labienus was in command. 2. Caesar will enroll three new legions in farther Gaul, and lead them together into winter quarters. 3. All the Belgae are conspiring against the Roman people, and giving hostages to one another. They say that the

neighbors of the Belgae are being led together. 5. When we had led the army together into one place, a fierce battle was fought.¹ 6. They said that Caesar was disturbed by the rumors of war. 7. Many hostile nations wished to contend with the Germans.

388. Root *leg*, *gather*.

leg-ō, *gather* *dī-lig-ō*, *choose* *dī-lig-enter*, —?
leg-idō, —? *dī-lig-entia*, *diligence* *in-tel-leg-ō*, *know*

ENG. DER. — Coil, cull, collection, legion, legend, intellect, neglect. Form others.



LESSON LIX

IRREGULAR VERBS—**Eō** AND **Fīō**, INDICATIVE— CONSTRUCTIONS OF PLACE

389. **Eō**, *go*. Princ. Parts, *eō*, *ire*, *ivi*(*ii*), *itus*

PRESENT

SING.	PLUR.		
1. e-ō	i-mus	IMPF. i-ba-m , etc.	PERF. i-v-i (<i>i-i</i>), etc.
2. i-s	i-tis	FUT. i-b-ō , etc.	PLUP. i-v-er-a-m , etc.
3. i-t	e-u-nt		FUT. PERF. i-v-er-ō , etc.

1. Supply omitted forms. **Eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular, passive. The compounds **ad-eō**, *I approach*, and **in-eō**, *I enter*, are transitive, and have a passive inflection also.

390. SINGULAR

PRES.	1.	ad-e-o-r		
		ad-i-ris (<i>re</i>)	IMPF.	ad-i-ba-r , etc.
		ad-i-tur	FUT.	ad-i-bo-r , etc.
	PLURAL		PERF.	ad-i-t-us sum , etc.
		ad-i-mur	PLUP.	ad-i-t-us eram , etc.
		ad-i-mini	FUT. PERF.	ad-i-t-us erō , etc.
	3.	ad-e-u-ntur		

¹ *ācritēr pūgnātum est.*

- 391.** **Fīō, become** (used as passive of **faciō**)
 Princ. Parts, **fīō, fieri, factus sum**

SINGULAR			
PRES.	1. fī-ō	IMPF.	fī-ē-ba-m , etc.
	2. fī-s	FUT.	fī-a-m
	3. fī-t		fī-ē-s , etc.
	PLURAL	PERF.	fac-t-us sum , etc.
	1. fī-mus	PLUP.	fac-t-us eram , etc.
	2. fī-tis	FUT. PERF.	fac-t-us erō , etc.
	3. fī-unt		

392. Examine the following : —

1. **Caesarem certiorē facit, he informs Caesar** (makes Caesar more certain).
2. **Caesar certior factus est, Caesar was informed.**

Observe that **certior** is an adjective in the comparative degree, and is declined like any other comparative.

393. Examine the following : —

1. **Ā Galliā nāvigāvit, he sailed away from Gaul.**
2. **Rōmā profectus est, he set out from Rome.**
3. **Ex urbe ēgressus est, he went out of the city.**
4. **Dēlō vēnit, he came from Delos.**
5. **Domō exivit, he went out from home.**

RULE. — The place from which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a preposition, generally **ab, dē, or ex**; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs**, omit the preposition.

394. Examine the following : —

1. **Ad finēs Belgārum properat, he hastens to the territory of the Belgae.**
2. **In Ītaliā profectus est, he set out for Italy.**
3. **Rōmam ivit, he went to Rome.**

4. *Dēlum nāvigāvit, he sailed to Delos.*
5. *Domum ibit, he will go home.*
6. *Rūs vēnit, he came into the country.*

RULE. — The place to which is regularly expressed by the Accusative with a preposition ; but names of towns and small islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, omit the preposition.

395. Examine the following : —

1. *In urbe mānsit, he remained in the city.*
2. *Rōmae mānsit, he remained at Rome.*
3. *Athēnis fuit, he was at Athens.*
4. *Dēlō nōn fui, I was not at Delos.*
5. *Rēx erat Curibus, the king was at Cures.*
6. *Domī erāmus, we were at home.*

RULE. — The place in which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *in* ; but names of towns and small islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, are put in the Locative.

NOTE. — The Locative (see 21, n. 1) has the same form as the Genitive in singulars of the First and Second Declensions ; but in singulars of the Third and all plurals it has the same form as the Dative or Ablative. The Locative forms of *domus* and *rūs* are *domī* and *rūrī*.

396.

VOCABULARY

<i>Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., Athens.</i>	<i>ēgredior, I, gressus sum, go or march out.</i>
<i>Curēs, ium, f. or m. pl., Cures.</i>	
<i>Dēlos, I, f., Delos.</i>	<i>certiōrem¹ faciō, ere, fēcī, certior factus, inform.</i>
<i>rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f., grain supply.</i>	<i>nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātus, sail.</i>
<i>Rōma, ae, f., Rome.</i>	<i>proficiscor, I, fectus sum, set out.</i>
<i>rūs, rūris, n., country (opposed to city).</i>	<i>frustrā, adv., in vain.</i>
	<i>statim, adv., immediately, at once.</i>

¹ Inflected to agree with object of *faciō*.

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impetū factō in multa oppida, Rōmam statim profectus est. 2. Rēbus frūmentāriis conlētīs, Dēlum cum māximā multitudīne hominū ivit. 3. Certior factus est amicum domum proficisci.¹ 4. Athēnīs sunt multī et fortēs virī, quī statim Dēlum nāvīgābunt. 5. Diū Curibus mānsit, tum Athēnās vēnit. 6. Frūstrā cōnātus est nāvīgāre domum. 7. Q. Pedius,² Caesaris lēgātus, cum cōpiīs omnibus in interiōrem Galliam statim ibit. 8. Ēgressus est ex urbe quod rūs ire volēbat. 9. Māius fiet periculum quod hostēs ad nostra oppida veniunt. 10. Rōmam ivērunt, quae urbs clārissima erat.

II. 1. He went to Rome on the tenth day and set out immediately for Athens. 2. Grain supplies were brought into the city, for the citizens feared an attack of the enemy. 3. He informs them that the soldiers are making an attack in vain. 4. You will go immediately into the country. 5. He will have gone to Delos within four days. 6. There were few inhabitants in Cures. 7. He became king at Athens. 8. He will become the leader of all their forces. 9. They were going from the city to the country.

398.

READING LESSON

Cum esset³ Caesar in citeriōre Galliā in hibernīs, crēbrī rūmōrēs ad eum adferēbantur, litterisque item⁴ Lābiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē⁵ dare. Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōscripsit, et initā⁶ aestāte in interiōrem Galliā cum eīs Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet,⁷ ad exercitum vēnit. Fīnitimī Belgārum Caesarī nūntiāverunt manūs cōgī et exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Quārē Caesar ad eōs proficisci cōstituit. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

¹ certior factus is followed by the construction of the indirect discourse.

² Quintus Pedius. ³ When Caesar was. ⁴ likewise. ⁵ to one another.

⁶ in the beginning of summer. ⁷ when there began to be. . . .

399. Root, *da*, *give*.

<i>dō</i> , <i>give</i>	<i>dō-nō</i> , <i>give</i>	<i>ē-dō</i> , <i>give out</i>
<i>dē-dō</i> , <i>give up</i>	<i>dō-num</i> , — ?	<i>trā-dō</i> (<i>trāns</i> + <i>dō</i>), <i>give over</i>
<i>dē-di-tiō</i> , — ?	<i>vēn-dō</i> , <i>sell</i>	<i>trā-di-tiō</i> , — ?

ENG. DER.—Date, dot, dative, edition, donor, donatē, traitor, vend.



LESSON LX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, *Sum*—INDEPENDENT USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

400.	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. <i>si-m</i>	<i>es-se-m</i>	<i>fu-er-i-m</i>	<i>fu-isse-m</i>
	2. <i>si-s</i>	<i>es-sē-s</i>	<i>fu-er-i-s</i>	<i>fu-issē-s</i>
	3. <i>si-t</i>	<i>es-se-t</i>	<i>fu-er-i-t</i>	<i>fu-isse-t</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>si-mus</i>	<i>es-sē-mus</i>	<i>fu-er-i-mus</i>	<i>fu-issē-mus</i>
	2. <i>si-tis</i>	<i>es-sē-tis</i>	<i>fu-er-i-tis</i>	<i>fu-issē-tis</i>
	3. <i>si-nt</i>	<i>es-se-nt</i>	<i>fu-er-i-nt</i>	<i>fu-isse-nt</i>

1. Observe that the Imperfect Subjunctive is made from the Present Infinitive, the Pluperfect Subjunctive from the Perfect Infinitive.

2. Note also the one difference in inflection between the Perfect Subjunctive and the Future Perfect Indicative (see 208). Note that the Future and Future Perfect tenses are lacking in the Subjunctive.

401. The Subjunctive is used either independently or dependently. It is used in independent clauses to express —

1. An exhortation : *Simus fortēs*, *let us be brave*.

A command : *Sit miser*, *let him be wretched*.

A prohibition : *Nē fueris inimicus*, *do not be unfriendly*.

In this use it is called the Hortatory Subjunctive.

2. A wish : *Utinam essem Rōmae*, *would that I were at Rome*.

In this use it is called the Optative Subjunctive.

3. A possibility: *Aliquis sit amicus, some one may be a friend.* In this use it is called the Potential Subjunctive.

4. Doubt or Indignation in questions: *Quid faciamus? What shall we do?* In this use it is called the Dubitative Subjunctive.

The use of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses will be gradually discussed as the work advances.

402.

VOCABULARY

clāva, ae, f., staff, club.

Herculēs, is, m., Hercules.

magistrātus, ūs, m., magistrate.

Nemea, ae, f., Nemea.

pecus, oris, n., flock.

sagitta, ae, f., arrow.

umerus, i, m., shoulder.

vallēs, is, f., valley.

advocō, āre, āvi, ātus, call to or towards.

cōnsentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus, agree with, conspire.

impōnō, ere, posui, positus, place upon, assign.

valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, be strong, avail.

vīvō, ere, vixi, victus, live.

403.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Leōne interfectō, fortēs simus.* 2. *In valle Nemeae leō ingēns vivēbat quī pecora hominēsque interficiēbat.* 3. *Herculēs sit fortis, leō enim adest.* 4. *Rēx dixit: "Cūrae tibi sit ea rēs."* 5. *Herculēs respondit: "Quam celerimē¹ leōnem interficiam," et statim profectus est.* 6. *Herculēs clāvam in manū suā habuit.* 7. *Mortuum leōnem umeris imposuerat et ad rēgem tulerat.* 8. *Utinam domī essem, ingēns enim leō ad mē venit.* 9. *Quid faciam? Nam omnēs cōsentiunt leōnem esse hominī inimicum.* 10. *Ūnum imperium et ūnum magistrātum eōs habēre dixerunt.*



PHARETRA

II. 1. Let our friends be faithful in (time of) danger. 2. Hercules had used his club and arrows in vain. 3. The king had called Hercules to him, and had assigned to him twelve labors. 4. Her-

¹ as quickly as possible.

cules was not able to kill the lion with his club or arrows. 5. They had not conspired against the Roman people, and were ready to give hostages. 6. The Germans who live on this side of the Rhine had joined themselves with these. 7. Over this river was a bridge. Here he places a guard, and on the other side of the river he leaves a lieutenant with six cohorts. 8. Would that he were¹ with his army in the camp. 9. Let us be faithful to our friends. 10. He may be brave, but he is not good.

404.

READING LESSON: *Nemeus Leō*

In valle Nemeae leō ingēns vivēbat, et pecora hominēsque cottidiē interficiēbat. Eurystheus,² rēx Tīrynthis,³ Herculem ad sē advocāvit, eīque dixit: "Cūrae tibi sit hunc leōnem quam celerrimē interficere."⁴ Statim proficiscitur Herculēs. Clāvā sagittisque frūstrā ūsus, impetū factō, leōnem manibus interfēcit. Tum ad Eurystheum revertit, mortuum leōnem umeris impositum ferēns.

405. Root *ac*, *sharp*.*ac-er*, *sharp**ac-er-bus*, *bitter, sour**ac-lēs*, *edge, line of battle**ac-us*, *needle**ac-ri-ter*, — ?*ac-er-bl-tās*, *sharpness*

ENG. DER. — Edge, acrobat, acid, acrimonious.



LESSON LXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — SEQUENCE OF TENSES

406. The tenses of the Subjunctive in dependent clauses follow special laws of sequence.

407. All tenses are divided into two classes, primary and secondary.

¹ See 401, 2. ² *Eurystheus*. ³ *Tīryns*, Gen. *Tīrynthis*, or *Tīrynthos*, *Tīryns* (an ancient town of Argolis). ⁴ *interficere*, subject of *ait*. Translate, *Let it be a care to you to kill*, or *See that you kill* . . .

408. The primary tenses express present or future time : the Present, Pure Perfect,¹ Future, and Future Perfect Indicative, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Present and Future Imperative.

409. The secondary tenses express past time : the Imperfect, Perfect Historical,² and Pluperfect Indicative, and the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

410. General Rule for Sequence of Tenses. — In complex sentences a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary in the subordinate, a secondary by a secondary.

411. Examine the following : —

1. **Monet ut simus boni**, *he advises us to be good* (that we may be).
2. **Monēbit ut simus boni**, *he will advise us to be good.*
3. **Monuit ut essemus boni**, *he advised us to be good* (that we might be).
4. **Monuerat ut essemus boni**, *he had advised us to be good.*
5. **Monēbat ut essemus boni**, *he was advising us to be good.*
6. **Monuit ut simus boni**, *he has advised us to be good.*
7. **Monuerit ut simus boni**, *he will have advised us to be good.*

Learn these examples, and note the distinction in meaning and use of the tenses in 3 and 6. Learn carefully the list of primary and secondary tenses, and in the succeeding lessons point them out until you are thoroughly familiar with them.

412.

VOCABULARY

Galba, ae, m., *Galba*.

hydra, ae, f., *hydra*.

iūs, iūris n., *right, law*.

iūstitia, ae, f., *justice*.

Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Remi*.

Suessalōnēs, um, m. pl., *the Suessiones*.

plērusque, aque, umque, a *very great part*.

plērīque, ōrumque, m. pl., *the most*.

¹ That use of the Perfect which is expressed in English by the Present Perfect.

² The English simple Past tense.

abscidō, ere, ī, scisus, cut off or away. **expellō, ere, pull, pulsus, expel, drive out.**

dimittō, ere, misi, missus, send away, dismiss. **orior, iri, tus sum, arise, spring or descend from.**

distineō, ēre, ul, tentus, hold or keep apart. **antiquitus, adv., long ago, in ancient times.**

ut, conj., that, in order that.

413.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Lēgātī, primī cīvītātis, ad eum ab Rēmīs missī sunt.*
 2. *Hī omnēs sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permiserunt.* 3. *Rēmī neque cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsensērunt neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant.* 4. *Plērique Belgae erant ortī ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductī, propter fertilitātem ibi cōsēderant.* 5. *Apud Suessiōnēs fuerat rēx nostrā etiam memoriā¹ Divitiācus, tōtius Galliae potentissimus.* 6. *Pontem Caesar facit ut subsidiō sibi sit.* 7. *Pontem Caesar fēcit ut subsidiō sibi esset.* 8. *Ad Aeduōs lēgātōs mittet ut frūmentī cōpia sibi sit.* 9. *Ad Aeduōs lēgātōs miserat ut frūmentī cōpia sibi esset.* 10. *Lēgātus ad collem legiōnem decimam misit ut Caesarī auxiliō esset.*

II. 1. Galba was chosen leader² on account of his justice and prudence. 2. Caesar having encouraged³ the Remi, ordered all the senate to come to him, and all the children of the chiefs to be brought to him as hostages. 3. Caesar advises his soldiers to be (that they may be) brave. 4. Caesar advised his soldiers to be (that they might be) brave. 5. Caesar was advising his soldiers to be brave. 6. Caesar will advise his soldiers to be brave. 7. Caesar has advised his centurions to be faithful. 8. Caesar will have advised the tenth legion to be faithful. 9. The lieutenant had advised his centurions to be brave.

414.

READING LESSON.

Rēmī ad Caesarem lēgātōs, primōs cīvītātis, miserunt, quī dixerunt Rēmōs sē suaque omnia in potestātem populi Rōmānī per-

¹ even within our memory.

² See 357, n.

³ cohortātus.

mittere,¹ neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,² parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere : reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,³ sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse.

Dē summā⁴ autem bellī et dē numerō armātōrum lēgātī Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt. Summa bellī, quam Bellovaci⁵ propter virtutem numerumque militum postulāverunt, ad Galbam, rēgem Suessiōnum, propter iūstitiam prūdētiāque dēlāta est.⁶

Caesar, Rēmōs cohortātus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter⁷ ad diem facta sunt. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venīre vidit, flūmen Axonam cōpiās trādūxit ibique castra posuit.

415. Root *sta*, *stand*.

stō, *stand*

sta-bulum, —?

sta-tūra, —?

sta-bilia, *firm*

sta-tiō, —?

sta-tim, *immediately*

ENG. DER. — State, station, stand, distant, constant, standard.

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FIRST CONJUGATION — PURPOSE CLAUSES

416.

Active

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. <i>voce-m</i> ¹	<i>vocā-re-m</i>	<i>vocāv-eri-m</i>	<i>vocāv-isse-m</i>
	2. <i>vocē-s</i>	<i>vocā-rē-s</i>	<i>vocāv-eri-s</i>	<i>vocāv-issē-s</i>
	3. <i>voce-t</i>	<i>vocā-re-t</i>	<i>vocāv-eri-t</i>	<i>vocāv-isse-t</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>vocē-mus</i>	<i>vocā-rē-mus</i>	<i>vocāv-eri-mus</i>	<i>vocāv-issē-mus</i>
	2. <i>vocē-tis</i>	<i>vocā-rē-tis</i>	<i>vocāv-eri-tis</i>	<i>vocāv-issē-tis</i>
	3. <i>voce-nt</i>	<i>vocā-re-nt</i>	<i>vocāv-eri-nt</i>	<i>vocāv-isse-nt</i>

¹ *permittō*, *intrust*. ² Contracted form for *coniūrāvisse*. ³ *dwelt*.
⁴ *the leadership*. ⁵ *the Bellovaci*. ⁶ *was conferred*. ⁷ *promptly*.

⁸ No sufficient translation of the Subjunctive can be given in the paradigms. You must depend for its meaning upon a study of the context and the illustrative examples which will accompany the discussion of this mood.

417.

Passive

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. voce-r	vocā-re-r	vocātus sim	vocātus essem
	2. vocē-ris(re)	vocā-rē-ris(re)	vocātus sis	vocātus esseās
	3. vocē-tur	vocā-rē-tur	vocātus sit	vocātus esset
PLUR.	1. vocē-mur	vocā-rē-mur	vocāti simus	vocāti essemus
	2. vocē-mini	vocā-rē-mini	vocāti sitis	vocāti essētis
	3. voce-ntur	vocā-re-ntur	vocāti sint	vocāti essent

418. Observe the change in the stem vowel of the Present Subjunctive, both active and passive, and the one difference in form of the Perfect Subjunctive and Future Perfect Indicative active.

Inflect in the same way *mūtō*, *armō*, *implōrō*, *superō*.

419. Examine the following : —

1. *Magister venit ut discipulōs vocet, the teacher is coming to call the pupils* (that he may call).
2. *Magister vēnit ut discipulōs vocāret, the teacher came to call the pupils* (that he might call).
3. *Militēs fortiter pūgnant nē dux culpet, the soldiers fight bravely that their leader may not blame them* (lest he may).
4. *Militēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt nē dux culpāret, the soldiers fought bravely that their leader might not blame them* (lest he might).
5. *Militēs ad superiōrem locum contendēt, quō facilius pūgnent, the soldiers will hasten to a higher place in order to fight more easily* (in order that they may).
6. *Militēs ad superiōrem locum contendērunt, quō facilius pūgnārent, the soldiers hastened to a higher place in order to fight more easily* (in order that they might).

1. Observe that *ut, in order that*, introduces an affirmative clause of purpose ; *nē, that not or lest*, a negative one ; and that *quō* is used with a comparative to express purpose. Never use the infinitive in such clauses.

2. The law for the sequence of tenses (408-410) should be followed in writing the exercise of this lesson.

420.

VOCABULARY

bēlua, ae, f., *beast, monster.***cōnāllium**, I, n., *plan, counsel.***discipulus**, I, m., *pupil.***liber**, brī, m., *book.***nātiō**, ōnis, f., *nation.***venēnātus**, a, um, *poisoned, poisonous.***cōnsumō**, ere, psī, ptus, *destroy, use up, consume.***ēnāscor**, I, nātus sum, *spring up, grow out.***tingō**, ere, tīnxī, tinctus, *wet, moisten.***vulnerō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *wound.***nē**, conj., *in order that not, lest.***quō**, conj. with comparatives, *that.***vērō**, adv., *in truth, indeed.*

421.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In palūdem vēnit ut hydram vulnerāret. 2. In palūdem venit ut hydram vulneret. 3. Antīquitus Herculēs, bēluā victā, sagittās sanguine tīnxit. 4. Multis oppidis cōnsūptis, monet ut militēs in Galliā hiement. 5. Lēgātum in Aquitāniam proficiscī iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus in Galliam auxilia convocentur. 6. In prōvinciam contendere cōstituit ut frūmentum comparārētur. 7. Rōmam vēnit, quō facilius amicōs liberāret. 8. Summā celeritāte in Galliam contendērunt ut agrōs hostium vāstārent. 9. Ad Ītaliā proficiscēmur ut auxilium ab amicis implōrēmus. 10. Multās cōpiās ūnum in locum condūcēs ut bellum renovēs.

II. 1. They came into the territory of the Remi in order to¹ devastate their fields. 2. He advises us not to change our plans. 3. You will set out for Rome in order to implore aid from Caesar. 4. We shall lead the lamb to the temple to sacrifice it. 5. You advised us to deliver our friends from danger. 6. We shall winter in Gaul in order that we may more easily attack the towns in the beginning of summer.² 7. He persuaded me³ not to give the books to the master. 8. They sent a messenger to carry the poisoned arrows to Hercules.

422.

READING LESSON: *Hydra Lernaea*

Hydra appellāta est bēlua, quae in palūde Lernaē⁴ versābātur, cui erant capita novem, octō vērō mortālīa, nōnum autem immor-

¹ Sign of Subj., ut. ² aestāte initā. ³ Dative. ⁴ Lernaē, of Lerna.

tāle. Capita mortalia Herculēs gladiō suō abscīdit, immortāle autem vulnerāre nōn potuit. Ūnō vērō capite abscisō, statim ēnāscēbantur duo. Haec autem, silvis incēnsis, igne cōnsūpsit. Tum caput immortāle sub saxō condidit. Hydrā ita victā, sagittās bēluæ sanguine venēnātō tīnxit.

423. Root fa-, shine, show.

fā-bula, *fable, story* fā-ma, *report*

in-fā-na, *infant*

fā-bulōsus, —? fā-s, *right* (by divine law)

in-fa-ndus, *unspeakable*

fā-bulōsē, —? nē-fā-s, —?

fā-tum, *fate* (things spoken)

ENG. DER.—Fable, fame, fate, nefarious, infamous. Form others.

LESSON LXIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, SECOND CONJUGATION — VERBS
OF FEARING — WORD LIST

424.

Active

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. monea-m	monē-re-m	monu-eri-m	monu-isse-m
	2. moneā-s	monē-rē-s	monu-eri-s	monu-issē-s
	3. monea-t	monē-re-t	monu-eri-t	monu-isse-t
PLUR.	1. moneā-mus	monē-rē-mus	monu-eri-mus	monu-issē-mus
	2. moneā-tis	monē-rē-tis	monu-eri-tis	monu-issē-tis
	3. monea-nt	monē-re-nt	monu-eri-nt	monu-isse-nt

425.

Passive

SING.	1. monea-r	monē-re-r	monitus sim	monitus essem
	2. moneā-ris(re)	monē-rē-ris(re)	monitus sis	monitus essēs
	3. moneā-tur	monē-rē-tur	monitus sit	monitus esset
PLUR.	1. moneā-mur	monē-rē-mur	monitī simus	monitī essēmus
	2. moneā-mini	monē-rē-mini	monitī sitis	monitī essētis
	3. monea-ntur	monē-re-ntur	monitī sint	monitī essent

1. Observe the signs of mood and tense in the above. In what respect do the Future Perfect Indicative active and the Perfect Subjunctive differ?

2. Inflect as above *teneō, terreō, dēleō*, observing carefully the principal parts of *dēleō*.

426. Examine the following: —

1. *Vereor nē pūgnet, I fear that he will fight.*
2. *Vereor ut pūgnet, I fear that he will not fight.*
3. *Veritus sum nē pūgnāret, I feared that he would fight.*
4. *Veritus sum ut pūgnāret, I feared that he would not fight.*

Observe the use of *nē* and *ut* with verbs of fearing, and compare this use with that seen in the preceding lesson.

Observe that the Subjunctive may be translated by the English Future Indicative; also that the dependent verbs follow the law of sequence of tenses (406-410).

RULE. — Verbs and other expressions of fearing are followed by the Subjunctive with *nē* affirmative and *ut* negative.

427.

VOCABULARY

funditor, ōris, m., slinger.

lccius, i, m., lccius.

sagittārius, i, m., archer.

tormentum, i, n., hurling engine.

conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus, set, place.

dēdō, ere, didi, dītus, give up, surrender.

statuō, ere, i, ūtus, station, set up, resolve.

supersedeō, ēre, sēdī, cessus, refrain from.

vereor, ēri, itus sum, fear.

item, adv., likewise.

libenter, adv., willingly, gladly.

428.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Veritus est nē tantae nātiōnēs coniūrārent.* 2. *Lābiēnum in Helvētiōs mīsit ut eam manum distinēret.* 3. *Iccius verētur ut proeliō libenter supersedeant.* 4. *Nōnne verēbāris ut oppidum ā funditōribus sagittāriisque expūgnārētur?* 5. *Hostēs item armis trāditis sē dēdidērunt, nē gravius dolērent.* 6. *Ad oppidum profectus, ibi castella cōstituit et tormenta conlocāvit ut celeriter*

oppidum expūgnārētur. 7. Vereor ut castra hostium dēleantur. 8. Veritī sunt nē castra movērētis. 9. Ad oppidum pedestrēs cōpiās ire iussit, ut oppūgnētur. 10. Nōne tē in Galliam mīsit ut hostēs proeliō prohibērēs?

II. 1. We feared lest the archers and slingers might attack the town. 2. They feared that the Helvetii might be terrified by the great danger. 3. They fear that the army will not willingly remain in Gaul. 4. We fear that you will destroy the towns of the enemy. 5. He will fear that Caesar may refrain from battle. 6. I likewise shall fear that the forces may be kept apart. 7. They hastened to the town in order that they might place hurling engines there. 8. We had feared that you would remain in the camp of the enemy.



FUNDITOR

429.

READING LESSON

Ā castrīs Rōmānōrum oppidum Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax,¹ aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū² Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Cum proeli finem nox fēcisset, Iccius, vir summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter Rēmōs, quī tum oppidō praefue-rat, nūntium ad Caesarem mīsit:³ sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse. Caesar statim auxiliō mīsit sagittāriōs et funditōrēs, quōrum ad-ventū oppidum reliquērunt hostēs et ad Caesaris castra omnibus cōpiis contendērunt. Caesar primō⁴ supersedēre proeliō cōsti-tuit, deinde fossam ab utrōque⁵ latere collis perdūxit et ad extrē-mās fossās castella cōstituit et tormenta conlōcāvit. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castrīs relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxērunt.

¹ *Bibrax* (a town of the Remi). ² *with great force*. ³ Indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying implied in *nūntium mīsit*. ⁴ *at first*. ⁵ *each*.

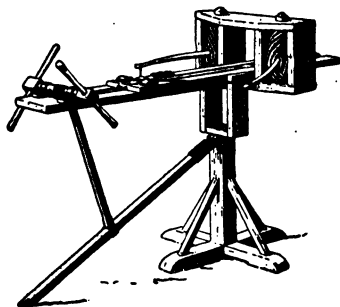
430. Root **dic**, *show, point*.**dic-ō**, *say, tell***dic-tā-tiō**, *a saying often***ē-dic-tum**, *edict***in-dex**, *pointer, witness***iū-dex**, *law speaker, judge***iū-dic-ium**, —?**ab-dic-ō**, —?**prae-dic-ō**, —?**prae-dic-tiō**, —?

ENG. DER. — Diction, dictionary, dictate, ditto, judge, edict, benediction. Form others.

431.

WORD LIST X

*abscidō	*dēligō	*impōnō	pecus	*supersedeō
**adeō	Dēlos	**incō	**pereō	testis
*advocō	*dīmittō	*item	phalanx	tingō
antīquitus	discipulus	**iūs	*plērusque	tortum
Athēnae	*distineō	**iūstitia	*proficiscor	*trahō
bēlua	*ēgredior	Lābiēnus	quaestor	umerus
clāva	**ēnāscor	libenter	*quō	ut
*cōgō	**eō	liber	Rēmī	uxor
*commoveō	*expellō	littera	*rēs frumentāria	valeō
*condūcō	fiō	*magistrātus	revellō	vallēs
*cōnfidō	frustrā	**mālō	*Rōma	venēnātus
*coniūrō	funditor	**nātiō	rūmor	vereor
*conlocō	Galba	**nāvicula	rūs	vērō
*cōnsentiō	*gēns	**nāvigō	**sagitta	*vīvō
*cōnsilium	Herculēs	*nē	**sagittārius	**volō
cōnsūmō	*hospes	Nemea	**statim	**voluptās
Curēs	hydra	**nōlō	**statuō	*vulnerō
*dēdō	Iccius	*orior	Suessiōnēs	



TORMENTUM

LESSON LXIV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, THIRD CONJUGATION — RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

432.

Active

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. rega-m	rege-re-m	rēx-erī-m	rēx-isse-m
	2. regā-s	rege-rē-s	rēx-erī-s	rēx-issē-s
	3. rega-t	rege-re-t	rēx-erī-t	rēx-isse-t
PLUR.	1. regā mus	rege-rē-mus	rēx-erī-mus	rēx-issē-mus
	2. regā-tis	rege-rē-tis	rēx-erī-tis	rēx-issē-tis
	3. rega-nt	rege-re-nt	rēx-erī-nt	rēx-isse-nt

433.

Passive

SING.	1. rega-r	rege-re-r	rēctus aīm	rēctus essem
	2. regā-ris(re)	rege-rē-ris(re)	rēctus sis	rēctus essēs
	3. regā-tur	rege-rē-tur	rēctus ait	rēctus esset
PLUR.	1. regā-mur	rege-rē-mur	rēctī aīmus	rēctī essemus
	2. regā-minī	rege-rē-minī	rēctī aītis	rēctī essētis
	3. rega-ntur	rege-re-ntur	rēctī aint	rēctī essent

Note vowel changes from the Present Indicative (63), and compare with the Future Indicative (128).

Inflect as above, *dūcō*, *mittō*, *vincō*.

434. Examine the following: —

1. *Rēmī lēgātōs mittunt quī dīcant, the Remi send ambassadors to say, that they may say* (who shall or may say).
2. *Rēmī lēgātōs misērunt quī dicerent, the Remi sent ambassadors to say, that they might say* (who should say).

Observe that *quī dīcant* and *quī dicerent* are equivalent respectively to *ut dīcant* and *ut dicerent*, and that they express purpose.

RULE. — Clauses introduced by relatives and used to express purpose, have their verbs in the Subjunctive, and follow the general law for the sequence of tenses (410).

435.

VOCABULARY

laqueus, I, m., *noose, snare.*nix, nivis, f., *snow.*tumultus, ūs, m., *tumult.*vadum, I, n., *ford.*exsistō, ere, stitī, —, *spring forth,*
*appear.*implicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *entangle,*
*enfold.*moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay.*praemittō, ere, mīsi, missus, *send*
*forward.*trānseō, Ire, Ivī (II), itus, *cross over.*

436.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In monte aper mīrā māgnitūdine erat. - 2. Eurystheus Herculem mīsit quī aprum occideret. 3. Aper quem Herculēs cēpit laqueis implicātus est. 4. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. 5. Caesar funditōrēs sagittāriōsque praemisit, quī āgmen hostium morārentur. 6. Ibi, vadis repertis, partem suōrum militum trādūcere cōnātī sunt quī hostēs vincerent. 7. Caesar certior factus ab lēgātō, omnem equitātum, funditōrēs, sagittāriōs pontem trādūcit quī oppidum dēfendant. 8. Hāc rē statim per speculātōrēs cognitā, Caesar exercitum castris continuit. 9. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus omnem exercitum, quī āgmen hostium interclūderet, praemisit. 10. Prīmōs quī trānsierant equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

II. 1. A large wild boar appeared in the mountains. 2. Caesar sent the tenth legion to defend (which should defend) the camp. 3. The lieutenant sent certain soldiers to cut down the bridge. 4. The Remi sent ambassadors to say that they had not conspired against the Roman people. 5. The king had been called by the senate, a friend of the Roman people. 6. Some of the enemy had been sent to storm the fortress. 7. The lieutenant was in command of the town which they stormed.

437.

READING LESSON: *Erymanthius Aper*

Exstitit in monte Erymanthiō¹ aper mīrā māgnitūdine. Hunc capere Herculēs iussus est ab rēge; itaque statim profectus est. Per nivēs diū insecūtus aprum, tandem laqueis implicātum capere potuit et ad Eurystheum rettulit.

¹ *Erymanthian* (belonging to Erymanthus, a mountain range in Arcadia).

438. Root *es*, *be*, *exist*.

s-um (<i>es</i> + <i>um</i>), <i>am</i>	in-s-um , —?	ab-s-entia , —?
inter-s-um , —?	sub-s-um , —?	es-s-entia , —?
super-s-um , —?	ab-s-ēns , <i>absent</i>	prae-s-entia , —?

ENG. DER. — Entity, essential, present, interest, absentee, quintessence.



LESSON LXV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FOURTH CONJUGATION — CLAUSES OF RESULT

439.

Active

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. audia-m	audi-re-m	audiv-eri-m	audiv-isse-m
	2. audia-s	audi-rē-s	audiv-eri-s	audiv-issē-s
	3. audia-t	audi-re-t	audiv-eri-t	audiv-isse-t
PLUR.	1. audia-mus	audi-rē-mus	audiv-eri-mus	audiv-issē-mus
	2. audia-tis	audi-rē-tis	audiv-eri-tis	audiv-issē-tis
	3. audia-nt	audi-re-nt	audiv-eri-nt	audiv-isse-nt

440.

Passive

SING.	1. audia-r	audi-re-r	audītus sim	audītus essem
	2. audia-ris(re)	audi-rē-ris(re)	audītus sis	audītus essēs
	3. audia-tur	audi-rē-tur	audītus sit	audītus esset
PLUR.	1. audia-mur	audi-rē-mur	audītī simus	audītī essemus
	2. audia-mini	audi-rē-mini	audītī sitis	audītī essētis
	3. audia-ntur	audi-re-ntur	audītī sint	audītī essent

441. Examine the following : —

1. **Flūmen erat tam altum ut sine nāvibus trānsiri nōn posset,**
the river was so deep that it could not be crossed without boats.
2. **Militēs ita fortiter pūgnāverunt ut oppidum expūgnārent,**
the soldiers fought so bravely that they took the town.
3. **Nōn dubitō quin oppidum mūniant,**
I do not doubt that they will fortify the town.

4. **Eum continēre nōn potui quin castra mūnīret, I could not restrain him from fortifying the camp.**

Observe that the subordinate clauses above express result, that they take the Subjunctive, that they follow the law of sequence of tenses (410), that the affirmative particle is **ut**, the negative **ut nōn**.

Observe that in 3 and 4 the Subjunctive is used after **quin** (**qui nōn**).

RULES. — 1. In clauses of result the Subjunctive is used with **ut** affirmative, and **ut nōn** negative.

2. After expressions of doubt, hindrance, and the like, the Subjunctive with **quin** is used.

NOTE. — Clauses of result are very often introduced by **ita, thus, so; tālla, e, such; tantus, a, um, so great; tam, so.**

442.

VOCABULARY

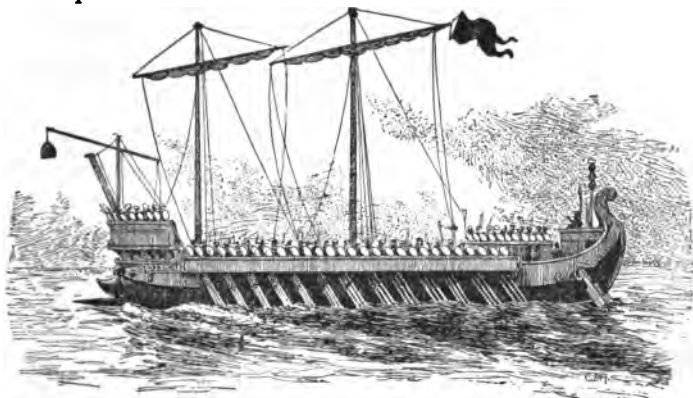
Axona, ae, f., the Axona (Aisne).	dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus, point out, show.
captīvus, i, m., captive.	
hasta, ae, f., spear, lance.	dubitō, āre, āvi, ātus, doubt, hesitate.
insidiae, ārum, f. pl., ambush.	fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus, deceive, cheat.
nāvis, is, f., boat, ship.	
aggredior, i, gressus sum, attack, approach.	populor, āri, ātus sum, ravage.
	quīn, conj., but that, that, that not.

443.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Hostēs ita perterriti sunt ut statim arma trāderent.
 2. Clāmor erat tantus ut milītēs nōn vōcem imperātōris audirent.
 3. Tempus erat tam breve ut castra nōn mūnīremus. 4. Caesar nōn dubitāvit quin milītēs pontem interscinderent. 5. Diū atque ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est, ut multi occiderentur. 6. Captivi ita fallēbantur ut castra hostium dēmōnstrārent. 7. Hostēs tam celeriter contendērunt ut ad oppidum sub vesperum venīrent.
 8. Eā rē cōstitutā, māgnō cum strepitū ēgressi castris fēcērunt ut similis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 9. Hostēs impeditōs in flūmine nostrī aggressi māgnū eōrum numerum occiderunt. 10. Tam ācriter pūgnātum est ab hostibus ut nostrī itinere prohibērentur.

II. 1. Caesar, fearing an ambush, kept his army and cavalry in camp. 2. The soldiers fought so fiercely that they took the town within three hours. 3. I do not doubt that Caesar will fortify the camp. 4. I did not doubt that the centurion would hear the shout. 5. The river was so deep that they always used boats. 6. The mountains were so high that the soldiers feared to cross. 7. They had had great hopes, but nevertheless they were deceived. 8. The snow was so deep that the soldiers came into winter quarters.



NAVIS

444.

READING LESSON

Equitēs hostium cum nostris prō palūde, quae erat inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum, contendērunt. Caesar cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. Hostēs statim ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam properāvērunt, quod¹ esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt ut castellum, cui praeerat lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent. Caesar omnēs equitēs et funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. In eō locō ācritēr pūgnātum est. Nostrī hostēs in flūmine impeditōs aggressī māgnūm eōrum numerum occidērunt.

¹ which, as has been shown, was behind our camp.

Cōnciliō convocātō, hostēs domum contendere et finēs suōs dēfendere cōstituērunt. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā¹ māgnō cum tumultū castrīs ēgressi sunt. Caesar, insidiās veritus, cōpiās suās castrīs continuit. Primā lūce, omnēs equitēs prae-misit, qui māgnū hostium numerum interfēcērunt.

445. Root *ag*, *drive*.

<i>ag-ō</i> , <i>drive</i>	<i>ag-i-tō</i> , <i>put in motion</i>	<i>ag-i-tā-tiō</i> , —?
<i>ag-men</i> , <i>line of army</i>	<i>ag-ilis</i> , <i>agile</i>	<i>cōgō</i> (<i>con</i> + <i>agō</i>), <i>drive together</i>
<i>eo-tor</i> , —?	<i>ex-ig-uus</i> , <i>driven out, scanty</i>	<i>ex-ig-ō</i> , <i>drive out</i>

ENG. DER. — Acre, act, agriculture, cogent, agent, cogitate, ache.

LESSON LXVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, THIRD CONJUGATION, VERBS IN
-*ō* — RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

446.

	PRESENT	Active
SING.	1. <i>capia-m</i>	IMPERFECT <i>cape-re-m</i> , etc.
	2. <i>capia-s</i>	
	3. <i>capia-t</i>	
PLUR.	1. <i>capia-mus</i>	PERFECT <i>cēp-eri-m</i> , etc.
	2. <i>capia-tis</i>	
	3. <i>capia-nt</i>	
		PLUPERFECT <i>cēp-isse-m</i> , etc.

447.

	PRESENT	Passive
SING.	1. <i>capia-r</i>	IMPERFECT <i>cape-re-r</i> , etc.
	2. <i>capia-ris</i> (<i>re</i>)	
	3. <i>capia-tur</i>	
PLUR.	1. <i>capia-mur</i>	PERFECT <i>captus sim</i> , etc.
	2. <i>capia-mini</i>	
	3. <i>capia-ntur</i>	
		PLUPERFECT <i>captus essem</i> , etc.

Note resemblance to the Subjunctive of the Fourth Conjugation.

¹ in the second watch.

448. Examine the following : —

1. *Erant qui venirent, there were some who came.*
2. *Nēmō erat quī pūgnāret, there was no one who did not fight.*
3. *Nēmō est quī hōc nōn intellegat, there is no one who does not know this.*
4. *Quis est quī nesciat? who is there that does not know?*

Observe that the above sentences contain expressions of existence and non-existence, and that the act of the verb is expressed as characteristic of the subject.

RULE. — The Subjunctive is used, especially after expressions of existence and non-existence, and questions implying a negative answer, to express a characteristic or essential quality of the subject (Subjunctive of Characteristic).

449.

VOCABULARY

Arcadia, ae, f., *Arcadia*.

cervus, I, m., *stag*.

contumēlia, ae, f., *affront, insult*.

glōria, ae, f., *glory*.

indignitās, ātis, f., *indignity*.

aēneus, a, um, *of brass, brazen*.

dignus, a, um, *worthy*.

indignus, a, um, *unworthy*.

nesciō, *scire*, *scivī*, *scītus*, *be ignorant, not know*.

pandō, *ere*, I, *passus*, *spread out, extend*.

putō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *think*.

sequor, I, *secūtus sum*, *follow*.

450.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Nēmō erat in Caesaris castris quī nōn libenter prō glōriā ducis interficerētur.* 2. *Quis est quī eum sequi dubitet?* 3. *In Arcadiam vēnit Herculēs ut cervum aureis cornibus pedibusque aēneis reduceret.* 4. *Quis est quī contumēliās indignitātēque facile patiātur?* 5. *Quis est quem amīcī suī nōn laudent?* 6. *Flūmen trānsivit quō facilius hostēs sequerētur.* 7. *Mulierēs et puerī,¹ passis manibus, ad Caesarem contendērunt ut ab eō condiciōnēs pācis acciperent.* 8. *Neque erat is quī lēgātus ad exercitum mit-*

¹ *children.*

terētur. 9. Quis est quī amicīs libenter iniūriam faciat? 10. Virgulam dēcerpsit ut in aquam eam iniceret.

II. 1. They say that a stag with brazen feet lives in Arcadia.



DIANA

2. There is no one who is bringing together all the forces of the enemy. 3. Hercules came into Arcadia in order to capture the stag of Diana. 4. They sent him to Rome to suffer all insults and indignities. 5. Who is there that will not kill the enemies of the Roman people? 6. Diana was angry because Hercules was leading away the stag. 7. There was no one in the army who did not follow willingly into the territory of the enemy. 8. He went out of the city by night in order to flee into a safe place.

451.

READING LESSON: *Cervus Diānae*¹

Antīquitus vivēbat in Arcadiā cervus cornibus aureīs pedibusque aēneīs, Diānae sacer. Eurystheus Herculem iussit eum sequi, capere, ad sē dūcere. Diū secūtus est cervum, capere autem nōn poterat. Dēnique sagittis vulnerātum cēpit et reducēbat. In itinere vērō Diānae īvit obviam,² quae erat īrāta quod cervus captus est. Plācāta autem dictis Herculis permisit ut eum abduceret.

452. Root **ten**, *stretch, hold*.

ten-dō, *stretch*

ten-eō, *hold*

ten-er, *tender*

ten-āx, — ?

ten-āc-iter, *firmly*

ten-āc-i-tās, — ?

ten-ui-ter, — ?

ten-ui-tās, — ?

ten-u-ō, *make thin*

ENG. DER. — Tend, tenant, tender, tennis, tenement, tense, tent, tentacle, tenure, contend, tension.

¹ *Diana, goddess of the chase.*

² *īvit obviam, met.*

LESSON LXVII

REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—INDIRECT QUESTIONS

453. Review carefully 400, 416-417, 424-425, 432-433, 439-440, 446-447.

454. Examine the following :—

1. **Quid dicis?** *what are you saying?* **Sciō quid dicās,** *I know what you are saying.*
2. **Quid dixisti?** *what did you say?* **Sciō quid dixeris,** *I know what you said.*
3. **Quid dixisti?** *what did you say?* **Sciī quid dicerēs,** *I knew what you were saying, what you said.*
4. **Quid dixisti?** *what have you said?* **Sciī quid dixissēs,** *I knew what you had said.*
5. **Ubi est?** *where is he?* **Sciō ubi sit,** *I know where he is.*
6. **Unde vēnit?** *whence has he come?* **Sciī unde vēnisset,** *I knew whence he had come.*

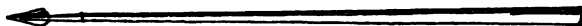
Observe that in each case the first sentence is introduced by an interrogative word and is independent, that the dependent clause of the second sentence in each case is introduced by the same interrogative word and contains the same substance as the first, although it has not the form of a question.

The first is called a direct question, the second an indirect question.

RULE. — The Subjunctive mood is used in indirect questions.

Such questions may be introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs, and by the particles **num** and **-ne**.

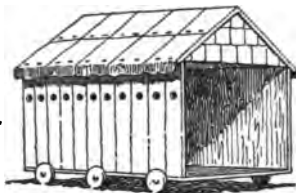
Review rules for sequence of tenses (410).



HASTA

455.

VOCABULARY

agger, eris, m., mound.**altitūdō, inis, f., height.****Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., the Bellovacī.****Noviodūnum, I, n., Noviodunum.****opus, eris, n., work.****vīnea, ae, f., shed.****claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, close up; āgmen claudere, bring up the rear.****sciō, ire, scīvi, scītus, know.****unde, adv., whence.**

VINEA

456.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Scit unde vēneris. 2. Scīvit unde venīrēs. 3. Scit unde veniās. 4. Scīvit unde vēnissēs. 5. Sciet unde vēneris. 6. Altitūdō montis tanta erat ut nēmō ascendere cōnārētur. 7. Tanta erat celeritās operis ut Gallī nōn vidērent quid agerētur. 8. Propter celeritātem Rōmānōrum altitūdinemque aggeris hostēs impetum diūtius sustinēre nōn poterant. 9. Caesar legiōnēs ad Noviodūnum misit et ipse āgmen clausit. 10. Ad mūrū vīneās agere coepit ut oppidum caperet. 11. Exercitum in finēs Bellovacōrum mīsīt, quō facilius eōs superāre posset.

II. 1. You know whence the slingers and archers are coming. 2. We know who ravaged the towns of the enemy. 3. They will know why we are frightened. 4. You know who brought up the rear of Caesar's army. 5. They pushed the sheds up to the wall in order that they might more easily¹ take the town. 6. You know why the height of the wall was so great. 7. So great was

¹ See 456, I, 11.

the tumult in the camp that it disturbed the minds of all. 8. We know that Labienus is bringing up the rear of Caesar's army.

457.

READING LESSON

Postridiē eius diē Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et māgnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Ibi castrīs mūnitīs, vineās agere coepit. Māgnitudine operum et celeritate Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē misērunt. Caesar vērō, obsidibus acceptīs, armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūxit, quī pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

458. Root *cap*, *take*.

<i>cap-i-ō</i> , <i>take</i>	<i>cap-tō</i> , <i>take eagerly</i>	<i>prae-cip-uē</i> , <i>especially</i>
<i>cap-āx</i> , —?	<i>cap-tā-tiō</i> , —?	<i>prīn-cip-ium</i> , <i>beginning</i>
<i>cap-āc-i-tās</i> , —?	<i>cap-ti-vus</i> , —?	<i>cap-ut</i> , <i>head</i>

Form compound verbs with *con*, *dē*, *ex*, *per*, *re*, and give meanings. Note change in root vowel in forming compounds.

ENG. DER. — Capture, captive, captivate, reception, acceptable. Form other derivatives.

LESSON LXVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, *Ferō* — CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, SIMPLE

459.

Active

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. <i>ferā-m</i>	<i>fer-re-m</i>	<i>tul-eri-m</i>	<i>tul-isse-m</i>
	2. <i>ferā-s</i>	<i>fer-rē-s</i>	<i>tul-eri-s</i>	<i>tul-issē-s</i>
	3. <i>ferā-t</i>	<i>fer-re-t</i>	<i>tul-eri-t</i>	<i>tul-isse-t</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>ferā-mus</i>	<i>fer-rē-mus</i>	<i>tul-eri-mus</i>	<i>tul-issē-mus</i>
	2. <i>ferā-tis</i>	<i>fer-rē-tis</i>	<i>tul-eri-tis</i>	<i>tul-issē-tis</i>
	3. <i>ferā-nt</i>	<i>fer-re-nt</i>	<i>tul-eri-nt</i>	<i>tul-isse-nt</i>

460.

Passive

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. <i>fera-r</i>	<i>fer-re-r</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>
	2. <i>ferā-ris (re)</i>	<i>fer-rē-ris (re)</i>	<i>lātus sis</i>	<i>lātus essetis</i>
	3. <i>ferā-tur</i>	<i>fer-rē-tur</i>	<i>lātus sit</i>	<i>lātus esset</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>ferā-mur</i>	<i>fer-rē-mur</i>	<i>lātī simus</i>	<i>lātī essemus</i>
	2. <i>ferā-minī</i>	<i>fer-rē-minī</i>	<i>lātī sitis</i>	<i>lātī essētis</i>
	3. <i>fera-ntur</i>	<i>fer-re-ntur</i>	<i>lātī sint</i>	<i>lātī essent</i>

Inflect in the same way *inferō*, *cōnferō*, *dēferō*, *perferō*.

461. A conditional sentence consists of two clauses, a dependent and an independent.

The dependent clause contains the condition, and is called the Protasis.

The independent clause contains the conclusion, and is called the Apodosis.

The protasis is generally introduced by *sī*, *if*, or one of its compounds.

Simple conditions are found in present or past time.

1. Present : *Sī venit, fidus est, if he comes, he is faithful.*

2. Past : *Sī vēnit, fidus fuit, if he came, he was faithful.*

Observe that in 1 the Present Indicative is used in both clauses, in 2 the Perfect Indicative, and that in both nothing is implied as to the fulfillment of the condition.

462.

VOCABULARY

aetās, ātis, f., age.

amrīs, is, m., river.

Nervī, ōrum, m. pl., the Nervii.

stabulum, ī, n., stable.

tuba, ae, f., trumpet.

vīnum, ī, n., wine.

lavō, āre, lāvī, lautus or lōtus,
wash; pass., bathe, be washed.

peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus, accomplish.

prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, hurl for-
ward, abandon.

relanguēscō, ere, —, —, become weak.

463.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Rēx tria milia boum quondam habēbat.* 2. *Hōrum stabula per trīgintā annōs nōn erant lōta.* 3. *Amnis per stabula*

conversus est, itaque ea facile lōta sunt. 4. Si Herculēs leōnem occidit, fortis est. 5. Herculēs, sī ea stabula lāvit, māgnū opus perēgit. 6. Quod cīvitas erat māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte, sēscentōs ob-
 sides popōscit. 7. His trādītis omni-
 busque armīs ex oppidō conlātis, ab eō
 locō in finēs Nerviorū contendērunt.
 8. Sī mercātōrēs Nervios adiērunt,
 fortēs fuērunt. 9. Nervii nihil vīnī in-
 ferri patiēbantur quod his rēbus animōs suōs relanguēscere existi-
 mābant. 10. Rōmam venit ut amīcis auxiliū ferat. 11. Rōmam
 vēnistī ut amīcis auxiliū ferrēs. 12. Nesciō unde cōpia frūmentī
 in urbem inferātur.



TUBA

II. 1. If the serpent bit the man, he died. 2. If Hercules caught the wild boar, he was brave. 3. If Hercules has his club and arrows, he is defending himself. 4. I do not know why the boys are bearing arms. 5. Some could not fight on account of age, others did not dare to fight. 6. I know whence you are bringing the swords and shields. 7. They sent us to bring a supply of grain into the camp. 8. They accused the rest of the Belgians, because they had surrendered themselves to the Roman people. 9. Would that you had not brought war upon our allies.

464.

READING LESSON: *Stabula Augēae*

Herculēs, postquam cervum cēpit, difficilīus opus facere iussus est. Augēas,¹ rēx Ēlidis, mīlia tria boum habēbat, quōrum stabula per trigintā annōs nōn erant lōta. Herculēs autem Augēan adiit eīque dīxit: “Ūnō diē haec stabula lavābō. Visne mihi, hōc factō, decimam boum partem dare?” Respondit Augēas: “Libenter dabō.” Tum Herculēs, amne per stabula conversō, opus facillimē intrā ūnum diem perēgit. Augēas autem bovēs dare nōlēbat, quod Eurystheus Herculem stabula lavāre iusserat. Itaque Herculēs rēgi bellum infert et eum atque eīus filiōs interfēcit.

¹ Augēas, ae, m., *Augas*, king of Elis.

465. Root *reg*, *stretch*, *guide*.*reg-ō*, *rule**rēx* (*reg* + *s*), *king**rēg-nō*, *reign**reg-iō*, *region**reg-īna*, *queen**rēg-num*, —?*reg-ālis*, —?*reg-āliter*, —?*rēc-tor*, —?

ENG. DER.—Regal, rector, direct, correct, correction, incorrigible.



LESSON LXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, *Eō*—FUTURE CONDITIONS

466.

Active, *eō*

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SING.	1. <i>ea-m</i>	<i>ī-re-m</i>	<i>īv-erī-m</i>	<i>īv-isse-m</i>
	2. <i>eā-s</i>	<i>ī-rē-s</i>	<i>īv-erī-s</i>	<i>īv-issē-s</i>
	3. <i>ea-t</i>	<i>ī-re-t</i>	<i>īv-erī-t</i>	<i>īv-isse-t</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>eā-mus</i>	<i>ī-rē-mus</i>	<i>īv-erī-mus</i>	<i>īv-issē-mus</i>
	2. <i>eā-tis</i>	<i>ī-rē-tis</i>	<i>īv-erī-tis</i>	<i>īv-issē-tis</i>
	3. <i>ea-nt</i>	<i>ī-re-nt</i>	<i>īv-erī-nt</i>	<i>īv-isse-nt</i>

467.

Passive, *adeō*

SING.	1. <i>adea-r</i>	<i>adī-re-r</i>	<i>aditus sīm</i>	<i>aditus essem</i>
	2. <i>adeā-ris</i> (<i>re</i>)	<i>adī-rē-ris</i> (<i>re</i>)	<i>aditus sīs</i>	<i>aditus essēs</i>
	3. <i>adeā-tur</i>	<i>adī-rē-tur</i>	<i>aditus sit</i>	<i>aditus esset</i>
PLUR.	1. <i>adeā-mur</i>	<i>adī-rē-mur</i>	<i>aditī sīmus</i>	<i>aditī essēmus</i>
	2. <i>adeā-minī</i>	<i>adī-rē-minī</i>	<i>aditī sītis</i>	<i>aditī essētis</i>
	3. <i>adea-ntur</i>	<i>adī-re-ntur</i>	<i>aditī sint</i>	<i>aditī essent</i>

Inflect in both active and passive, *trānseō* and *praetereō* (*pass by*).

468. Future conditions are divided into two classes, more vivid and less vivid.

More vivid or probable :

1. *Sī veniet*, *laetus erō*, if he comes (shall come), I shall be glad.
2. *Sī vēnerit*, *laetus erō*, if he comes (shall have come), I shall be glad.

Less vivid, or possible :

1. *Sī veniat, laetus sim, if he should come, I should be glad.*
2. *Sī vēnerit, laetus sim, if he should come (should have come), I should be glad.*

1. Observe that in the more vivid future condition, the Future or Future Perfect Indicative is used in the protasis, and the Future Indicative in the apodosis, and that necessarily the condition is not yet fulfilled.

2. Observe that in the less vivid future condition, the Present or Perfect Subjunctive is used in the protasis, and the Present Subjunctive in the apodosis, and that necessarily the condition is not yet fulfilled. Note also that in the Latin in the future condition there is greater precision in regard to time than in the English.

3. The Future and Future Perfect Indicative are both translated by the English Present, and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive by our Potential, with *should*.

RULES. — 1. The Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative is used in the protasis of more vivid future conditions, and the Future Indicative in the apodosis.

2. The Present (or Perfect) Subjunctive is used in the protasis of less vivid future conditions, and the Present Subjunctive in the apodosis.

469.

VOCABULARY

arbor, oris, f., tree.

oōnsuetūdō, inis, f., custom.

mūnimentum, i, n., defense.

nātūra, ae, f., nature.

saepēs, is, f., hedge.

testūdō, inis, f., roof of shields, testudo.

tener, era, erum, tender, young.

perspicīō, ere, spexi, spectus, see through, perceive, observe.

vergō, ere, —, incline, slope.

aequālīter, adv., uniformly.

nē . . . quidem, adv. phr., not even.

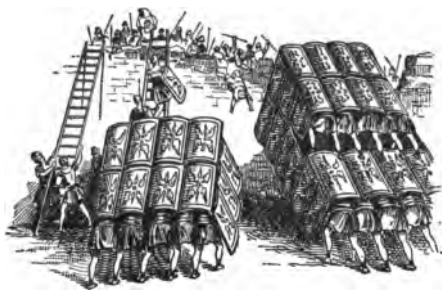
The emphatic word stands between *nē* and *quidem*.

470.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ex captivīs cognōvit quōsdam ex Belgīs nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnisse. 2. Nervīi, quō facilius finitimōrum equitā-

tum prohibērent, dēnsissimās saepēs fēcerant. 3. Hae saepēs Nervii mūnimentō māgnō erant, nam nē perspicī quidem poterant. 4. Collis ab summō aequaliter vergēbat ad flūmen. 5. Sī



TESTUDO

Rōmam ībis, multa et pulchra aedificia vidēbis. 6. Sī Athēnās eās, pulchram et clāram urbem videās. 7. Sī Caesar equitēs praemitat, pontem trāseant. 8. Pontem fēcit ut flūmen sine nāvibus trāsrētur. 9. Sī saepēs faciant, fīnitimōs pro-

hibeant. 10. Sī saepēs facient, fīnitimōs prohibēbunt. 11. Sī Caesar equitēs praemittet, māgnū hostium numerum occīdent.

II. 1. If he should go to Rome, he would live in a beautiful city. 2. If he goes into Italy, he will see much wine and fertile fields. 3. If you should cross the river, the enemy would not follow. 4. If they see the nature of the hill, they will choose it for a camp. 5. If the enemy should cross the river and fight bravely, they would take the town by assault. 6. After these six legions, Caesar had placed the baggage of the whole army. 7. Two legions which had been enrolled last closed the line, and were a guard to the baggage. 8. They persuaded us to pass by the enemy's camp, and go to the town.

471.

READING LESSON

Caesar sēsē Bellovacōs cōservātūrū esse dixit; et quod¹ erat civitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte, sēscentōs obsidēs popōscit. Hīs trāditīs, omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō ad Nervios contendit. Quōrum dē nātūrā reperiēbat: mercātōrēs ad sē adire nōn patī; nihil patī vīnī¹ inferri, quod eā rē relanguēscere

¹ Part. Gen. depending on nihil.

animōs suōs existimārent ; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis ;¹ incūsāre reliquōs Belgās quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent.

Cum per eōrum finēs trīduī iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius milia² passuum decem abesse ; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse atque ibi adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre.

Quīdam ex Belgīs nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās legiōnēs māgnū numerum impedimentōrum intercēdere. Itaque Nervīi, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset, eam sub sarcinīs adorīrī cōstituērunt. Sed quod ad hostēs appropinquābat Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās³ dūcēbat ; post eās omnia impedimenta conlocārat ;⁴ inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant, āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentīs erant.

472. Root 1, *go*.

e-ō, *go*

ad-i-tus, *approach*

com-e-a, *companion*

i-ter, *journey*

ad-e-ō, *go to or towards*

in-i-tium, *beginning*

ENG. DER. — Exit, initial, itinerant, ambition, transit.



LESSON LXX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, Fīō — CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT — WORD LIST

473.

Fīō, used as passive of faciō

Princ. Parts, fīō, fierī, factus sum

	SING.	PLUR.		
PRESENT	1. fīa-m	fīa-mus	IMPERFECT	fīe-re-m, fīe-rē-s, etc.
	2. fīā-s	fīā-tis	PERFECT	factus sim, etc.
	3. fīa-t	fīa-nt	PLUPERFECT	factus essem, etc.

¹ of great valor ; Gen. of quality. ² Acc. of extent of space ; **amplius** does not influence the construction here : *not more than ten miles*. ³ *unincumbered*. ⁴ Contracted Pluperf. for **conlocāverat**.

474. Examine the following : —

1. *Si pater mē timēret, ab ēius oculis concēderem, if my father feared me, I should withdraw from his sight.*

This implies : My father *does not* fear me, I *do not* withdraw. The condition (protasis) is not fulfilled, the conclusion (apodosis) does not follow.

2. *Si pater mē timuisset, ab ēius oculis concessissem, if my father had feared me, I should have withdrawn from his sight.*

This implies : My father *did not* fear me, I *did not* withdraw. The condition was not fulfilled, the conclusion did not follow.

Observe carefully in the above that the condition in each case states what is not a fact, and that the conclusion does not follow.

Observe that in both protasis and apodosis the verbs are in the Subjunctive, that in 1 they are both in the Imperfect, and express present time, and that in 2 they are both in the Pluperfect, and express past time.

RULE. — In conditions contrary to fact, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis, the Imperfect to express present time, and the Pluperfect to express past time.

475. Examine the following : —

1. *Nisi id fieret, nōn adessem, if this were not being done, I should not be here. It is being done, I am here.*
2. *Nisi id factum esset, nōn adfuissēm, if this had not been done, I should not have been here. It did take place, I was here.*

Observe that the same points are true of these two sentences as of those in 474, except that the statements of the protases and apodoses are in the negative form.

Note also that the same rule holds.

476.

VOCABULARY

avis, is, f., *bird*.
 pater, tris, m., *father*.
 penna, ae, f., *feather, wing*.
 ratiō, ōnis, f., *plan*.
 rōstrum, i, n., *beak*.
 sistrum, i, n., *clapper, rattle*.

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din*.
 arbitror, āri, ātus sum, *think, suppose*.
 exterreō, ēre, ūi, itus, *frighten forth*.
 incitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *urge on, incite*.
 volō, āre, āvi, ātus, *fly*.

477.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Avēs nisi pennās habērent volāre nōn possent. 2. Avēs, nisi ab Hercule exterritae essent, nōn essent interfectae. 3. Sī Caesar aliam proelī ratiōnem cēpisset, celeriter omnēs hostēs vicisset. 4. Nisi māgnus strepitus factus esset, avēs nōn essent perterritae. 5. Sī cōsul fīās, omnēs hostēs vincās. 6. Sī imperātor factus essēs, omnēs hostēs vicissēs. 7. Nunquam avēs vidimus quibus erant rōstra aēnea. 8. Sī māgnū strepitum sistrō aēneō fēcisset, omnēs avēs terruisset. 9. Sī equum incitāvisset, celeriter ad castra pervēnisset. 10. Arbitrātus est, hīs victīs, sē exercitum in finēs Aeduōrum dūcere posse.

II. 1. If I had seen birds with brazen feathers, beaks, and feet, I should have killed them with my arrows. 2. If I had not urged on my horse, I should not have arrived at the city. 3. If you had not become consul, you would not have led the army into the enemy's territory. 4. If a new plan of battle were made, we should conquer the enemy. 5. If the birds had not flown out of the marsh, they would not have been killed. 6. If he should become king, he would enroll many legions in Italy. 7. The legions which had been most recently enrolled fought bravely. 8. They ran down with incredible speed to the river in order that they might contend there with the enemy.

478.

READING LESSON: *Avēs Stympḗliae*¹

Eurystheus Herculem iussit interficere avēs quae, pedibus et rōstris et pennīs aēneis,² ad Stympḗlū in lacū vivēbant. Eae

¹ *The Stympḗlian birds.*

² Abl. of quality.

avēs vērō pennīs prō sagittīs ūtēbantur, et, hominibus interfectīs, eōrum carne¹ vescēbantur. Herculēs autem strepitum māgnū sīstrō aēneō fēcīt, quō exterritae avēs prōvolāvērunt et ab Hercule interfectae sunt.



HERCULES AND THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

479. Root *luc*, *shine*.*lūc-e-ō*, *shine**lūx* (*luc* + *s*), *light**lū-men* (*luc* + *men*), *light**lūc-us*, *sacred grove* (the shining place)*lū-na* (*luc* + *na*), *moon**lūs-trō*, *light up**in-lūs-tris*, —?*lūc-idus*, —?

ENG. DER. — *Luster*, *illustrious*, *illumine*, *lucid*, *lunatic*.

480.

WORD LIST XI

<i>aēneus</i>	<i>cervus</i>	**indīgnitās	<i>penna</i>	*stabulum
*aequālīter	*claudō	**indīgnus	*peragō	<i>strepitus</i>
<i>actās</i>	*āgmen claudō	<i>insidiae</i>	*perspiciō	*tālis
<i>agger</i>	*cōnferō	<i>laqueus</i>	*populor	<i>tener</i>
*aggredior	*cōnsuētūdō	<i>lavō</i>	*prōiciō	<i>testūdō</i>
*altitūdō	<i>contumēlia</i>	<i>moror</i>	*proximē	*trānseō
<i>amnis</i>	<i>dēmōnstrō</i>	*mūnīmentum	**quīn	<i>tuba</i>
<i>arbitror</i>	**dīgnus	*nāvis	<i>ratiō</i>	*tumultus
<i>arbor</i>	*existō	**nē . . . quidem	<i>relanguēscō</i>	*unde
<i>Arcadia</i>	*exterreō	**nesciō	<i>rōstrum</i>	<i>vadum</i>
*avis	*fallō	<i>nix</i>	<i>saepēs</i>	<i>vergō</i>
<i>Axona</i>	<i>glōria</i>	<i>Noviodūnum</i>	**sciō	**vīnea
<i>Bellovacī</i>	<i>hasta</i>	<i>opus</i>	*sequor	**vīnum
*captīvus	*implicō	<i>pandō</i>	<i>sīstrum</i>	*volō
	<i>incitō</i>	*pater		

¹ from *carō*, *carnis*, *flesh*, Abl. with *vescēbantur*. See 316.

LESSON LXXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, *Volō* AND ITS COMPOUNDS—
NOUN AND ADJECTIVE REVIEW481. *Volō**Nōlō**Mālō*

PRESENT		PRESENT		PRESENT	
SING.	IMPERF.	SING.	IMPERF.	SING.	IMPERF.
1. <i>velī-m</i>	<i>velle-m</i>	<i>nōlī-m</i>	<i>nōlle-m</i>	<i>mālī-m</i>	<i>mālle-m</i>
2. <i>velī-s</i>	<i>vellē-s</i> , etc.	<i>nōlī-s</i>	<i>nōllē-s</i> , etc.	<i>mālī-s</i>	<i>māllē-s</i> , etc.
3. <i>velī-t</i>		<i>nōlī-t</i>		<i>mālī-t</i>	
PLUR.	PERF.	PLUR.	PERF.	PLUR.	PERF.
1. <i>velī-mus</i>	<i>volu-eri-m</i>	<i>nōlī-mus</i>	<i>nōlu-eri-m</i>	<i>mālī-mus</i>	<i>mālu-eri-m</i>
	etc.		etc.		etc.
2. <i>velī-tis</i>	PLUP.	<i>nōlī-tis</i>	PLUP.	<i>mālī-tis</i>	PLUP.
3. <i>velī-nt</i>	<i>volu-isse-m</i>	<i>nōlī-nt</i>	<i>nōlu-isse-m</i>	<i>mālī-nt</i>	<i>mālu-isse-m</i>
	etc.		etc.		etc.

Observe that the irregularities appear in the Present tense only.

482. Review carefully nouns and adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, 579, 580, 586-588.

483.

VOCABULARY

<i>condicio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , f., <i>condition, terms.</i>	<i>prōvolō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>fly forth,</i>
<i>memoria</i> , <i>ae</i> , f., <i>memory.</i>	<i>rush forth.</i>
<i>rēs militāris</i> , <i>rei militāris</i> , f., <i>military affairs.</i>	<i>recipiō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>cēpi</i> , <i>ceptus</i> , <i>take</i>
<i>adversus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>opposite, adverse.</i>	<i>back.</i>
<i>adversō colle</i> , <i>uphill.</i>	<i>sē recipere</i> , <i>betake oneself, draw back,</i>
<i>prīstinus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>former.</i>	<i>retreat.</i>
<i>cohortor</i> , <i>ārī</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , <i>encourage.</i>	<i>trāsgredior</i> , <i>gredi</i> , <i>gressus sum</i> ,
<i>pellō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>pepuli</i> , <i>pulsus</i> , <i>drive,</i>	<i>cross over.</i>
<i>beat.</i>	<i>deinde</i> , <i>adv., thereupon.</i>
	<i>identidem</i> , <i>adv., repeatedly.</i>

484.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Caesaris ratiō rei militāris nōn erat eadem quae¹ hostium.
2. Multī militēs adversō colle ad castra nostra sē recēperunt.

¹ *the same as that.*

3. Si dux milites cohortari voluisset, fortiter usque ad vesperum pugnavissent. 4. Si flumen transgredi nolis, te ibi exspectem. 5. Si vero transgredi malis, te sequar et tecum oppida hostium oppugnem. 6. Primum ad silvas identidem se reciperunt, deinde omnibus copiis praevalerunt impetumque in hostes fecerunt. 7. His pulsus, sagittarios funditoresque ad ripam fluminis miserunt ut ibi cum hostibus contenderent. 8. Longa oratione milites monuit ut memoriam virtutis pristinae retinerent.

II. 1. He advises us to be willing to fight for our leader. 2. If you were willing to retain the memory of your former valor, you could¹ conquer all your enemies. 3. If I could make terms of peace, I should prefer not to fight. 4. If they should be unwilling to hasten uphill to our camp, they would not bring aid to us before the battle. 5. We drove the enemy from the city lest they should wish to make an attack upon our friends. 6. They knew what we wished. 7. If we had preferred to fight, we might have taken the town. 8. If I had been willing to go to Italy, I might have seen you in Rome.²

485.

READING LESSON

Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt, qui identidem se in silvas ad suos reciperunt. Deinde subito omnibus copiis praevalerunt impetumque in nostros equites tecerunt. His facile pulsus ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decurrerunt. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupati erant contenderunt. Caesar milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam ut suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent proelium commisit. Instructo exercitu magis ut³ loci natura, quam ut rei militaris ordo postulabat, fortunae eventus varii sequebantur.

¹ Use proper form of **possum**.

² **Römae**.

³ **ut, as.** When used with the Indicative **ut** means *as* or *when*.

486. Root *mu*, *mov*, *move*.*mov-e-ō*, *move**mō-tiō*, —?*mō-tor*, —?*mō-mentum*, *weight**mō-tus*, *a moving**mo-x*, *soon**mō-bilis*, *movable**mo-llis*, *easily moved**mō-bilitās*, —?*mū-tō*, *move, change**mū-tā-tiō*, —?*pro-mo-veō*, —?

ENG. DER. — Motion, movable, mobile, motor, moment, motive, mob.



LESSON LXXII

Cum CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE—NOUN AND ADJECTIVE
REVIEW

487. Examine the following:—

1. Cum nōbis nāvēs nōn essent, trānsire nōn poterāmus, *since we did not have boats, we could not cross.*
2. Cum nōbis nāvēs essent, tamen nōn trānsivimus, *although we had boats, yet we did not cross.*

Observe that in 1 *cum* is causal — *since*; that in 2 *cum* is concessive — *although*.

RULE. — Cum causal and concessive is followed by the Subjunctive.

488. Make a careful review of consonant stems, nouns, and adjectives of the Third Declension (581, 583, 591, 592).

489.

VOCABULARY

Crēta, ae, f., *Crete*.*fōrma*, ae, f., *form*.*speciēs*, f., *appearance, beauty*.*decumānus*, a, um, *decuman, rear*.*irātus*, a, um, *angry, enraged*.*compellō*, ere, pull, *pulsus*, *compel*,
drive together, drive.*corrumpō*, ere, rūpī, *ruptus*, *de-*
stroy.*ēdō*, ere, didī, *ditus*, *put forth*,
make, cause.*resistō*, ere, stitī, —, *resist, oppose*.*rūrsus*, adv., *again*.*tamen*, adv., *still, yet, nevertheless*.

490.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Cum bōs mirā speciē esset, rēx eum nōn sacrificāvit. 2. Cum rēx sacrificāre bovem iussus esset, tamen pulchrum animal trucidāre nōlēbat. 3. Cum nostrī hostibus fortiter resisterent, tamen ad flūmen compellēbantur. 4. Cum bōs in furōrem āctus esset, multa et pulchra opera corrumpēbat. 5. Hīc bōs māgnam calamitātem ēdēbat, nam in furōrem āctus erat. 6. Rēx, cum irātus esset, tamen captivōs nōn interfēcit. 7. Nostrī trānsire nōn dubitāverunt et rūsus resistantēs hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 8. Omnēs Nervī cōfertissimō āgmine ad eum locum contendērunt. 9. Ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse perspexerant. 10. Cum bōs in furōrem āctus esset, tamen hunc capere cōstituit. 11. Cum ācritēr pūgnātum esset, tamen nēmō hostem āversum vidēre potuit.

II. 1. Since the island is large and beautiful, we will visit it. 2. Although our men fought bravely, still they could not drive the enemy from that place. 3. Although the bull was large and fierce, still Hercules dared to undertake the work. 4. Since Caesar had encouraged the soldiers, they fought much more fiercely. 5. The bull was of such a beautiful form that the king did not wish to sacrifice him. 6. Although we were not at Rome, we saw many beautiful cities on our journey. 7. Since life is short, let us enjoy the beautiful things which we see every day. 8. Hercules had been ordered to seize the bull of Crete,¹ because it was causing a great calamity on the island.



SISTRUM

491.

READING LESSON: *Bōs Crēticus*

Herculēs, postquam avēs Stympālīās sistrō aēneō exterruit et multās sagittis interfēcit, ad Eurystheum revertit. Tum Eurystheus ad sē Herculem advocāns eum capere bovem in insulā Crētā iussit.

¹ bōs Crēticus.

Bovem mīrae māgnitūdinis et eximiae fōrmae ē marī ēmisit Poseidōn.¹ Hunc sacrificāre Mīnos,² Crētae rēx, iussus erat. Captus³ autem bovis speciē alium eius vice⁴ sacrificāvit. Poseidōn vērō irātus bovem in furōrem ēgit. Tum bōs per tōtam īnsulam māgnam hominum strāgem⁵ ēdēbat, et opera agrestia⁶ corrumpēbat. Hunc tandem captum Herculēs trāns mare ad Eurystheum portāvit.

492. Root *iug*, *join*, *yoke*.

<i>iug</i> (n) <i>g-ō</i> , <i>join</i>	<i>iug-ulum</i> , <i>collar bone</i>	<i>oon-iū-rō</i> , <i>conspire</i>
<i>iug-um</i> , <i>yoke</i>	<i>iū-dex</i> , <i>judge</i>	<i>iū-mentum</i> , <i>yoke-animal</i>
<i>iū-s</i> , <i>right</i>	<i>iū-beō</i> , <i>order</i>	<i>iū-s-titia</i> , —?

ENG. DER. — Judge, jury, junction, conjugate, just, conjunction, joint, jugular, subjugate.



LESSON LXXIII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES — *Cum* TEMPORAL — NOUN AND ADJECTIVE REVIEW

493. Examine the following : —

1. *Postquam Caesar pervēnit, pontem fieri iussit, after Caesar had arrived, he ordered a bridge to be made.*
2. *Ubi Caesar pervēnit, suās oōpiās in castra redūxit, when Caesar arrived, he led his forces back into camp.*
3. *Simul ac hostēs id intellēxērunt, fugā salūtem petlērunt, as soon as the enemy perceived this, they sought safety in flight.*
4. *Ut Caesar pervēnit, mīltēs castra mūnīre coepērunt, when Caesar arrived, the soldiers began to fortify the camp.*

Observe that *postquam*, *ubi*, *simul ac*, and *ut* denote time, and are followed by the Perfect Indicative.

¹ *Poseidōn* or *Neptune* (god of the sea).

² *Minos*.

³ *charmed*.

⁴ *in its stead*.

⁵ *destruction*.

⁶ *of the field*.

494. Examine the following : —

1. **Cum per eōrum finēs iter fēcisset, inventēbat ex captivis . . .**,
*when he had marched through their territory, he found out
from the captives . . .*
2. **Nam tum, cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam . . .**, *for at that
time when I was hurling Catiline from the city . . .*

Observe that in 1 **cum** is used with the Subjunctive, and in 2 with the Indicative.

- RULES. — 1. The particles **postquam**, **ubi**, **simul atque** (**simul ac** or **simul**), take the Indicative, usually the Perfect.
2. **Cum** temporal is used with the Subjunctive when the circumstance or action depends upon another, or when the time is described. It is used with the Indicative when the time is made emphatic or defined.

NOTE. — In narration **cum** temporal is almost always used with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

495. Make a careful review of vowel stems, — nouns and adjectives, 579, 580, 582, 584–590.

496.

VOCABULARY

cālō , ōnis , m., <i>soldier's servant, camp follower.</i>	praeceps , cipitis , <i>headlong.</i>
cōnsēnsus , ūs , m., <i>consent, agreement.</i>	singulāris , e , <i>peculiar, remarkable.</i>
trēverī , ōrum , m. pl., <i>the Treveri.</i>	mandō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>give over, intrust.</i>
turpitūdō , inis , f., <i>disgrace.</i>	redigō , ere , ēgi , actus , <i>drive back, reduce, render.</i>

497.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra reciperent, hostibus perspectīs, rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant.**
2. **Cālōnēs quoque, cum hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant.**
3. **Qui¹ cum ex equitum et**

¹ *when these.*

cālōnum fugā quantō in periculō et¹ legiōnēs et¹ imperātor versārentur, cognōvissent, summā celeritatē trāns flūmen contendērunt.

4. Dixērunt sēsē ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, redāctōs esse. 5. Ubi proelium renovātum est, equitēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlerent. 6. Simul ac prīma impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab hostibus vīsa sunt, impetum in nostrōs fēcērunt. 7. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, cum cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, domum contendērunt.

II. 1. As soon as Caesar found out in what place the enemy were, he hastened toward them. 2. When Labienus had seen that the seventh legion was being overcome by the enemy, he sent the tenth legion as an aid to our men. 3. After Caesar came, he began to encourage the soldiers. 4. When Caesar was in Gaul, frequent letters were brought to him. 5. When he had led his troops out from the camp, he drew up a triple line of battle. 6. When this had been announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city. 7. If the town should be taken, they would surrender their arms. 8. As soon as they saw that the tower was being moved, they sought safety in flight.

498.

READING LESSON

Legiōnis nōnae et decimae milītēs, quī in sinistrā parte aciēi instructi erant, hostēs ex locō superiōre compulērunt et multōs eōrum interfēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae² duae legiōnēs in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs contendēbant. Nervii autem cōnfertissimō āgmine ad castra nostra contendērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, quī primō impetū hostium pulsī erant, rūsus aliam in partem fugā salutem petēbant.

Caesar, cum suōs urgērī³ vidēret, in primam aciem prōcessit et milītēs cohortātus est. Eius adventū milītēs ācrius fortiusque pūgnāre coepērunt, et proelium rūsus audācius renovātum est.

¹ et . . . et, both . . . and.² different.³ to be hard pressed.

Intereā militēs duārum legiōnum, quae praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, in summō colle ab hostibus perspiciebantur, et T.



PEDES

Labiēnus quī ex locō superiōre quae gere-
rentur vidit, decimam legiōnem nostris mī-
sit. Hūius legiōnis adventū nostrī ita
fortiter pūgnāre coepērunt ut hostēs brevī
tempore pellerentur.

Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interne-
ciōnem¹ gente Nerviōrum redāctā, om-
nium quī supererant cōsēnsū, lēgātōs ad
Caesarem misērunt. Quōs Caesar in dē-
ditiōnem accēpit et finitimōs ab iniūriā
maleficiōque prohibuit.

499. Root *ped*, *tread*.

pēs, *foot*

ped-ēs, *foot soldier*

im-ped-iō, *entangle*

ex-ped-iō, —?

ped-es-ter, *on foot*

im-ped-i-mentum, —?

ENG. DER. — Pedal, pedestal, pedestrian, biped, impede.



LESSON LXXIV

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD—REGULAR VERBS—NOUN REVIEW

500.

Active

	FIRST CONJ.	SECOND	THIRD	THIRD IN -iō	FOURTH
PRES. SING. 2.	<i>vocā</i>	<i>monē</i>	<i>rege</i>	<i>cape</i>	<i>audī</i>
PLUR. 2.	<i>vocā-te</i>	<i>monē-te</i>	<i>regi-te</i>	<i>capi-te</i>	<i>audī-te</i>
FUT. SING. 2.	<i>vocā-tō</i>	<i>monē-tō</i>	<i>regi-tō</i>	<i>capi-tō</i>	<i>audī-tō</i>
3.	<i>vocā-tō</i>	<i>monē-tō</i>	<i>regi-tō</i>	<i>capi-tō</i>	<i>audī-tō</i>
PLUR. 2.	<i>vocā-tōte</i>	<i>monē-tōte</i>	<i>regi-tōte</i>	<i>capi-tōte</i>	<i>audī-tōte</i>
3.	<i>voca-ntō</i>	<i>mone-ntō</i>	<i>regu-ntō</i>	<i>capiu-ntō</i>	<i>audiu-ntō</i>

¹ *annihilation.*

501.

Passive

	FIRST CONJ.	SECOND	THIRD	THIRD IN -IŌ	FOURTH
PRES. SING. 2.	vocā-re	monē-re	rege-re	cape-re	audi-re
PLUR. 2.	vocā-mini	monē-mini	regi-mini	capī-mini	audi-mini
FUT. SING. 2.	vocā-tor	monē-tor	regi-tor	capī-tor	audi-tor
3.	vocā-tor	monē-tor	regi-tor	capī-tor	audi-tor
PLUR. 2.	—	—	—	—	—
3.	voca-ntor	mone-ntor	regu-ntor	capīu-ntor	audiu-ntor

Make out and commit to memory a table of the Imperative endings, both active and passive. Observe carefully in the above paradigms the part to which the endings are joined, and note that this part is precisely the same in both voices.

Inflect in the Imperative **laudō**, **terreō**, **agō**, **diōō**,¹ **dūōō**,¹ **veniō**.

502. Make a careful review of noun forms of the Fourth and Fifth Declensions, **584**, **585**.

503. The Imperative is used to express an exhortation, entreaty, or command, but the Subjunctive is often used in its place.

504. Examine the following :—

- Mūnite oppidum**, *fortify the town.*
- Meōs liberōs vōbis permittam** ; **eōs cōservātōte**, *I shall intrust my children to you ; do you guard them carefully.*
- Nē mūniveritis oppidum**, *do not fortify the town.*
- Nōlite**² **mūnīre oppidum**, *do not fortify the town.*

Observe that the Present Imperative is used in commands, unless, as in 2, distinct reference is made to future time ; that, as in 3, **nē** with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive, or, as in 4, the Present Imperative of **nōlō** with the Infinitive, is used to express a prohibition.

¹ The second singular Present Imperative of **diōō** is **diō**, of **dūōō** is **dūō**, of **faciō** is **fac**.

² **Nōlite**, *be unwilling*, second person plural of the Present Imperative of **nōlō**.

RULES. — 1. The Present Imperative is used in commands and entreaties, but the Future Imperative is used when distinct reference is made to future time.

2. In prohibitions, *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive, or *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the Infinitive, is used.

505.

VOCABULARY

equa,¹ *ae, f., mare.*

interneciō, *ōnis, f., destruction, annihilation.*

incolumis, *e, safe, unhurt.*

inermis, *e, unarmed.*

auferō, *ferre, abestulī, ablātus, carry off or away, lead away.*

iaciō, *ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, hurl.*

mānsuēfaciō, *ere, fēcī, factus, tame.*

pāsciō, *ere, pāvī, pāstus, feed.*

permittō, *ere, mīsī, missus, intrust, permit.*

clam, *adv., secretly.*

506.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Pāsce, mī fili, meās equās.* 2. *Permittite liberōs incolumēs vestris amīcis.* 3. *Aufer² equās ferās ad agricolās ut eās mānsuēfaciant.* 4. *Dimittāmus lēgātōs in civitātēs finitimās.* 5. *Redige hōs inermēs paene ad interneciōnem.* 6. *Contende cum hostibus, Lābiēne, et tuōs amīcōs dēfende.* 7. *Dic mihi quid in animō tibi sit, quō facilius mē dēfendere possim.* 8. *Nē permiseris nostrōs hostēs incolumēs domum ire.* 9. *Āgmen claude et cum omnibus cōpiis ducem in hostēs sequere.* 10. *Te-stūdine factā, ad mūrū properāte.*

II. 1. *Lead the soldiers secretly into the territories of the enemy, in order that they may fortify a camp there.* 2. *Let us not intrust our children to the hands of our enemies.* 3. *We shall intrust the town to you; do you defend it with great care.* 4. *Let us defend our baggage.* 5. *Hasten to the top of the mountain in order to bear aid to Labienus.* 6. *Lead the mares into the field, my son, and feed them there.* 7. *Let us not re-*

¹ Dative and Ablative plural, sometimes *equābus*.

² Present Imperative second singular.

duce these unarmed men to destruction. 8. Do not abandon¹ the hope of safety, but fight bravely until evening.

507. READING LESSON: *Equae Diomēdis*²

Opus Herculis octāvum erat equās Diomēdis, rēgis Bistonum,³ ad Eurystheum dūcere. Hae equae, carne⁴ hominum pāstae, māximē ferae erant; Herculēs autem eās cēpit, clam abstulit, ad mare dūxit. Bistonēs secūtī eum adortī sunt. Diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. Tandem, rēge eōrum interfectō, Herculēs Bistonēs vicit. Corpus rēgis mortuī equābus⁵ iēcit, quae, suī dominī carne pāstae, statim mānsuēfactae sunt. Tum dēmum Herculēs incolumis ad Eurystheum cum equābus revertit.

508. Root *ola*, *call*.

olā-m-ō, *call, cry out*
olā-m-or, —?

olā-rus, *famous*
prae-olā-rus, —?

olā-sis, *fleet*
oon-olā-mō, —?

ENG. DER.—Clamor, claim, exclaim, class, classical, calendar.



LESSON LXXV

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, IRREGULAR VERBS—NOUN REVIEW COMPLETED

509.		Ferō	Nōlō	Eō	Sum	Fīō
	Aot.	Pass.				
PRES. SING.	2. fer	fer-re	nōlī	I	es	fī
	PLUR.	2. fer-te	feri-mini	I-te	es-te	fī-te
FUT. SING.	2. fer-tō	fer-tor	nōlī-tō	I-tō	es-tō	fī-tō
	3. fer-tō	fer-tor	nōlī-tō	I-tō	es-tō	fī-tō
	PLUR.	2. fer-tōte	—	nōlī-tōte	I-tōte	es-tōte
	3. feru-ntō	feru-ntor	nōlu-ntō	eu-ntō	su-ntō	fīu-ntō

¹ *dēpōnō*.

² *Diomedes*.

³ *The Bistones, a people of Thrace.*

⁴ *Having been fed upon the flesh.*

⁵ See 506, n. 1.

How does the inflection of these irregular verbs differ from that of the regular verbs?

Review carefully 500.

510. Make a careful review of the rules for gender, 25, 28, 51, 132, 170, 174, 214.

511. In the following list of words state in tabular form in each case the declension, gender, Genitive singular and plural.

aciēs	castra	flūmen	locus	pōns
adventus	centuriō	gener	lūx	Rhēnus
acstās	cohors	genus	mēns	scūtum
agger	cōpia	homō	mīles	soror
āgmen	diēs	honor	mōns	tempus
agricola	dolus	Ignis	mulier	vectīgal
bellum	domus	iter	multitūdō	vir
bōs	exercitus	lacus	ōrdō	virtūs
caput	finis	lēgatiō	palūs	vis

512.

VOCABULARY

ancora, ae, f., *anchor*.
 currus, ūs, m., *chariot, car*.
 patria, ae, f., *country*.
 praemium, ī, n., *reward*.
 rēmus, ī, m., *oar*.
 vēxillum, ī, n., *banner*.

victōria, ae, f., *victory*.
 apertus, a, um, *open*.
 recēns, entis, *recent*.
 repentinus, a, um, *sudden*.
 administrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *execute*,
manage.

ōrnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *equip*.



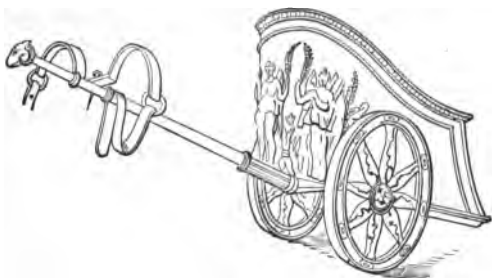
ANCORA

513.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ferte militibus prō victoriā recentī multa et māgna praemia. 2. Nōlite patriae vestrae bellum inferre. 3. Nāvēs

omnibus rēbus celeriter ōrnantur. 4. Este fortēs in periculō repentinō. 5. Administrā bene rem militārem. 6. Ēicite, nautae. ancorās ex nāvibus et expectāte fortiter hostēs. 7. Īte fortiter in proelium et vēxilla ferte in hostēs. 8. Currū per militēs vehitur et eīs dicit : "Prō patriā fortiter pūgnāte, et, sī necesse erit, morimini." 9. Suntō fortēs proeliō, domī fidī et bonī. 10. Fitō cōsul, sī poteris, et bene omnia administrātō. 11. Per loca aperta ĩte ad rīpās flūminis ibique castra mūnīte.



CURRUS

II. 1. Do not cast the anchor from the boat, but sail swiftly to Delos. 2. Fight bravely for your country, soldiers, in order that you may bear off the rewards of victory. 3. Equip your boats with oars, for it is necessary to go to Italy. 4. Bear your standards against the enemy with the glad hope of victory. 5. Drive your chariot through the open places in order that you may not be alarmed by any sudden danger. 6. Become wiser¹ every day. 7. Let the soldiers be always brave and faithful. 8. Let the standards be borne by the bravest soldiers, for the fight will be long and fierce.

¹ sapientior.

LESSON LXXVI

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE — SOME WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

514. The Gerund is a verbal noun governing the same case as its verb, and having the meaning of the English verbal in *-ing*. (Distinguish the English present participle from this verbal.)

515. The Gerund is found only in the oblique cases of the singular.

1. *Bellandī causā*,¹ *for the purpose of waging war.*
2. *Cōsiliū parcendī*² *victis, a plan for sparing the conquered.*

516. CONJ.

FIRST	SECOND	THIRD	THIRD IN -iō	FOURTH
G. voca-ndī	mone-ndī	rege-ndī	capie-ndī	audie-ndī
D. voca-ndō	mone-ndō	rege-ndō	capie-ndō	audie-ndō
Ac. voca-ndum	mone-ndum	rege-ndum	capie-ndum	audie-ndum
Ab. voca-ndō	mone-ndō	rege-ndō	capie-ndō	audie-ndō

1. Observe carefully the law of formation of the Gerund from the verb stem, and note that, in the Fourth Conjugation and in verbs in *-iō* of the Third, the verb stem is increased by the addition of *e* before the case endings.

517. Examine the following : —

1. *Magister docet artem legendī, the master teaches the art of reading.*
2. *Hī libri idōnei sunt legendō, these books are suitable for reading.*
3. *Magister mihi dat librōs ad legendum, the master gives me books to read (for reading).*
4. *Magister fit sapiēns legendō, the master becomes wise by reading.*

Observe in the above examples the use of the Gerund, governed

¹ In this construction *causā* always follows the Gerund.

² Note that *parcendī* governs the Dative.

as a noun would be in the four oblique cases by **artem**, **idōnei**, **ad**, and **fit**, respectively.

RULE.—The Gerund, as a noun, has the construction of other nouns, and, as a verb, retains its power of governing an object.

518. Examine the following : —

1. **Nūlla erat spēs**
 a. **pācem cōfirmandī** (Gerund).
 b. **pācis cōfirmandae** (Gerundive).
 { *There was no hope of establishing peace.*
2. **Tempus erat idōneum**
pāci cōfirmandae (Gerundive).
 { *The time was suitable for establishing peace.*
3. **Mīsit lēgātōs**
ad pācem cōfirmandam (Gerundive).
 { *He sent ambassadors to establish peace.*
4. **Cōnsilia fēcit**
dē pāce cōfirmandā (Gerundive).
 { *He made plans for establishing peace.*

519. 1. Observe carefully the differences between *a* and *b* in 1. Note also that the Gerund and Gerundive are translated precisely alike.

2. Observe that the Gerundive is used as an adjective in agreement with a noun which takes the case the Gerund would have had if used.

3. Observe that in the Genitive case either of the above constructions may be used, but that in the other cases the Gerundive is used.

4. Observe that both Gerund and Gerundive are used to express purpose.

RULE.—The Gerundive is used by preference instead of the Gerund when the latter would, if used, take a direct object. This object is then put into the case in which the Gerund, if used, would have been, and the Gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

520.

VOCABULARY

misericordiā, ae, f., *compassion.*multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude, number.*studium, i, n., *zeal, desire.*sapientiā, entis, *wise.*supplex, icis, *suppliant.*appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātus, *approach.*bellō, āre, āvi, ātus, *wage war.*legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus, *collect, read.*patefaciō, ere, fēci, factus, *lay open.*ēgregiō, adv., *excellently.*

521.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnibus militibus erat māgnū bellandī studium. 2. Spēs māgnā oppidī potiundī exercitui iniecta est. 3. Lābiēnus suōs in locum omnibus rēbus idōneum pūgnandō dūxit. 4. Hūc celementer hostēs contendērunt ut quā minimum¹ spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis relinquerētur. 5. Spēs erat lēgātō rēgnī occupandī. 6. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās annū satis esse arbitratū est. 7. Agricolās in agrōs mīsit ad frūmentum cōferendum. 8. Portis patefactis, Caesarī sē dēdidērunt, quī conditionem dēditionis accēpit. 9. Misericordiā item in eōs ūsus est. 10. In locum nātūrā ēgregiē mūnitum omnēs cōpiās contulērunt, ut māmā cum multitūdine hostium bellāre possent. 11. Supplicēs, passis manibus, sē Caesarī² ad pedēs prōicērunt.

II. 1. Caesar had a great desire for waging war. 2. They went into Gaul for the purpose of bringing together supplies. 3. A great number of wise men came to Caesar, and, with extended hands, begged for peace. 4. These books are not suitable for reading. 5. Their hope of approaching the town was great. 6. He used compassion toward the multitude, for they came to him as suppliants. 7. The camp was excellently fortified, but there were not many men ready to defend it. 8. When the gates are opened, we will go into the city. 9. He led out his soldiers to defend himself. 10. Caesar sent a lieutenant to accomplish all these things.

¹ as little space as possible.² at Caesar's feet.

522.

READING LESSON

Aduātuci autem, quī omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii vēnerant, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt, suaque omnia in unum oppidum egregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Id nostri, vineis actis turrique exstrūctā, oppūgnāre coepērunt. Ubi vērō turrim movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. Hīs Caesar respondit: sē condiціōnem dēditionis nūllam acceptūrum esse, nisi armis trāditis. Rē nūntiātā, Aduātuci dixērunt sē factūrōs esse quae imperārentur. Armōrum vērō māgnā multitudine dē mūrō in fossam iactā, circiter autem tertiā parte celātā et in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

523. Root *voc*, *call*.

<i>voc-ō</i> , <i>call</i>	<i>vocā-bulum</i> , <i>name, word</i>	<i>vōc-liferor</i> , <i>cry aloud</i>
<i>vōx</i> (<i>voc</i> + <i>s</i>), <i>voice</i>	<i>vōc-u-la</i> , <i>feeble voice</i>	<i>voc-ā-tīvus</i> , <i>—?</i>

Form compound verbs with *ā*, *con*, *dē*, *prō*, *re*, and give meanings.

ENG. DER. — Vocal, vocabulary, voice, vocation, vociferate, revoke, vocative.

LESSON LXXVII

THE SUPINE — EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE — WORD LIST

524. The Supine is a verbal substantive of the Fourth Declension, found only in the Accusative singular (Former Supine), and in the Ablative singular (Latter Supine): *rogātum*, *rogātū*.

525. Examine the following: —

1. *Hōc est difficile factū*, *this is difficult to do* (in respect to the doing).
2. *Hōc est fās dictū*, *this is right to say*.

Observe that *factū* and *dictū* express acts in respect to which the quality is asserted.

RULE. — The latter Supine is used with some adjectives and a few other words to express the act in reference to which the quality is asserted.

NOTE. — These adjectives usually denote ease or difficulty, pleasure or displeasure, right or wrong.

526. Examine the following : —

1. *Lēgātī ad eum pācem petītum vēnērunt, ambassadors came to him to beg peace.*

Observe that *petītum* expresses the purpose for which the ambassadors came.

RULE. — The former Supine is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion.

527. Expressions of purpose. — The most common of these are illustrated in the following examples : —

Lēgātī vēnērunt	{	ut pācem peterent	}	<i>the ambassadors came to seek peace.</i>
		quī pācem peterent		
		pācis petendae causā		
		pācem petendī causā		
		ad pācem petendam pācem petītum		

528. You will observe from these examples that purpose may be expressed by (1) a clause with *ut*, etc., with the Subjunctive, (2) a clause with *quī* and the Subjunctive, (3) the Gerundive or Gerund with *causā*, (4) the Gerundive in the Accusative with *ad*, (5) the former Supine with a verb of motion.

529.

VOCABULARY

Amāzōn, ōnis, f., an Amazon, a significantiō, ōnis, f., signal.
warlike woman.

ascēsus, ūs, m., ascent.

ēruptiō, ōnis, f., sally.

rēgina, ae, f., queen.

rīxa, ae, f., quarrel, dispute.

zōna, ae, f., belt, girdle.

asportō, āre, āvi, ātus, carry off or away.

cōnserō, ere, uī, tus, join, unite;

manūs cōnserere, join battle.

benīgnē, adv., kindly.

530.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Amāzonum rēgīna zōnam pulcherrimam quondam habēbat, quam Herculēs ad Eurystheum asportāre iussus est. 2. Herculēs, cum ad Amāzonum terram pervēnisset, ab eīs benignē acceptus est. 3. Cum zōnam petitum vēnisset, tamen eum benignē accēpērunt. 4. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī milītēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quān noctū oppidī incolae ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. 5. Caesar lēgātōs ad eōs mīsīt, quī dicerent sē eōs in dēditiōnem acceptūrum esse. 6. Herculēs in terram Amāzonum missus erat ut ad Eurystheum zōnam rēgīnae asportāret. 7. Milītēs in agrōs ad frūmentum cōferendum mittēbantur. 8. Decima legiō ad Caesarem auxilium ferendī causā missa est. 9. Rixā ortā, Amāzonēs contrā Herculem manūs cōservērunt. 10. Simul ac hostēs ēruptiōnem ex oppidō fēcērunt, significātiō ignibus facta est. 11. Facile est dictū zōnam rēgīnae asportāre, factū autem difficile.

II. 1. Eurystheus sent Hercules to bring the girdle of the queen (three ways). 2. The soldiers were sent as ambassadors to beg peace (four ways). 3. Labienus was sent to seize the camp of the enemy.

531.

READING LESSON: *Hippolytēs*¹ *Zōna*

Herculēs, cum ad Eurystheum cum equābus Diomēdis revertisset, in Amāzonum terram ire iussus est, ut difficile opus cōficeret. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, zōnam pulcherrimam habēbat. Hāc autem potiri volēbat Admētē,² Eurystheī filia, itaque Herculēs eam asportāre iussus est. Tandem ad Amāzonum terram pervēnit. Ibi primum eum benignē accēpit³ Hippolytē zōnamque prōmīsīt; sed, ortā rixā, contrā Herculem Amāzonēs manūs cōservērunt. Hīs victis et occisā Hippolytā, Herculēs zōnā potitus est et ad Eurystheum asportāvit, itaque Admētē laeta erat.

¹ of Hippolyte.² Admete.³ entertained.

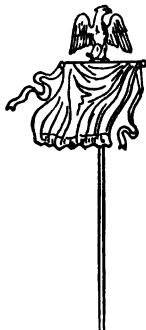
532. Root *flu*, *flow*.*flu-ō*, *flow**fle-ō*, *weep**flū-men*, *river**in-flu-ō*, —?*flu-ctus*, *wave, flood**flu-itō*, *float*

ENG. DER. — Fluid, flush, fluctuate, flux, flume, influence, fluency.

533.

WORD LIST XII

administrō	cōnserere manūs	**mānsuēfaciō	repentīnus
**adversus	**corrumpō	*memoria	*rēs militāris
**adversō colle	Crēta	*misericordia	*resistō
Amāzōn	*currus	*multitūdō	rixa
ancora	*decumānus	ōrnō	**rūsus
*apertus	*deinde	**pāscō	sapiēns
appropīnquō	*ēdō	**patefaciō	**significatiō
*ascēnsus	ēgregiē	**patria	*singulāris
*asportō	*equa	**pellō	*speciēs
*auferō	**ēruptiō	*permittō	*studium
*bellō	fōrma	**praeceps	*supplex
*benīgnē	*iaciō	*praemium	tamen
cālō	*identidem	*prīstinus	*trānsgridior
clam	incolumis	*prōvolō	Trēverī
cohortor	*inermis	recēns	turpitūdō
**compellō	interneciō	**recipiō	*vēxillum
condiciō	*īrātus	*redigō	*victōria
*cōnsēnsus	*legō	*rēgīna	zōna
cōnserō	*mandō	*rēmus	



VEXILLUM

LESSON LXXVIII

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS—DATIVE OF THE AGENT

NOTE.—Review the Future Active participle and the Gerundive of the regular verb. See 331, with 1.

534. First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation

PRES.	vocā-tūr-us (moni-tūr-us , etc.) <i>sum, I am about to call, intend to call.</i>
IMPERF.	vocā-tūr-us eram , etc., <i>I was about to call, etc.</i>
FUT.	vocā-tūr-us erō , etc., <i>I shall be about to call, etc.</i>
PERF.	vocā-tūr-us fui , etc., <i>I was or have been about to call, etc.</i>
PLUP.	vocā-tūr-us fueram , etc., <i>I had been about to call, etc.</i>
FUT. PERF.	vocā-tūr-us fuerō , etc., <i>I shall have been about to call, etc.</i>

535. Examine the following :—

1. **Quaerō quid factūrus sit**, *I ask what he is going to do, intends to do, will do.*
2. **Quaesivi quid factūrus esset**, *I asked what he was going to do, etc.*

Observe in the above sentences that in the indirect question the first periphrastic conjugation takes the place of the lacking Future Subjunctive.

This is true of all forms of indirect discourse.

536. Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

PRES.	voca-ndus (mone-ndus) <i>sum, I have to be, ought to be, must be called.</i>
IMPERF.	voca-ndus eram , <i>I had to be called, etc.</i>
FUT.	voca-ndus erō , <i>I shall have to be called, etc.</i>
PERF.	voca-ndus fui , <i>I had or have had to be called, etc.</i>
PLUP.	voca-ndus fueram , <i>I had had to be called, etc.</i>
FUT. PERF.	voca-ndus fuerō , <i>I shall have had to be called, etc.</i>

1. The Subjunctive and Infinitive in the periphrastic conjugations are formed according to the same law as the Indicative.

537. Examine the following :—

1. **Signum Caesarī dandum est**, *Caesar has to give the signal* (the signal must be given by Caesar).
2. **Militibus ad montem currendum est**, *the soldiers must run to the mountain.*

Observe that in the above, duty, necessity, or obligation is implied, and that the name of the person upon whom the duty, necessity, or obligation rests is in the Dative case.

Observe the impersonal use¹ of the verb in 2.

RULE.—To express the person upon whom the duty, necessity, or obligation rests, the second periphrastic conjugation, with the Dative of the agent, is used.

538.

VOCABULARY

sectiō , ōnis, f., <i>booty.</i>	dēcernō , ere, crēvī, crētus, <i>decree.</i>
supplicatiō , ōnis, f., <i>thanksgiving.</i>	refringō , ere, frēgī, fractus, <i>break down.</i>
iniquus , a, um, <i>uneven, unfavorable.</i>	
universus , a, um, <i>universal, as a whole.</i>	vēndō , ere, didī, ditus, <i>sell.</i>

539.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant. 2. Lēgātus septimam legiōnem ad collem missūrus erat. 3. Lēgātō primā aestāte bellum gerendum est. 4. Castra mūnienda erunt postquam cōpiās nostrās flūmen trādūximus. 5. Acies instruenda, signum dandum, militēs ab opere revocandī sunt. 6. Dēditione factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs esse existimāvērunt. 7. Omnibus cōpiis subitō ex oppidō ēruptionem fēcērunt, quā facilius ad castra nostra ascēsus vidēbātur. 8. Militēs portās refractūri erant. 9. Caesar sectionem eō diē vēditūrus erat. 10. Puella sorōrem vocātūra est.

II. 1. The soldiers are about to storm the town. 2. Caesar had to give the signal. 3. The lieutenant thought that he ought to

¹ The use of a verb in the third person sing. without a personal subject.

occupy the hill. 4. The soldiers had to fortify the camp. 5. The enemy thought that Caesar would not cross the river. 6. If Caesar should enroll two new legions, he would be able to defeat the Germans. 7. When Caesar heard this, he began to return into the province. 8. As soon as Caesar arrived, the army was led into winter quarters.

540.

READING LESSON

Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidī incolae ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi, ante cōsiliō,¹ ut intellēctum est, initō, quod, dēditionē factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs exīstimāverant, omnibus cōpiis subitō ex oppidō ēruptionem fēcērunt. Pūgnātum est ab hostibus ācriter, cum in unā² virtūte omnis spēs salūtis esset. Occīsīs ad hominum milibus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum repulsī sunt. Postridīe eius diēi, refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, sectionem eius oppidī unīversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quīnquāgintā et trium. Eōdem tempore certior factus est omnēs maritimās civitātēs in potestātem populī Rōmānī redāctās esse. His rēbus gestis, omnī Galliā pācātā, ipse in Italiā profectus est. Ob eas rēs in diēs quīndecim³ supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

541. Root *cad*, *fall*.*cad-ō*, *fall**ac-cid-ō*, *happen**cad-āver*, *a dead body**cās-us*, *accident**dis-cēd-ō*, *depart**dis-cēs-sus*, *—?*

ENG. DER. — Case, casual, accident, secede, ancestor, success.

¹ in accordance with a plan arranged beforehand.

² in valor alone.

³ a thanksgiving for fifteen days.

LESSON LXXIX

THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE—PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

542. The Indirect Discourse has been already defined, and simple illustrations of its use given. See 283, 304.

Fix in memory the fact that verbs of saying, knowing, perceiving, and the like, introduce the indirect discourse, that the verbs of its principal propositions are in the Infinitive mood, and that the tenses of the Infinitive denote time, present, past, or future, with reference to that of the verb which introduces the indirect discourse.

543. Examine the following : —

1. **Dicit sē audire**

quid faciam	} <i>He says that he</i>	} <i>what I am doing.</i>
quid fecerim		
quid factūrus sim		
	<i>hears or is</i>	<i>what I have done or did.</i>
	<i>hearing</i>	<i>what I am about to do.</i>

2. **Dicit sē audivisse**

quid facerem	} <i>He says that he</i>	} <i>what I did or was doing.</i>
quid fecissem		
quid factūrus essem		
	<i>heard or has</i>	<i>what I had done.</i>
	<i>heard</i>	<i>what I was about to do.</i>

3. **Dicit sē auditūrum esse**

quid faciam	} <i>He says that he</i>	} <i>what I am doing.</i>
quid fecerim		
quid factūrus sim		
	<i>will hear</i>	<i>what I have done or did.</i>
		<i>what I am about to do.</i>

4. **Dixit sē audire**

quid facerem	} <i>He said that he</i>	} <i>what I did or was doing.</i>
quid fecissem		
quid factūrus essem		
	<i>heard or was</i>	<i>what I had done.</i>
	<i>hearing</i>	<i>what I was about to do.</i>

5. **Dixit sē audivisse**

quid facerem	} <i>He said that he</i>	} <i>what I did or was doing.</i>
quid fecissem		
quid factūrus essem		
	<i>had heard</i>	<i>what I had done.</i>
		<i>what I was about to do.</i>

6. **Dixit sē auditūrum esse**

quid facerem	} <i>He said that he</i>	} <i>what I did or was doing.</i>
quid fecissem		
quid factūrus essem		
	<i>should hear</i>	<i>what I had done.</i>
		<i>what I was about to do.</i>

1. Observe that while the verb of the principal proposition in the indirect discourse is in the Infinitive, that of the subordinate proposition is in the Subjunctive. This holds true in all subordinate propositions, — relative, interrogative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.

2.¹ Observe sharply the use of tenses in the leading verb, in the Infinitive, and ² in the verbs of the subordinate clauses.

3. Note that the Perfect Infinitive may represent any past tense of the Indicative.

Learn the above examples, with their English meanings.

RULE.— In the Indirect Discourse, the verbs of the principal propositions are in the Infinitive, the verbs of the subordinate propositions in the Subjunctive.

544.

VOCABULARY

calor, ōris, m., *heat.*

columna, ae, f., *column, pillar.*

cymba, ae, f., *skiff, boat.*

gigās, antis, m., *giant.*

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*

latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*

biceps, ipitis, *two headed.*

uterque, traque, trumque, *each,*
both.

coniciō, ere, iēcī, lectus, *hurl.*

cūstōdiō, ire, ivī, itus, *guard.*

mīror, āri, ātus sum, *wonder at,*
admire.

igitur, adv., *therefore.*

545.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dixit sōlis calōrem tantum esse ut in eum sagittās suās coniceret. 2. In Hispāniam profectus dicit sē columnās statūtūrum esse ad utrumque latus maris. 3. Dixit gigantem, quī bovēs cūstōdiret, summīs viribus esse. 4. Sciō tē mīrārī columnās quae ad utrumque latus maris statūtae sint. 5. Scīvī vōs audāciam mīrārī quam Herculēs praebēret. 6. Dixit sē nunquam bicipitem

¹ Any primary tense of *dīcō* may be used with the constructions in 1, 2, and 3, and any secondary tense with those in 4, 5, and 6.

² Rhetorical questions and subordinate propositions merely explanatory or stating what is true independent of the quotation have their verbs in the indicative.

gigantem vīdisse. 7. Dixit Herculem cymbā aureā sōlis domum nā-vigāre, postquam gigantem interfēcisset. 8. Vidit eōs ad montēs sē-recēpisse, quod hostēs secūtī essent. 9. Scīvit, sī id nōn fēcisset, sē fēlicem futūrum fuisse.¹

Change each sentence of the above into the direct discourse, giving sharp attention to mood and tense.

II. 1. He said that Hercules when he arrived in Spain placed pillars on each side of the sea. 2. He said that the two-headed giant who guarded the oxen lived in Arcadia. 3. They said that



Hercules hurled his weapons at the sun because the heat was so great. 4. He says that he wonders at the size of the giant who is guarding the oxen. 5. He saw that the golden boat of the sun, in which Hercules was carried, was very large and beautiful. 6. He

thinks that the men, who came to Caesar concerning terms of peace, were wise and brave. 7. He replied that he would not give hostages to the Roman people, because that part of Gaul was his. 8. He said that he would go to Arcadia, where the happiest men lived.

546.

READING LESSON: *Gēryōnis Bovēs*

Gigās triplici corpore, Gēryōn nōmine, in insulā Erythiā habitābat. Eī erat māximus pulcherrimusque grex boum; quōs gigās Eurytiōn et canis biceps cūstodiēbant. Herculēs est profectus in Libyam et Hispāniam ut eōs invenīre et abducere posset. Suō adventū ad utrumque latus maris columnās statuit quibus nōmen • Herculēis columnīs² dedit. Dēfessus labōre et calōre sōlis lacessī-tus in Hēlion³ sagittās coniēcit. Hīc autem, audāciam eius mirā-

¹ Peculiar Infinitive form used in the indirect discourse in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact in past time. Translate, *would have been happy*.

² to which he gave the name of the pillars of Hercules. The most usual construction of the name given is the Dative in agreement with that to which the name is given.

³ *Helios* (the sun god); **Hēlion**, Greek form of Acc.

tus, eī cymbam auream, quā ipse vehitur, dedit, ut ad Erythīam nāvigāre posset. Hūc vectus Gēryōnem cum Eurytiōne et cane interfēcit, et incolumis domum cum bōbus revertit.

547. Root col, till.

col-ō, <i>till, inhabit</i>	in-col-ō, <i>inhabit</i>	agri-col-a, —?
col-ōnus, <i>tiller, colonist</i>	in-col-a, —?	agri-cul-tūra, —?
cul-tus, <i>cultivation</i>	col-ōnia, —?	in-cul-tus, —?

Form English derivatives.

LESSON LXXX

VERB REVIEW — REGULAR VERBS

548. Review carefully the regular verb in both active and passive voices, referring to 603-614.

Be able to give any form of each of the following verbs: laudō, terreō, dūcō, faciō, mūnīō.

549.

VOCABULARY

Atlās, antīa, m., <i>Atlas.</i>	habitō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>dwelt in, inhabit.</i>
caelum, I, n., <i>sky.</i>	nancīscor, I, nactus sum, <i>obtain, find.</i>
dolus, I, m., <i>trick, deceit.</i>	recēdō, ere, cessi, cessus, <i>withdrew, go back.</i>
mālum, I, n., <i>apple.</i>	
pulvīnus, I, m., <i>cushion, pad.</i>	
adsentior, Irī, sēnsus sum, <i>assent, agree.</i>	

550.

READING LESSON: *Māla Hesperidum*

Deinde Eurystheus Herculem iussit sibi māla aurea Hesperidum asportāre. Opus erat difficillimum, nōn enim locum, quō erant, sciēbat. Erant vērō in hortō māgnō et pulchrō ad montem Atlantem, ubi Hesperidēs cum ingentī serpente ea cūstōdiēbant. Cum tandem locum Herculēs nancīscerētur, Atlantem rogāvit num sibi

māla auferre vellet ; pollicitus est vērō sē caelum suis umeris impositum, vice¹ eius sustentūrum esse. Atlās adsēsus est, profectus est, cum mālīs revertit, nōlēbat autem caelum iterum sustinēre. Tum dixit Herculēs : “Sustinē caelum, sī placet,² dum³ pulvinum capiti meō parem.” Onere ita per dolum iterum umeris Atlantis impositō, Herculēs mālīs aureis potitus ad Eurystheum recessit.

551. Root **man**, **ma**, *measure*.

man-us , <i>hand</i>	man-dā-tum , —?	man-ipulus ,
man-dō , <i>put into the hand,</i> <i>order</i>	man-ceps (<i>manus capiō</i>) <i>one who takes by the hand,</i> <i>purchaser</i>	<i>handful, com-</i> <i>pany</i>

ENG. DER. — Manacle, manage, manifest, manner, manual, manufacture, manuscript, maintain, maneuver.



LESSON LXXXI

VERB REVIEW — IRREGULAR VERBS — WORD LIST

552. Review carefully the irregular verbs. See 615-628.

553.

VOCABULARY

aditus , ūs, m., <i>approach, entrance.</i>	servitūs , ūtis, f., <i>slavery.</i>
canis , is, m. and f., <i>dog.</i>	Tartara , ōrum, n. pl., <i>Tartarus, the</i> <i>lower world.</i>
Cerberus , ī, m., <i>Cerberus.</i>	triceps , iptis, <i>three headed.</i>

554.

READING LESSON : *Cerberus*

Herculēs undecim labōrēs iam perēgerat, difficillimum autem opus erat reliquum. Erat in Tartaris canis triceps, nōmine Cerberus. Hīc aditum in Tartara cūstōdiēbat et nē quis adīret prohibē-

¹ *in his stead.*

² *if you please, lit. if it is pleasing.*

³ *dum* referring to something purposed takes the Subjunctive.

bat. Herculēs hunc in terram ferre iussus in Tartara cum Hermā¹ et Athēnā² profectus est. Tum summō labōre Cerberum manibus captum in terram sēcum portāvit. Hīs labōribus fūctus Herculēs ab Eurystheō servitūte liberātus est. Multae et mīrae fābulae dē hōc fortī homine nārratae sunt, quās legere aliō³ possitis.

555. Root *hab*, *have*.

hab-e-ō, *have* *dē-beō* (*dē* + *habeō*), *have from* *pro-hib-eō*, —? *some one, owe*

hab-i-tō, *inhabit* *hab-i-tus*, *condition, garb* *dē-b-ilis*, *weak*

ENG. DER. — Habit, inhabit, exhibit, prohibit, debt, ability, average.

556.

WORD LIST XIII

*aditus	Cerberus	gigās	mālum	sectiō
*adsentior	columna	*habitō	*mīror	*servitūs
Atlās	*coniciō	Hispānia	nancīscor	*supplicātiō
**biceps	*cūstōdiō	*igitur	pulvīnus	Tartara
caelum	cymba	*inīquus	*recēdō	**triceps
calor	dēcernō	latus	refringō	*ūniversus
canis	dolus			*uterque



HERCULES AND CERBERUS

¹ *Hermes* or *Mercury*, the messenger of the gods.

² *Athene* or *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom.

³ *elsewhere*.

CONTINUOUS LATIN PROSE

NOTE. — The pupil should now be able to translate the following continuous passages with ease. Most of the words have been already given in the special vocabularies as English equivalents of Latin words, and frequently used in the Latin-English and English-Latin exercises. The few others can be easily learned from the general vocabulary at the end of the book. All difficult constructions and new idioms will be explained in notes following each exercise, and frequent references made to points already emphasized.

557.

EXERCISE I

Caesar, a brave and famous general of the Romans, conquered the forces of the Helvetians in Gaul. He also conquered Ariovistus, king of the Germans, in a great battle. He then led his army among the Sequani, and he himself hastened into the interior of Gaul.¹ There he called together his lieutenants and enrolled two new legions, for the Belgae were conspiring against the Roman people and bringing their forces together into one place.

¹ *in interiorem Galliam*. See 237.

558.

EXERCISE II

Bibrax was a town of the Remi near the river Axona. This town the Belgae began to attack on the march with great force. Iccius, a man of¹ great authority and influence among the Remi, informed Caesar of² the plans of the Belgae. He said³ that the Remi were not preparing arms, but were ready to give hostages to the Romans, receive them into their towns, and⁴ assist them with grain and other things which were of use⁵ to them for war. He said, moreover, that the Germans were in arms, and were making a conspiracy against the Roman people.

¹ Use Ablative of quality. See 157. ² *dē*. ³ Observe that "said" introduces the indirect discourse. See 543. ⁴ Omit. ⁵ See 139.

559.

EXERCISE III

Caesar, because the danger of the Remi was great and their safety a care¹ to him, sent as an aid to them archers and slingers. The Bellovaci surpassed the rest of the Belgae in valor,² and in the number of men who could³ bear arms; but the chief command⁴ of the war was conferred upon Galba, king of the Suessiones. After⁵ hostages had been given by the Remi, Caesar led his forces across the river, and ordered his soldiers to fortify the camp with a wall and a ditch.

¹ Dative. ² See 94. ³ Use Subjunctive of *possum* with following Infinitive. Why Subjunctive? See 448. ⁴ *summa*. ⁵ Ablative Absolute. See 176-178.

560.

EXERCISE IV

After the enemy had been defeated in a fierce cavalry battle, Caesar led his men back into the camp, but the enemy tried to storm the redoubt and cut down the bridge which was over the river. When our men saw this, they hastened toward them and killed a great number. After this battle they decided to return home,¹ and, at the second watch,² they set out from the camp with a great shout. Caesar pursued, and having killed many of them, returned to the camp. On the day after this, he led his forces into the territory of the Suessiones and hastened to the town of Noviodunum.³

¹ See 394. ² *secundā vigiliā*. ³ Accusative in app. with *oppidum*.

561.

EXERCISE V

After Caesar began to push up the sheds and to prepare those things which were of use¹ for assaulting, the Suessiones, alarmed by the magnitude of the works, surrendered themselves to the Romans. Caesar received as hostages the chief men of the state, and among them the two sons of Galba himself. Then, having established² peace, he led his cavalry and infantry forces against the Bellovaci, who immediately surrendered themselves and all

their property³ to the Roman people, and gave Caesar six hundred hostages, the children of the nobility.

¹ *ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant.* ² Ablative Absolute. See 176-178.
³ *suaque omnia.*

562.

EXERCISE VI

Caesar then led his army against the Nervii, a fierce and hostile nation, who neither gave hostages nor accepted terms of peace. Our soldiers had chosen for a camp a hill which sloped gradually¹ to the river. Across this river the Nervii had seized another hill. At the top² of this hill were dense woods in which the enemy had concealed themselves. Along³ the river a few horsemen were seen. Our cavalry, which Caesar had sent forward, hastened to join battle with them, but were in a short time defeated by the enemy, who suddenly made an attack against them from the woods.

¹ *paulatim vergēbat.* ² See 237. ³ *secundum flūmen.*

563.

EXERCISE VII

Caesar had¹ to do everything at one time. He drew up his army more² as the nature of the place, than² as the plan of military affairs, demanded. The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions were fighting on the left wing,³ and the two legions which had been most recently enrolled met⁴ the enemy on the banks of the river, but the Romans who had been defeated in the first attack,⁵ again sought safety in flight. Caesar, greatly disturbed, advanced to the line of battle, and ordered his men to use their swords. At his arrival, their courage was renewed. They met the enemy with fresh strength,⁶ and drove them to the banks of the river. Here the Nervii fought with their swords, but our men threw missiles from a higher place and killed a great number of them. The rest, frightened, fled, and thus the name and nation of the Nervii were reduced almost to destruction.

¹ See 537. ² *magis ut . . . quam ut . . .* ³ *in sinistrō cornū.* ⁴ *occurrō* with the Dative. ⁵ *primō impetū.* ⁶ *integrīs viribus.*

564.

EXERCISE VIII

The Aduatuci, who had come with all their forces to the aid ¹ of the Nervii, betook themselves to a fortified town, and determined to defend themselves against the Romans. For a few days they contended with our soldiers in slight engagements,² but at length, being alarmed by the strength and quickness of the Romans, they sent ambassadors to Caesar concerning surrender. They pretended³ to throw all their arms into the ditch before the town, but they had concealed about a third part within the walls. In the night they made a sally from the town, but were easily repulsed by the Romans.

¹ Two Datives. See 129. ² *parvulis proeliis*. ³ *simulō*.

565.

EXERCISE IX

Caesar sent Galba¹ with the tenth legion and a great part of the cavalry against the Nantuates, whose territories extend to the summits of the Alps. He ordered him to place² two legions there, and to fortify the village of Octodurus.³ After many days of winter-quarters, Galba ordered grain to be brought from the fields; but it was not brought, for the Nantuates had suddenly withdrawn from the village by night, and the mountains were held by a great number of the enemy, who were preparing war. Galba hearing⁴ of this, decided to defend the camp.

¹ Not the Galba who was king of the Suessiones, but one of Caesar's lieutenants. ² *conlocō*. ³ 560, n. 3. ⁴ *hōc auditō*.

566.

EXERCISE X

After a brief time, the enemy made an attack upon our men, and hurled stones against the rampart. Then our soldiers rushed against them from all quarters of the camp, and drove them back. After¹ this battle was finished, Galba led his men safe into the territory of the Allobroges, and wintered there. In the meantime, a new war arose² among the Veneti. Caesar having been

informed of these things, sent Brutus with a fleet to capture³ their boats. After this had been done, he quickly brought⁴ the war to an end.

¹ *Hæc proeliū factū.* ² *ortum est.* ³ *quī* with Subjunctive. ⁴ *bring to an end, cōficiō.*

567.

EXERCISE XI

While these things were going on among the Veneti, Caesar sent Quintus¹ Titurius Sabinus against the Unelli, and ordered him to hinder them from injury and mischief. Sabinus selected a place for a camp suitable in all respects, and kept himself and his men in this camp for many days. In the meantime, many states had come as² an aid to the enemy. Sabinus hearing³ of this, attacked them suddenly, and easily conquered them. They fled, some⁴ in one direction, and others in another, but our men pursued and wounded many. Sabinus announced his victory to Caesar, and at the same time was informed of Caesar's naval battle.

¹ *Q. Titūrius Sabinus.* ² See 129. ³ *hīs rēbus audītis.* ⁴ See 251.

CONLOQUIA

THESE conloquia may be taken at the teacher's pleasure at intervals in connection with the other work, or consecutively at the end of the series of lessons and the continuous prose exercises.

568. Conloquium I. Situs Rōmae. Pater et Filius Conloquuntur

Dialogue The location

F. Ubi est Rōma?

P. In Ītaliā est Rōma.

F. Quā in parte Ītaliae est Rōma?

P. Rōma est in eā parte quae ad occāsum-sōlis spectat.

the west lies.

F. Estne Rōma ad mare?

near

P. Scīlicet, Rōma sēdecim mīlibus-passuum ab marī abest,

Certainly,

miles

posita ad flūmen.

F. Quod ad flūmen Rōma posita est?

P. In rīpīs Tiberis Rōma posita est.

569. Conloquium II. Conditor Rōmae

Founder

F. Quis, mī pater, Rōmam cōstituit?

my

founded?

P. Trāditur, mī filiōle, Rōmulus Rōmam cōstituisse multōs

They say,

little son,

annōs abhinc.

ago.

F. Fābulam mihi dē Rōmulō nārrā, sī tibi libet.

tell, if you please.

P. Nunc negōtium mihi est; inveniēs autem fābulam iūcundam

I am busy

pleasing

dē Rōmulō Remōque in librō quem hodiē tibi dedi.

to-day

570. Conloquium III. O. Iulius Caesar

F. Quandō Caesar Rōmae vīxit?

When

did live?

P. Nātus est Caesar multōs annōs abhinc, C. Mariō et L. Valeriō
was born
cōsulibus.

in the consulship of.

F. Caesarne unquam cōsul fuit?

ever

P. Ita vērō, Caesar erat cōsul cum M. Calpurniō Bibulō.

F. Quam ob rem clārus Caesar erat?

P. Clārus erat quod māgnus ōrātor, doctus vir et litteris ēruditus,
ēgregius auctor, māximus dux erat. *learned* *educated,*
eminent author

F. Nōne mēcum crās amplius de Caesare loquēris?

to-morrow further

will speak?

P. Ita, iamque, valē.

and now, farewell.

571. Conloquium IV. O. Iulius Caesar

F. Cupiō audire amplius dē Caesare, cāre pater, sī ōtium est tibi.

I wish

if you have time

P. Negōtium est mihi, mī fili, sed sī quid vīs, nōn occupātus
sum. Quid vīs scire? *if you wish anything* *engaged*

F. Quae Caesar scripsit?

did write?

P. Historiam dē suis bellis scripsit.

A narrative

F. Quibuscum Caesar bellum gessit?

P. Cum Helvētiis, cum Germānis, cum multis aliis gentibus
bellum gessit.

F. Semperne eas proeliō superāvit?

P. Etiam. Iam cognōscēs Caesarem fortem clārumque imperā-
torem fuisse.

572. Conloquium V. C. Iulius Caesar

F. Eratne Caesar rēx Rōmānōrum?

P. Minimē, aliī autem dīcunt eum cupidum rēgnī fuisse.
some throne

F. Quārē Caesar nōn rēx creātus est?
made

P. Rōmānī Tarquiniū Superbum, suum rēgem septimū et
Tarquin the Proud,
 ultimū, multis annīs ante expulerant, neque volēbant esse aliū
last, before had expelled,
 rēgem; nam nōmen rēgem ōderant.
hated.

573. Conloquium VI. Praeceptor et Discipulus dē Caesare

Teacher Pupil

Conloquuntur

D. Nōne multae fābulae dē Caesare narrantur?

P. Ita sānē, multae et pulchrae.

D. Nārrā mihi, sī placet tibi, fābulam dē hōc virō māximō.
if you please,

P. Hodiē nārrāre nōn possum, mihi enim ōtium nōn est; crās,
 sī mē interrogābis, respondēbō.
if you ask me,

D. Bene est. Crās revertar. Valē.

P. Et tū valē.

574. Conloquium VII. Caesar in Tempestāte

D. Nōne mihi hodiē fābulam dē Caesare nārrāre vīs?

P. Libenter. Quid vīs cognōscere?
Willingly.

D. Nōne Caesar erat ōlim in nāve in māgnā maris tempestāte?
once

P. Ita vērō, ut dicit Plutarchus, scriptor Graecus.
as Plutarch, Greek.

D. Nōne erant fluctūs māgnī?
waves

P. Ita sanē, et tantus erat impetus ventōrum, ut omnēs nautae perterriti essent. *force of the winds,*

D. Eratne nāvis magister commōtus?

P. Graviter commōtus, et reverti voluit.
Seriously turn back

D. Num Caesar timēbat?

P. Minimē vērō; magistrum autem ad sē vocāvit et dixit:
"Quid timēs? Caesarem vehis."

575. Conloquium VIII. Caesar apud Pirātās I
Pirates

D. Nōne Caesar olim in manūs pirātārum incidit?

P. Ita. Mox autem liberātus est.

D. Quōmodo?

P. Pirātae vīginti talenta redēptionem postulāverunt.
talents as a ransom

D. Quid fēcit Caesar?

P. Eōs dērisit quod tantulum postulāverunt, et dixit.
laughed at so little

D. Quid dixit?

P. Dixit: "Mē tantulō redimere nōn volō. Postulāte quīnquā-
for so little ransom
gintā talenta. Solvam."
I will pay them.

D. Accēperuntne pirātae hās condiciōnēs?

P. Ita vērō. Tum mīsit Caesar amicōs ad pecūniam conligendam,
the money to collect
quō factō, liberātus est.

576. Conloquium IX. Caesar apud Pirātās II

D. Quid fēcit Caesar, dum apud pirātās versābātur?

P. Postquam amicī suī ad pecūniam conligendam profectī sunt,
sē delectābat cum pirātīs.
amused

D. Quōmodo sē dēlectābat?

P. Simulābat sē dormīre velle ; itaque iis imperābat nē
He pretended to sleep not
 clāmōrem facerent.
to make a noise.

D. Nōne pārēbant?

P. Etiam. Caesar versūs quoque ad eōs lūdendōs fēcit, quōs
verses to make fun of them composed
 iis recitāvit
read aloud.

D. Num id placuit pīrātīs?
did please

P. Placuit vērō ; quamquam Caesar in versibus dixit sē, post-
although
 quam liberātus esset, reversūrum esse et eōs interfectūrum.
would return

D. Num crēdidērunt pīrātae?
did believe

P. Nōn crēdidērunt. Caesar vērō māgnū exercitū
 conlēgit, revertit, eōs superāvit, in carcerem conīcit, postea
prison afterwards
 in crucem sustulit.
he crucified them.

D. Ēheu ! Ēheu ! Quem virum crūdēlem !
Alas ! What a cruel !

P. Minimē vērō, nōn crūdēlis, plērumque mītissimus erat.
generally very gentle.

577. Conloquium X. C. Crastinus

D. Quis, mī praeceptor, erat C. Crastinus?

P. Erat, mī discipule, ut dīxit Plutarchus, vir fortis, quī in pūgnā
 ad Pharsālum unī ex Caesaris manipulis praeerat.
companies

D. Quid dixit Caesar cum sē in pūgnā illi obvium ferret?
he met him?

P. Dīxit : “ Quae spēs est, Crastine, fortunāe meliōris ? ”

D. Quid respondit Crastinus?

P. Respondit, manū dextrā tentā, “ Hodiē, mī imperātor,
reaching out his right hand,

māgnificē vincēmus, et tū quoque mē, vīvum aut mortuum lau-
gloriously shall conquer *alive or dead*
 dābis."

D. Fābula optima est. Agō tibi grātiās.
excellent *I thank you.*

P. Minimē. Nārrō libenter.
gladly.

578. Conloquium XI. Caesar ad Zēlam

D. Nārrā mihi, mī praeceptor, sī placet, fābulam amplius, crās
 domum redeō.
I am going back.

P. Mē miserum ! Tē saepe dēsīderābō. Cūr abis ?
Alas ! *shall miss.* *Why are you going away ?*

D. Pater meus aeger est. Mē arcessīvit. Eundum est mihi.
sick *I must go.*

P. Certē, tibi est eundum. Ante autem interrogā quidcumque vīs.
Certainly *ask* *whatever*

D. Velim cognōscere num Caesar cum Pharnace pūgnāret.
I should like *whether* *Pharnaces*

P. Ita sānē, et praeclāram victōriam dēportāvit.
famous *bore off.*

D. Quem ad locum pūgnāvit ?

P. Pūgnāvit ad Zēlam, unde litterās dē hāc pūgnā ad amīcum
 Rōmam mīsīt.

D. Quid scripsit Caesar ?

P. Scripsit : " Vēnī, vidī, vīcī."

D. O verbum mirābile ! Quem virum fortem ! Nunquam
wonderful !
 dēsīnam eum admīrārī.
shall I cease *to admire.*

P. Bene dicis, est enim laude dīgnus.
worthy of praise.

D. Agō tibi grātiās. Nunc abeundum est mihi. Valē !

P. Tū quoque valē.

TABLE OF DECLENSION

TYPICAL SUBSTANTIVES

579.

FIRST DECLENSION

Stem ending a; Base silv-

SING.	N.	silv-a, F.	PLUR.	N.	silv-ac
	G.	silv-ac		G.	silv-ārum
	D.	silv-ac		D.	silv-is
	Ac.	silv-am		Ac.	silv-ās
	V.	silv-a		V.	silv-ac
	Ab.	silv-ā		Ab.	silv-is

580.

SECOND DECLENSION

Stem ending o

		Base lēgāt-	bell-	puer-	agr-	vir-
SING.	N.	lēgāt-us, M.	bell-um, N.	puer, M.	ager, M.	vir, M.
	G.	lēgāt-i	bell-i	puer-i	agr-i	vir-i
	D.	lēgāt-ō	bell-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	vir-ō
	Ac.	lēgāt-um	bell-um	puer-um	agr-um	vir-um
	V.	lēgāt-e	bell-um	puer	ager	vir
	Ab.	lēgāt-ō	bell-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	vir-ō
PLUR.	N.	lēgāt-i	bell-a	puer-i	agr-i	vir-i
	G.	lēgāt-ōrum	bell-ōrum	puer-ōrum	agr-ōrum	vir-ōrum
	D.	lēgāt-is	bell-is	puer-is	agr-is	vir-is
	Ac.	lēgāt-ōs	bell-a	puer-ōs	agr-ōs	vir-ōs
	V.	lēgāt-i	bell-a	puer-i	agr-i	vir-i
	Ab.	lēgāt-is	bell-is	puer-is	agr-is	vir-is

581.

THIRD DECLENSION

Stem ending consonant

Base duo-		corpor-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. dux, M.	duc-ēs	corpus, N.	corpor-a
G. duc-is	duc-um	corpor-is	corpor-um
D. duc-i	duc-ibus	corpor-i	corpor-ibus
Ac. duc-em	duc-ēs	corpus	corpor-a
Ab. duc-e	duc-ibus	corpor-e	corpor-ibus

582.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)Stem ending *i*

	Base <i>host-</i>	<i>turr-</i>	<i>mar-</i>	<i>urb-</i>
SING.	N.V. <i>host-is</i> , M. F.	<i>turr-is</i> , F.	<i>mar-e</i> , N.	<i>urb-s</i> , F.
	G. <i>host-is</i>	<i>turr-is</i>	<i>mar-is</i>	<i>urb-is</i>
	D. <i>host-ī</i>	<i>turr-ī</i>	<i>mar-ī</i>	<i>urb-ī</i>
	Ac. <i>host-em</i>	<i>turr-im</i> (<i>em</i>)	<i>mar-e</i>	<i>urb-em</i>
	Ab. <i>host-e</i>	<i>turr-ī</i> (<i>e</i>)	<i>mar-ī</i>	<i>urb-e</i>
PLUR.	N.V. <i>host-ēs</i>	<i>turr-ēs</i>	<i>mar-ia</i>	<i>urb-ēs</i>
	G. <i>host-ium</i>	<i>turr-ium</i>	<i>mar-ium</i>	<i>urb-ium</i>
	D. <i>host-ibus</i>	<i>turr-ibus</i>	<i>mar-ibus</i>	<i>urb-ibus</i>
	Ac. <i>host-īs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)	<i>turr-īs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)	<i>mar-ia</i>	<i>urb-īs</i> (<i>ēs</i>)
	Ab. <i>host-ibus</i>	<i>turr-ibus</i>	<i>mar-ibus</i>	<i>urb-ibus</i>

583.

Stem ending irregular

Base irregular

	Base	irregular	
SING.	N.V. <i>iter</i> , N.	<i>senex</i> , M.	<i>vī-s</i> , F.
	G. <i>itiner-is</i>	<i>sen-īs</i>	<i>vī-s</i> (<i>rare</i>)
	D. <i>itiner-ī</i>	<i>sen-ī</i>	<i>vī</i> (<i>rare</i>)
	Ac. <i>iter</i>	<i>sen-em</i>	<i>vi-m</i>
	Ab. <i>itiner-e</i>	<i>sen-e</i>	<i>vī</i>
PLUR.	N.V. <i>itiner-a</i>	<i>sen-ēs</i>	<i>vīr-ēs</i>
	G. <i>itiner-um</i>	<i>sen-um</i>	<i>vīr-ium</i>
	D. <i>itiner-ibus</i>	<i>sen-ibus</i>	<i>vīr-ibus</i>
	Ac. <i>itiner-a</i>	<i>sen-ēs</i>	<i>vīr-ēs</i>
	Ab. <i>itiner-ibus</i>	<i>sen-ibus</i>	<i>vīr-ibus</i>

584.

FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem ending *u*

	Base <i>cās-</i>	<i>corn-</i>
SING.	N.V. <i>cās-us</i> , M.	<i>corn-ū</i> , N.
	G. <i>cās-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ūs</i>
	D. <i>cās-uī</i>	<i>corn-ū</i>
	Ac. <i>cās-um</i>	<i>corn-ū</i>
	Ab. <i>cās-ū</i>	<i>corn-ū</i>
PLUR.	N.V. <i>cās-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ua</i>
	G. <i>cās-uum</i>	<i>corn-uum</i>
	D. <i>cās-ibus</i>	<i>corn-ibus</i>
	Ac. <i>cās-ūs</i>	<i>corn-ua</i>
	Ab. <i>cās-ibus</i>	<i>corn-ibus</i>

585.

FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem ending *o*Base *di-*

SING.	N.V.	di-ēs, M. F.	PLUR.	N.V.	di-ēs, M. F.
	G.	di-ēī		G.	di-ērum
	D.	di-ēī		D.	di-ēbus
	Ac.	di-em		Ac.	di-ēs
	Ab.	di-ē		Ab.	di-ēbus

ADJECTIVES

586.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

a- and *o-*Stems

SING.	N.	fid-us	fid-a	fid-um
	G.	fid-ī	fid-ae	fid-ī
	D.	fid-ō	fid-ae	fid-ō
	Ac.	fid-um	fid-am	fid-um
	V.	fid-e	fid-a	fid-um
	Ab.	fid-ō	fid-ā	fid-ō
PLUR.	N.	fid-ī	fid-ae	fid-a
	G.	fid-ōrum	fid-ārum	fid-ōrum
	D.	fid-īs	fid-īs	fid-īs
	Ac.	fid-ōs	fid-ās	fid-a
	V.	fid-ī	fid-ae	fid-a
	Ab.	fid-īs	fid-īs	fid-īs

587.

a- and *o-*Stems

SING.	N.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
	G.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-ī
	D.	miser-ō	miser-ae	miser-ō
	Ac.	miser-um	miser-am	miser-um
	V.	miser	miser-a	miser-um
	Ab.	miser-ō	miser-ā	miser-ō
PLUR.	N.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
	G.	miser-ōrum	miser-ārum	miser-ōrum
	D.	miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs
	Ac.	miser-ōs	miser-ās	miser-a
	V.	miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
	Ab.	miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs

588.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

a- and o-Stems

SING.	{	N.V. noster	nostr-a	nostr-um
		G. nostr-i	nostr-ae	nostr-i
		D. nostr-ō	nostr-ae	nostr-ō
		Ac. nostr-um	nostr-am	nostr-um
		Ab. nostr-ō	nostr-ā	nostr-ō
PLUR.	{	N.V. nostr-i	nostr-ae	nostr-a
		G. nostr-ōrum	nostr-ārum	nostr-ōrum
		D. nostr-īs	nostr-īs	nostr-īs
		Ac. nostr-ōs	nostr-ae	nostr-a
		Ab. nostr-īs	nostr-īs	nostr-īs

589.

THIRD DECLENSION

Three terminations; i-Stems

SING.	{	N.V. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e
		G. ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is
		D. ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i
		Ac. ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e
		Ab. ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i
PLUR.	{	N.V. ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
		G. ācr-ium	ācr-ium	ācr-ium
		D. ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
		Ac. ācr-īs (ēs)	ācr-īs (ēs)	ācr-ia
		Ab. ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

590.

Two terminations; i-Stems

SING.	{	N.V. facil-is	facil-e	PLUR.	{	N.V. facil-ēs	facil-ia
		G. facil-is	facil-is			G. facil-ium	facil-ium
		D. facil-i	facil-i			D. facil-ibus	facil-ibus
		Ac. facil-em	facil-e			Ac. facil-īs (ēs)	facil-ia
		Ab. facil-i	facil-i			Ab. facil-ibus	facil-ibus

591.

One termination; Consonant Stems

SING.	{	N.V. ferāx	ferāx	PLUR.	{	N.V. ferāc-ēs	ferāc-ia
		G. ferāc-is	ferāc-is			G. ferāc-ium	ferāc-ium
		D. ferāc-i	ferāc-i			D. ferāc-ibus	ferāc-ibus
		Ac. ferāc-em	ferāx			Ac. ferāc-īs (ēs)	ferāc-ia
		Ab. ferāc-i (e)	ferāc-i (e)			Ab. ferāc-ibus	ferāc-ibus

592.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

Comparative; Consonant Stems

SING.	N.V.	fortior	fortius	PLUR.	N.V.	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
	G.	fortiōr-is	fortiōr-is		G.	fortiōr-um	fortiōr-um
	D.	fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ī		D.	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus
	Ac.	fortiōr-em	fortius		Ac.	fortiōr-īs (ēs)	fortiōr-a
	Ab.	fortiōr-e (ī)	fortiōr-e (ī)		Ab.	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus

593.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
SING.	N.	ūllus	ūlla	ūllum	uter	utra	utrum
	G.	ūllius	ūllius	ūllius	utrius	utrius	utrius
	D.	ūlli	ūlli	ūlli	utri	utri	utri
	Ac.	ūllum	ūllam	ūllum	utrum	utram	utrum
	Ab.	ūllō	ūllā	ūllō	utrō	utrā	utrō
PLUR.	N.	ūlli	ūllae	ūlla	utri	utrae	utra
	G.	ūllōrum	ūllārum	ūllōrum	utrōrum	utrārum	utrōrum
	D.	ūllis	ūllis	ūllis	utris	utris	utris
	Ac.	ūllōs	ūllās	ūlla	utrōs	utrās	utra
	Ab.	ūllis	ūllis	ūllis	utris	utris	utris

LIST OF ADJECTIVES DECLINED AS ABOVE

alius alter neuter nūllus sōlus tōtus ūllus ūnus uter

594.

DECLENSION OF Duo AND Trēs

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
PLUR.	N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
	G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
	D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
	Ac. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
	Ab. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

595.

TABLE OF COMPARISON

bonus	melior	optimus	cis	citerior	citimus
malus	pēior	pessimus	in, intrā	interior	intimus
māgnus	māior	māximus	prae, prō	prior	prīmus
parvus	minor	minimus	prope	propior	proximus
multus	plūs	plūrimus	ultrā	ulterior	ultimus
exterus	exterior	{ extrēmus extimus	posterus	posterior	{ postrēmus postumus
Inferus	Inferior	{ infimus imus	superus	superior	{ suprēmus summus

PRONOUNS

596. PERSONAL

SING.	{	N.	ego	tū ¹	—
		G.	meī	tuī	suī
		D.	mibi	tibi	sibi
		Ac.	mē	tē	sē
FLUR.	{	Ab.	mē	tē	sē
		N.	nōs	vōs	—
		G.	nostrum (i)	vestrum (i)	suī
		D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
	{	Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē
		Ab.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

597. REFLEXIVE

598.

DEMONSTRATIVE

SING.	{	N.	hic	haec	hōc	is	ea	id
		G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	ēius	ēius	ēius
		D.	huic	huic	huic	eī	eī	eī
		Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	eum	eam	id
FLUR.	{	Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	eō	eā	eō
		N.	hī	hae	haec	eī (ii)	eae	ea
		G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
		D.	his	his	his	eīs (iis)	eīs (iis)	eīs (iis)
	{	Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	eōs	eās	ea
		Ab.	hīs	hīs	his	eīs (iis)	eīs (iis)	eīs (iis)

599.

SING.	{	N.	ille ²	illa	illud	ipse ¹	ipsa	ipsum
		G.	illius	illius	illius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
		D.	illi	illi	illi	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
		Ac.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
FLUR.	{	Ab.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
		N.	illī	illae	illa	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
		G.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
		D.	illis	illis	illis	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
	{	Ac.	illōs	illās	illa	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
		Ab.	illis	illis	illis	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

¹ In *tū* and *ipse* the Vocative is like the Nominative; it is lacking in the other pronouns.

² *iste* is declined like *ille*.

600.

RELATIVE

SING.	N.	quī	quae	quod
	G.	cūius	cūius	cūius
	D.	cui	cui	cui
	Ac.	quem	quam	quod
	Ab.	quō	quā	quō
PLUR.	N.	quī	quae	quae
	G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	D.	quibūs	quibus	quibus
	Ac.	quōs	quās	quae
	Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

601.

INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE

SING.	N.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
	G.	cūius	cūius	cūius
	D.	cui	cui	cui
	Ac.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
	Ab.	quō	quā	quō
PLUR.	N.	quī	quae	quae
	G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	D.	quibus	quibus	quibus
	Ac.	quōs	quās	quae
	Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

602.

INDEFINITE

SING.	N.	aliquis (-quī)	aliqua	aliquid (-quod)
	G.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
	D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
	Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (-quod)
	Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
PLUR.	N.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
	G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
	D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
	Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
	Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE

Stems vocā-

monē-

regē-

capē-

audi-

603.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

voc- {
ō
ā-s
a-t
ā-mus
ā-tis
a-nt

mon- {
e-ō
ē-s
e-t
ē-mus
ē-tis
e-nt

reg- {
ō
i-s
i-t
i-mus
i-tis
u-nt

cap- {
i-ō
i-s
i-t
i-mus
i-tis
iu-nt

aud- {
i-ō
i-s
i-t
i-mus
i-tis
iu-nt

IMPERFECT TENSE

voc- {
ā-ba-m
ā-bā-s
ā-ba-t
ā-bā-mus
ā-bā-tis
ā-ba-nt

mon- {
ē-ba-m
ē-bā-s
ē-ba-t
ē-bā-mus
ē-bā-tis
ē-ba-nt

reg- {
ē-ba-m
ē-bā-s
ē-ba-t
ē-bā-mus
ē-bā-tis
ē-ba-nt

cap- {
iē-ba-m
iē-bā-s
iē-ba-t
iē-bā-mus
iē-bā-tis
iē-ba-nt

aud- {
iē-ba-m
iē-bā-s
iē-ba-t
iē-bā-mus
iē-bā-tis
iē-ba-nt

604.

FUTURE TENSE

|--|

804.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

voc- { **ā** **ā-te**

reg-^eite

cap-^e
ite

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \bar{a}-t\bar{o} \\ \bar{a}-t\bar{o} \\ \bar{a}-t\bar{o}te \\ a-nt\bar{o} \end{array} \right\}$
 voc-

mon-
 { ē-tō ē-tō ē-tōte e-ntō }

reg- { i-tō
i-tō i-tōte
u-ntō

cap- { i-tō
i-tō
i-tōte
in-ntō }

and-
 {
 ī-tō
 ī-tō
 ī-tōte
 iu-ntō

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE

Stems vocā-	monē-	rege-	capē-	audi-
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD				
PRESENT TENSE				
voc- c-m cā-s c-t cā-mus cā-tis c-nt	mon- ca-m cā-s ca-t cā-mus cā-tis ca-nt	reg- a-m ā-s a-t ā-mus ā-tis a-nt	cap- ia-m iā-s ia-t iā-mus iā-tis ia-nt	aud- ia-m iā-s ia-t iā-mus iā-tis ia-nt
IMPERFECT TENSE				
voc- ā-re-m ā-rē-s ā-re-t ā-rē-mus ā-rē-tis ā-re-nt	mon- ē-re-m ē-rē-s ē-re-t ē-rē-mus ē-rē-tis ē-re-nt	reg- e-re-m e-rē-s e-re-t e-rē-mus e-rē-tis e-re-nt	cap- e-re-m e-rē-s e-re-t e-rē-mus e-rē-tis e-re-nt	aud- i-re-m i-rē-s i-re-t i-rē-mus i-rē-tis i-re-nt

PERFECT TENSE		PLUPERFECT TENSE	
		erī-m erī-s erī-t vocāv- monu- rēx- cēp- audiv-	isse-m issē-s isse-t issē-mus issē-tis isse-nt
606.			
Pres. voc-āre	mon-ēre		
Perf. vocāv-isse	monu-isse		
Fut. vocā-tūrus esse	moni-tūrus esse		
607.			
Pres. voc-āns	mon-ēns		
Fut. vocā-tūrus	moni-tūrus		
608.			
G. voc-andī	mon-endī		
D. voc-andō	mon-endō		
Ac. voc-andum	mon-endum		
Ab. voc-andō	mon-endō		
609.			
Former vocā-tum	moni-tum		
Latter vocā-tū	moni-tū		
		cap-ere cēp-isse cap-tūrus esse cap-iēns cap-tūrus cap-iendī cap-iendō cap-iendum cap-iendō cap-tum cap-tū	aud-ire audiv-isse audi-tūrus esse aud-iēns audi-tūrus aud-iendī aud-iendō aud-iendum aud-iendō aud-i-tum aud-i-tū

INFINITIVE

reg-ere
rēx-isse
rēc-tūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

reg-ēns
rēc-tūrus

GERUND

reg-endī
reg-endō
reg-endum
reg-endō

SUPINE

rēc-tum
rēc-tū

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE

Stems vocā-	monē-	regē-	capē-	audī-
INDICATIVE MOOD				
PRESENT TENSE				
o-r ā-ris (re) ā-tur ā-mur ā-minī ā-ntur voc-	e-o-r ē-ris (re) ē-tur ē-mur ē-minī ē-ntur mon-	o-r e-ris (re) i-tur i-mur i-minī u-ntur reg-	i-o-r e-ris (re) i-tur i-mur i-minī iu-ntur cap-	i-o-r i-ris (re) i-tur i-mur i-minī iu-ntur aud-
IMPERFECT TENSE				
ā-be-r ā-bā-ris (re) ā-bā-tur ā-bā-mur ā-bā-minī ā-be-ntur voc-	ē-be-r ē-bā-ris (re) ē-bā-tur ē-bā-mur ē-bā-minī ē-be-ntur mon-	ē-bā-r ē-bā-ris (re) ē-bā-tur ē-bā-mur ē-bā-minī ē-be-ntur reg-	iē-ba-r iē-bā-ris (re) iē-bā-tur iē-bā-mur iē-bā-minī iē-be-ntur cap-	iē-ba-r iē-bā-ris (re) iē-bā-tur iē-bā-mur iē-bā-minī iē-be-ntur aud-

FUTURE TENSE		
voc- ā-bo-r ā-be-ris (re) ā-bi-tur mon- ē-bo-r ē-be-ris (re) ē-bi-tur reg- ē-r ē-ris (re) ē-tur cap- is-r iē-ris (re) iē-tur aud- iē-mur iē-mini ie-ntur		
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE		
vocāt- monit- rēct- capt- audit- us, a, um I, ac, a sum es est sumus estis sunt eram erās erat erāmus erātis erant erō eris erit erimus eritis erunt		

611.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE		
voc- ā-re ā-mini mon- ē-re ē-mini reg- e-re i-mini cap- e-re i-mini aud- i-re i-mini		
FUTURE TENSE		
voc- ā-tor ā-tor — a-ntor mon- ē-tor ē-tor — e-ntor reg- i-tor i-tor — u-ntor cap- i-tor i-tor — iu-ntor aud- i-tor i-tor — iu-ntor		

TABLE OF CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE

Stems vocā-	monē-	rege-	capē-	audi-
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD				
PRESENT TENSE				
e-r ē-ris (re) ē-tur ē-mur ē-mini e-ntur	ea-r eā-ris (re) eā-tur eā-mur eā-mini ea-ntur	a-r ā-ris (re) ā-tur ā-mur ā-mini a-ntur	ia-r iā-ris (re) iā-tur iā-mur iā-mini ia-ntur	ia-r iā-ris (re) iā-tur iā-mur iā-mini ia-ntur
voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-
IMPERFECT TENSE				
ā-re-r ā-rē-ris (re) ā-rē-tur ā-rē-mur ā-rē-mini ā-re-ntur	ē-re-r ē-rē-ris (re) ē-rē-tur ē-rē-mur ē-rē-mini ē-re-ntur	e-re-r e-rē-ris (re) e-rē-tur e-rē-mur e-rē-mini e-re-ntur	e-re-r e-rē-ris (re) e-rē-tur e-rē-mur e-rē-mini e-re-ntur	i-re-r i-rē-ris (re) i-rē-tur i-rē-mur i-rē-mini i-re-ntur
voc-	mon-	reg-	cap-	aud-

PERFECT TENSE

vocāt-	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{us, a, um} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \\ \text{simus} \\ \text{sitis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right\}$	sim
monit-		sis
rēct-		sit
capt-		simus
audit-	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{I, ae, a} \end{array} \right\}$	sitis
		sint

PLUPERFECT TENSE

cassem
casēs
casset
casēmus
cessētis
essent

613.

INFINITIVE

PRES. voc-ārī	mon-ērī	reg-ī	cap-ī	aud-īrī
PERF. vocāt-us esse	monit-us esse	rēct-us esse	capt-us esse	audīt-us esse
FUT. vocāt-um īrī	monit-um īrī	rēct-um īrī	capt-um īrī	audīt-um īrī

614.

PARTICIPLE

PERF. vocāt-us	monit-us	rēct-us	capt-us	audīt-us
GERUNDIVE voc-andus	mon-endus	reg-endus	cap-iendus	aud-iendus

TABLE OF CONJUGATION

IRREGULAR VERBS

615.

INDICATIVE MOOD

sum	eram	erō	fuī	fueram	fuero
es	erās	eris	fuisti	fuerās	fuerois
est	erat	erit	fuit	fuerat	fueroit
sumus	erāmus	erimus	fuius	fuerāmus	fuemus
estis	erātis	eritis	fuistis	fuerātis	fuerois
sunt	erant	erunt	fuērunt (-re)	fuerant	fueroit

616.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
sīs	essēs	fueris	fuisse
sit	esset	fuerit	fuisse
simus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuisse
sītis	essētis	fueritis	fuisse
sint	essent	fuerint	fuisse

617. IMPERATIVE MOOD

618. INFINITIVE

PRESENT	es
	este
FUTURE	estō
	estō
	estōte
	suntō

PRESENT	esse
PERFECT	fuisse
FUTURE	fore or futūrus esse
FUT. PART.	futūrus, a, um

619.

INDICATIVE MOOD

pos-sum	volō	nōlō	mālō	fiō
pot-es	vis	nōn vis	māvis	fit
pot-est	vult	nōn vult	māvult	fit
pos-sumus	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	firmus
pot-estis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	fitis
pos-sunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	fiunt

INDICATIVE MOOD (*Continued*)

pot-eram	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	fiēbam
pot-erō	volam	nōlam	mālam	fiam
pot-uī	voluī	nōluī	māluī	factus sum
pot-ueram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	factus eram
pot-uerō	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	factus erō

620.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

pos-sim	velim	nōlim	mālim	fiam
pos-sis	velis	nōlis	mālis	fiās
pos-sit	velit	nōlit	mālit	fiat
pos-simus	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus	fiāmus
pos-sitis	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis	fiātis
pos-sint	velint	nōlint	mālint	fiant
pos-sem	vellem	nōllem	māllem	fierem
pot-uerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	factus sim
pot-uissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	factus essem

621.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	posse	velle	nōlle	mālle	fieri
PERFECT	potuisse	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	factus esse
				FUTURE	factum iri

622.

PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	potēns	volēns	nōlēns	—	—
PERFECT	—	—	—	—	factus
GERUNDIVE	—	—	—	—	faciendus

623.

INDICATIVE MOOD

e-ō	fer-ō	fer-o-r
i-s	fer-s	fer-ris (re)
i-t	fer-t	fer-tur
i-mus	fer-i-mus	feri-mur
i-tis	fer-tis	feri-minī
eu-nt	fer-u-nt	feru-ntur
i-ba-m	ferē-ba-m	ferē-ba-r
i-b-ō	fera-m	fera-r
i-v-ī (i-ī)	tul-ī	lā-tus sum
i-v-era-m	tul-era-m	lā-tus eram
i-v-er-ō	tul-er-ō	lā-tus erō

624.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

ea-m	fera-m	fera-r
eā-s	ferā-s	ferā-ris (re)
ea-t	fera-t	ferā-tur
eā-mus	ferā-mus	ferā-mur
eā-tis	ferā-tis	ferā-mini
ea-nt	fera-nt	fera-ntur
i-re-m	fer-re-m	fer-re-r
i-v-eri-m	tul-eri-m	lā-tus sim
i-v-isse-m	tul-isse-m	lā-tus essem

625.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT	{ I	fer	fer-re
	{ I-te	fer-te	feri-mini
FUTURE	{ I-tō	fer-tō	fer-tor
	{ I-tō	fer-tō	fer-tor
	{ I-tōte	fer-tōte	—
	{ eu-ntō	feru-ntō	feru-ntor

626.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	i-re	fer-re	fer-ri
PERFECT	i-v-isse	tul-isse	lā-tus esse
FUTURE	i-tūr-us esse	lā-tūrus esse	lā-tum iri

627.

PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	iē-ns	ferē-ns	—
FUTURE	i-tūr-us	lā-tūr-us	ferē-ndus
PERFECT	—	—	lā-tus

628.

GERUND

eu-ndī, etc.	ferē-ndī, etc.
--------------	----------------

SUPINE

i-tum	lā-tum
-------	--------

RULES OF SYNTAX

THE following rules have been given in the body of this book, preceded by illustrative examples and notes. They are repeated here for convenience of reference. The numbers following the rules refer to the illustrative examples.

629. Nominative Subject. — The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case (32).

630. Adjective. — An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case (32).

631. Direct Object. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative case (42).

632. Limiting Genitive. — A noun limiting another, and denoting a different person or thing, is in the Genitive case (52).

633. Order of Words. — The normal order of a Latin sentence is: subject, modifiers of the subject, modifiers of the verb, verb; but this order is constantly changed for the sake of emphasis (53).

634. Indirect Object. — The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is used with verbs of giving, and others whose meaning permits (58).

635. Ablative of Separation. — Verbs of depriving and freeing take the Ablative without a preposition. In case of other verbs of separation the usage varies, some taking the Ablative with a preposition, some without, and some admitting either construction (70).

636. Complementary Infinitive. — The Infinitive is used with verbs meaning to decide, hasten, begin, and in general with those requiring a second action of the same subject to complete their meaning (74).

637. Predicate Nominative. — A noun in the predicate with an intransitive or passive verb, agrees with the subject in case (75).

638. Appositive. — A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in apposition with it, and agrees with it in case (75).

639. Ablative of Specification. — The Ablative is used to express that in respect to which anything is, or is done (94).

640. Ablative of Accompaniment. — The Ablative with *cum* is used to express accompaniment, but in military phrases *cum* may be omitted (114).

641. Adjectives as Substantives. — Plural adjectives are used quite frequently as substantives, the masculine to denote persons, the neuter to denote things (119).

642. Double Dative. — The Latin often uses a Dative of the object for which together with another Dative of the person for whom, where the English uses a predicate noun, and an indirect object. This is called the Double Dative, and is used principally with the verb *sum* (129).

643. Accusative of Time and Space. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the Accusative (141).

644. Dative of the Possessor. — The Dative is used with *sum* and similar verbs to denote the possessor (146).

645. Agreement of Relative. — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends upon its relation to other words in the sentence (148).

646. Ablative of Quality or Description. — The Ablative, with an adjective in agreement with it, is used to express quality (157).

647. Ablative of Time. — Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative (167).

648. Ablative Absolute. — A noun or pronoun limited by a participle is often used in the construction called the Ablative Absolute, to express the time or other circumstances of an action (176).

NOTE. — Two nouns or a noun and an adjective may be used together in the Ablative Absolute (176).

649. Ablative of Cause.—The Ablative is used with or without a preposition to denote cause (184).

NOTE.—The prepositions **dē** and **ex** with the Ablative, and **ob** and **propter** with the Accusative, are used to express cause (184).

650. Ablative of Manner.—The manner in which an act is performed is expressed by a noun in the Ablative with **cum** when it has no qualifying adjective, by the Ablative with or without **cum** when it has a qualifying adjective (192).

651. Ablative with Comparatives.—The Ablative is used after the comparative when **quam** is omitted, but when it is expressed the same case follows as precedes (204).

NOTE.—**Quam** may be used with any case preceding; it *need not* be used after the Nominative or Accusative; it *must* be used after the other cases.

652. Use of Comparative.—The comparative is sometimes used to express a rather high or too high a degree of the quality (205, 1).

653. Use of Superlative.—The superlative is often used to express not the highest, but a very high, degree of the quality (205, 2).

654. Ablative of Means.—The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition (224).

655. Prepositions.—The following prepositions govern the Ablative only:

Ā, ab, or abs, absque, dē,
Cōram, palam, cum, ex, ē,
Sine, tenus, prō and prae.

In, **sub**, **subter**, and **super** govern both Ablative and Accusative. All other prepositions govern the Accusative only (228).

656. Special Rules for Prepositions.—

1. **Ab** is used where motion *away from* a place is indicated.
2. **Ex** is used where motion *out of* a place is indicated.
3. **In** and **sub** govern the Accusative with verbs of motion, the Ablative with verbs of rest (229).

657. Ablative of the Agent.—The voluntary agent of an action is expressed by *ā* or *ab* with the Ablative case (230).

658. Adjectives of Order and Succession.—Superlatives (sometimes also comparatives) denoting order and succession are used in agreement with a noun to denote what part of the object is designated. So also *oſterus*, *medius*, *reliquus* (237).

659. Alius and Alter.—*Alius* and *alter*, repeated in another case, express briefly a double statement (251).

660. Indirect Discourse, Simple Sentences.—Statements after verbs and other expressions of saying, perceiving, thinking, and the like are expressed by the Infinitive with a subject in the Accusative (263).

661. Ablative of Degree of Difference.—The Ablative is used without a preposition to express the degree of difference between two persons or things (267).

662. Dative with Adjectives.—The Dative is used with adjectives denoting resemblance, fitness, nearness, and the like, with their opposites (269).

NOTE.—Adjectives of fitness may take an Accusative with *ad*.

663. Dative with Intransitives.—Some verbs, intransitive in Latin, though apparently transitive, are followed by a Dative of the indirect object. Such are verbs denoting to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare (294).

664. Partitive Genitive.—Words denoting a part are used with a Genitive of the whole to which the part belongs (299).

NOTE.—Cardinal numbers and *quidam* generally take the Ablative with *ex* or *de* to express the whole of which a part is taken, the ordinals generally take the partitive Genitive (300).

665. Time of Infinitive.—The Infinitive expresses time relative to that of the verb upon which it depends (304).

666. Dative with Compounds.—Most verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*, and some with *circum*, are used with the Dative case (310).

667. Ablative with Deponents. — *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vesco*, with their compounds, take the Ablative (316).

668. Two Accusatives. — Verbs of naming, making, choosing, calling, and showing take two Accusatives, one of the person or thing affected, the other a predicative Accusative (357).

NOTE. — In the passive the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate Accusative the predicate Nominative.

669. Constructions of Place. — 1. The place from which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a preposition, regularly *ab, dē, or ex*; but names of towns and small islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, omit the preposition (393).

2. The place to which is regularly expressed by the Accusative with a preposition; but names of towns and small islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, omit the preposition (394).

3. The place in which is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *in*; but names of towns and small islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, are put into the Locative (395).

NOTE. — The Locative has the same form as the Genitive in singulars of the first and second declensions; but in singulars of the third declension and in all plurals the same as the Dative or Ablative. The Locative forms of *domus* and *rūs* are *domi* and *rūri*.

670. The Subjunctive. — The Subjunctive is used in independent clauses to express —

1. An exhortation, a command, a prohibition: the Hortatory Subjunctive.
2. A wish: the Optative Subjunctive.
3. A possibility: the Potential Subjunctive.
4. Doubt or indignation in questions: The Dubitative Subjunctive (401).

671. Sequence of Tenses. — In complex sentences a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary in the subordinate; a secondary by a secondary (410).

672. Clauses of Purpose. — In clauses of purpose the Subjunctive is used with *ut* affirmative and *nē* negative (419).

673. Verbs of Fearing. — Verbs and other expressions of fearing are followed by the Subjunctive with *nō* affirmative and *ut* negative (426).

674. Relative Clauses of Purpose. — Clauses introduced by relatives and used to express purpose have their verbs in the Subjunctive, and follow the general laws for the sequence of tenses (434).

675. Clauses of Result. — 1. Pure result is expressed by the Subjunctive with *ut* affirmative, *ut nōn* negative (441).

2. After expressions of doubt, hindrance, and the like, the Subjunctive with *quān* is used (441).

676. Subjunctive of Characteristic. — The Subjunctive is used, especially after expressions of existence and non-existence and questions implying a negative answer, to express a characteristic or essential quality of the subject (448).

677. Indirect Questions. — An indirect question is expressed by the Subjunctive (454).

678. Conditions. — More Vivid Future. — The Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative is used in the protasis of more vivid future conditions, and the Future Indicative in the apodosis (468).

679. Conditions. — Less Vivid Future. — The Present (or Perfect) Subjunctive is used in the protasis of less vivid future conditions, and the Present Subjunctive in the apodosis (468).

680. Conditions. — Contrary to Fact. — The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis in conditions contrary to fact, the Imperfect to express present time and the Pluperfect to express past time (474).

681. Cum Causal and Concessive. — *Cum* is followed by the Subjunctive when introducing causal and concessive clauses (487).

682. Temporal Clauses. — 1. The particles *postquam*, *ubi*, *simul* atque (*simul ac*) take the Indicative, usually the Perfect.

2. **Cum** temporal is used with the Subjunctive when the circumstance or action depends upon another, or when the time is described. It is used with the Indicative when the time is made emphatic or defined (494).

NOTE. — In narrative **cum** temporal is almost always used with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

683. The Imperative. — 1. The Present Imperative is used in commands or entreaties, but where distinct reference is made to future time, the Future Imperative is used (504).

2. In prohibitions **nē** with the Perfect Subjunctive, or **nōlī** (**nōlīte**) with the Infinitive, is used (504).

684. The Gerund. — The Gerund, as a noun, has the construction of other nouns, and, as a verb, retains its power of governing an object (517).

685. The Gerundive. — The gerundive is used by preference instead of the Gerund when the latter would, if used, take a direct object. This object is then put into the case in which the Gerund, if used, would have been, and the Gerundive agrees with it in gender, number and case (519).

NOTE. — The Gerund and Gerundive are used to express purpose (519).

686. The Supine. — The former Supine is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion (526).

687. The latter Supine is used with some adjectives and a few other words to express the act in reference to which the quality is asserted (525).

688. Dative of the Agent. — To express the person upon whom the duty, necessity or obligation of an act rests, the Dative of the agent with the second periphrastic conjugation is used (537).

689. Indirect Discourse. — In the indirect discourse the verbs of the principal propositions are in the Infinitive, the verbs of the subordinate propositions in the Subjunctive (543).

TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS

Abl.	= Ablative.	lit.	= literally.
abs.	= absolute.	m., masc.	= masculine.
Acc.	= Accusative.	neut.	= neuter.
act.	= active.	Nom.	= Nominative.
adj.	= adjective.	n.	= note.
adv.	= adverb.	part.	= participle.
adv. phr.	= adverbial phrase.	part.	= partitive.
app.	= apposition.	pass.	= passive.
art.	= article.	per.	= person.
comp.	= comparative.	Perf., Pf.	= Perfect.
conj.	= conjunction.	pl.	= plural.
conj.	= conjugation.	Plup.	= Pluperfect.
cor.	= correlative.	pos.	= positive.
Dat.	= Dative.	post-posit.	= post-positive.
dec.	= declension.	pred.	= predicate.
def.	= defective.	prep.	= preposition.
der.	= derivative.	Pres.	= Present.
Eng.	= English.	princ.	= principal.
etc.	= and so forth.	pron.	= pronoun.
f., fem.	= feminine.	R.	= root.
fut.	= future.	rel.	= relative.
Gen.	= Genitive.	s., sing.	= singular.
Impf.	= Imperfect.	subj.	= subject.
Ind.	= Indicative.	subst.	= substantive.
ind. disc.	= indirect discourse.	superl.	= superlative.
indef.	= indefinite.	Voc.	= Vocative.
Inf.	= Infinitive.	vocab.	= vocabulary.
inter.	= interrogative.	w.	= with.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

- ā**, **ab**, or **abs**, prep. with Abl., *from, away from, by*.
abdūcō, **ere**, **dūxi**, **ductus**, *lead away, take away*.
abeō, **ire**, **ivi** or **ii**, **itus**, *go away, depart*.
abhinc, adv. (of past time), w. Acc. or Abl., *ago, since*.
abiciō, **ere**, **iēcī**, **iectus**, *throw away, throw down, abandon*.
abscidō, **ere**, **i**, **scisus**, *break off, cut off or away*.
absum, **esse**, **āfui**, **futūrus**, *be away from, be absent*.
ac, conj., *and*.
accēdō, **ere**, **cessi**, **cessus**, *draw near, approach*.
accidō, **ere**, **cidī**, —, *happen, occur*; w. Dat. pers., *happen to*.
accipiō, **ere**, **cēpi**, **ceptus**, *accept, receive, entertain (as guest)*.
ācer, **cris**, **cre**, adj., *sharp, eager, fierce*.
acerbus, **a**, **um**, adj., *bitter, sour*.
acervus, **i**, **m**, *heap, pile*.
aciēs, **ēi**, **f**, *edge, line of battle, battle line*.
ācritēr, adv., *sharply, fiercely*.
ad, prep. w. Acc., *to, toward, near to, by, at, for*.
addūcō, **ere**, **dūxi**, **ductus**, *lead to or towards, induce, persuade*.
adeō, **ire**, **ivi** or **ii**, **itus**, *go to, approach, visit*.
adequītō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātus**, *ride towards, w. ad*.
adferō, **ferre**, **attulī**, **adlātus**, *bring to, report*.
aditus, **ūs**, **m**, *approach, access*.
Admētō, **ēs**, **f**, *Admete*.
administrō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātus**, *manage, perform, accomplish*.
admiror, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *wonder at, admire*.
adorior, **iri**, **tus sum**, *approach, attack*.
adrogantia, **ae**, **f**, *arrogance, pride*.
adsentior, **iri**, **sēnsus sum**, *agree with, assent to*.
adsequor, **i**, **secūtus sum**, *pursue, come up with*.
adsum, **esse**, **fui**, **futūrus**, *be near, be present*; w. Dat., *assist*.
Aduātuci, **ōrum**, **m**, **pl**, *the Aduatuci, a people of Gaul*.
adventus, **ūs**, **m**, *approach, arrival*.
adversus, **a**, **um**, adj., *turned towards, opposite*.
adversō colle, *up hill*.
advocō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātus**, *call, summon*.
aedificium, **i**, **n**, *building*.
Aedui, **ōrum**, **m**, **pl**, *Aedui, a tribe in Gaul*.
aeger, **gra**, **grum**, adj., *sick*.
aēneus, **a**, **um**, adj., *of bronze, brassy*.
aequālīter, adv., *equally, uniformly*.
aequus, **a**, **um**, adj., *equal, fair*.
aestās, **ātis**, **f**, *summer*; **aestāte initā**, *in the beginning of summer*.
aetās, **ātis**, **f**, *life, age*.
ager, **gri**, **m**, *field, territory*.
agger, **eris**, **m**, *rampart, mound*.
aggredior, **gredi**, **gressus sum**, *go to, approach, attack*.
āgmen, **inis**, **n**, *line, army on the march*.
āgmen claudō, *bring up the rear*.
āgnus, **i**, **m**, *lamb*.
agō, **ere**, **ēgi**, **actus**, *do, drive, move, construct, plead*.
agō grātiās tibi, *I thank you*.

- agrestis, e, adj., *country, rural*.
 agricola, ae, m., *farmer*.
 agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture*.
 alacritās, ātis, f., *eagerness, alacrity*.
 ālarius, a, um, adj., *of the wing*.
 ālarii, ōrum, m. pl., *auxiliaries*.
 aliēnus, a, um, adj., *belonging to another, strange, unfriendly*.
 aliō, adv., *elsewhere*.
 aliquis, aliquid, indef. pron., *some one, some body, some thing*.
 alius, a, ud, pronom. adj., *another, other*; alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*; alii aliam in partem, *some in one direction, others in another*.
 Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *the Allobroges, a warlike people in Gaul*.
 Alpēs, ium, f. pl., *the Alps*.
 alter, era, erum, pronom. adj., *the other of two, the other, the one of two*; alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other*.
 altitūdō, inis, f., *height, altitude*.
 altus, a, um, adj., *high, deep*.
 Amāzōn, onis, f., *an Amazon, a warlike woman*.
 amicitia, ae, f., *friendship*.
 amicus, a, um, adj., *friendly*.
 amicus, i, m., *friend*.
 amittō, ere, misi, missus, *send away, dismiss, lose*.
 amnis, is, m., *river, stream*.
 amplius, indec., n. comp. of *amplus*, *more, further*; w. numerals, *more than*.
 amplus, a, um, adj., *large, wide, ample*.
 ancora, ae, f., *anchor*.
 angustus, a, um, adj., *narrow*.
 animal, ālis, n., *animal*.
 animus, i, m., *mind, courage, disposition*.
 annus, i, m., *year*.
 ante, prep. w. Acc., *before, in front of*.
 ante, adv., *before, previously*.
 antiquitus, adv., *in former times, anciently, long ago*.
 aper, pri, m., *wild boar*.
 apertus, a, um, adj., *open*.
 appellō, āre, āvi, ātus, *call, address, call by name*.
 appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātus, *come near, approach*.
 apud, prep. w. Acc., *among, with*.
 aqua, ae, f., *water*.
 Aquitāni, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aquitani, the people of Aquitania*.
 Aquitānia, ae, f., *Aquitania, a division of Gaul*.
 Arar, aris, m., *a river in Gaul, now the Saone*.
 arbitror, āri, ātus sum, *think, suppose, believe*.
 arbor, oris, f., *tree*.
 Arcadia, ae, f., *Arcadia, a mountainous province in Greece*.
 arcessō, ere, ivi, itus, *send for, summon*.
 Ariovistus, i, m., *Ariovistus, the king of a German tribe*.
 arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.
 armāti, ōrum, m. pl., *armed men*.
 armiger, eri, m., *armor bearer*.
 armō, āre, āvi, ātus, *arm, equip*.
 ars, artis, f., *art, skill*.
 ascendō, ere, i, scēsus, *go up, mount up, climb*.
 ascēsus, ūs, m., *ascent*.
 asportō, āre, āvi, ātus, *carry away*.
 at, conj., *but, but indeed, yet, however*.
 Athēna, ae, f., *Athene*.
 Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens*.
 Atlās, antis, m., *Atlas, a fabled king of Mauretania*.
 atque, conj., *and, and so, and even*.
 attingō, ere, tigi, tāctus, *touch, reach*.
 auceps, cipis, m., *bird catcher*.
 auctor, ōris, m., *author*.
 auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority, influence, reputation*.
 audācia, ae, f., *boldness, daring, audacity, insolence*.
 audācius, comp. adv., *more boldly, too boldly*.
 audāx, ācis, adj., *bold, daring*.
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare*.
 audiō, ire, ivi, itus, *hear*.
 auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablātus, *carry off or away, lead away*.
 Augēas, ae, m., *Augeas*.
 aureus, a, um, adj., *of gold, golden*.
 aurum, i, n., *gold*.
 aut, conj., *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.

autem, post-posit. conj., *but, moreover, however.*

auxilium, i, n., *aid, help.*

avaritia, ae, f., *greed, avarice.*

avertō, ere, i, versus, *turn away, avert, turn; aversum hostem, the back of an enemy.*

avis, is, f., *bird.*

Axona, ae, m., a river in Gaul, now the Aisne.

B

barbarus, a, um, *foreign, strange, barbarous.*

barbarus, i, m., *foreigner, stranger, barbarian.*

Belgae, arum, m. pl., *the Belgae, a warlike people of N. Gaul.*

bellicōsus, a, um, adj., *warlike.*

bellō, āre, āvi, ātus, *wage or carry on war, war.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Bellovacī, a people in Gaul.*

bellum, i, n., *war.*

bēlua, ae, f., *beast, monster, animal.*

bene, adv., *well, successfully.*

benefactor, ōris, m., *benefactor.*

beneficium, i, n., *kindness, favor, benefit.*

benignē, adv., *kindly, courteously.*

Bibracte, is, n., *Bibracte, the chief town of the Aedui, now Autun.*

Bibrax, actis, f., *Bibrax, a town of the Remi, now Bièvre.*

Bibulus, i, m., a proper name. *M. Calpurnius Bibulus*, consul with Caesar.

biceps, cipitis, adj., *two-headed.*

biduum, i, n., *space of two days, two days.*

Bistonēs, um, m. pl., *the Bistones, a people of Thrace.*

bonus, a, um, adj., *good.*

bonum, i, n., *a good thing.*

bōs, bovis, m. and f., *ox, bull, cow.*

brevis, e, adj., *short, brief.*

C

C., abbreviation for Gāius.

c., abbreviation for centum, *one hundred.*

caelum, i, n., *sky, heaven.*

Caesar, aris, m., *C. Julius Caesar* [100-44 B.C.].

calamitās, ātis, f., *disaster, calamity.*

calcar, āris, n., *spur.*

cālō, ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp follower.*

calor, ōris, m., *heat.*

campus, i, m., *plain, field.*

canis, is, m. and f., *dog.*

caplō, ere, cēpi, captus, *take, seize, capture, choose, form.*

capra, ae, f., *she-goat.*

captivus, i, m., *captive, prisoner.*

captus, a, um, adj., *taken, charmed.*

caput, itis, n., *head.*

carcer, eris, m., *prison, jail.*

cārē, adv., *dearly.*

carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*

carpō, ere, si, tus, *pick, pluck, gather.*

carrus, i, m., *two-wheeled wagon.*

cārus, a, um, adj., *dear, precious.*

castellum, i, n., *fort, stronghold, fortress, redoubt.*

Casticus, i, m., *Casticus.*

castra, ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, accident, event, misfortune.*

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Catilina, ae, m., *Catiline, a conspirator against Rome.*

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason; causā, for the sake of, w. Gen.; in this sense it follows the word which it governs.*

celeritās, ātis, f., *swiftness, quickness, speed.*

celeriter, adv., *quickly; celerrimē, superl. deg., very quickly; quam celerrimē, as quickly as possible.*

cēlō, āre, āvi, ātus, *conceal.*

Celtae, arum, m. pl., *the Celts, a people of Gaul.*

centum, indec. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, ōnis, m., *captain, centurion.*

Cerberus, i, m., *Cerberus, a three-headed monster.*

certē, adv., *certainly, surely, of course.*

certior factus, *having been informed.*

certus, a, um, adj., *certain, sure.*

cervus, i, m., *stag, deer.*

circiter, adv., *about, near.*

- circum, prep. w. Acc., *around, about, near.*
 circumeō, ire, ivi or ii, itus, *go around, surround.*
 circumvenīō, ire, venī, ventus, *come around, surround.*
 cis, citrā, prep. w. Acc., *on this side of.*
 citerior, ius, comp. adj., *hither.*
 civis, is, m. and f., *citizen.*
 civitās, ātis, f., *state.*
 clam, adv., *secretly.*
 clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, clamor.*
 clārus, a, um, adj., *clear, famous, celebrated.*
 clāssis, is, f., *fleet.*
 claudō, ere, clausi, clausus, *close, shut, shut up.*
 claudō āgmen, *bring up the rear.*
 clāva, ae, f., *club.*
 coepī, isse, def. verb. *begin.*
 cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn, find out, know, understand.*
 cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus, *drive together, collect, compel.*
 cohors, ortis, f., *company of soldiers, cohort.*
 cohortor, āri, ātus sum, *exhort, encourage.*
 collis, is, m., *hill.*
 columba, ae, f., *dove, pigeon.*
 columna, ae, f., *column, pillar.*
 commēātus, ūs, m., *a going to and fro, provisions.*
 commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call to mind, relate.*
 committō, ere, misi, missus, *commit, begin, join, wage.*
 commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, excite, alarm, disturb.*
 commūniō, ire, ivi, itus, *fortify on all sides, fortify.*
 comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *get together, prepare, arrange.*
 compellō, ere, puli, pulsus, *drive together, drive, move.*
 compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *fill completely, fill.*
 componō, ere, posui, positus, *place together, arrange, compare.*
 cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt, trial, undertaking.*
 concēdō, ere, cessi, cessus, *retire, withdraw, yield, concede.*
 concidō, ere, cidi, cisus, *cut to pieces, kill, destroy.*
 concilium, i, n., *council.*
 conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *shout aloud, cry out, shout.*
 concordia, ae, f., *concord, harmony.*
 condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, agreement, terms.*
 conditor, ōris, m., *founder.*
 condō, ere, didi, ditus, *put together, found, establish, hide.*
 condūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead together, hire.*
 cōnferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, *bring together.*
 cōnfertus, a, um, adj., *crowded; cōnfertissimō āgmine, in a densely compact body, in a solid mass.*
 cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *complete, accomplish, finish.*
 cōnfidō, ere, fisus sum, *rely upon, trust, w. Dat.*
 cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *confirm, establish, strengthen.*
 cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *flee for refuge.*
 coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *hurl, throw together.*
 coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join together, unite.*
 coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
 coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *swear together, conspire.*
 conligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *collect.*
 conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arrange, place, set, station.*
 conloquium, i, n., *dialogue, conference, colloquium.*
 conloquor, quī, cūtus sum, *talk together, converse.*
 cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *try, attempt.*
 cōnsanguineus, i, m., *kinsman.*
 cōnscribō, ēre, scripsi, scriptus, *enroll, enlist.*
 cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., *consent.*
 cōnsentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēsus, *agree, conspire.*
 cōnsequor, quī, cūtus sum, *pursue, overtake.*

cōserō, ere, uī, tus, *join*; cōserere manūs, *join battle*.
 cōservō, āre, āvi, ātus, *preserve, save*.
 cōsidō, ere, sedī, sessus, *settle, encamp*.
 cōsillium, ī, n., *counsel, plan*.
 cōspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view*.
 cōspicor, āri, ātus sum, *see, perceive*.
 cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *station, agree upon, decide, appoint*.
 cōsuēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus, *become accustomed, be accustomed*.
 cōsuētūdō, inis, f., *custom*.
 cōsul, is, m., *consul*, one of the two highest Roman magistrates, chosen annually.
 cōsumō, ere, sūpsi, sūptus, *use up, consume, destroy*.
 contemnō, ere, tempši, temptus, *despise, condemn*.
 contendō, ere, tendi, tentus, *strive, contend, hasten*.
 contentiō, ōnis, f., *contention, exertion*.
 contentus, a, um, adj., *contented, content, satisfied*.
 continenter, adv., *continuously*.
 contineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold in, restrain, contain, check*.
 continuus, a, um, adj., *continuous*.
 contrā, prep. w. Acc., *against*.
 contrahō, ere, trāxi, trāctus, *draw together, collect, produce*.
 contumēlia, ae, f., *abuse, reproach*.
 conveniō, ire, vēni, ventus, *come together, assemble*.
 convertō, ere, ī, versus, *turn about, change*.
 convocō, āre, āvi, ātus, *call together, summon*.
 cōpia, ae, f., *supply, abundance*; pl., *troops, supplies*.
 cōpiae domesticae, f. pl., *supplies from home*.
 cor, cordis, n., *heart*.
 cōram, prep. w. Abl., *in the presence of*.
 cornū, ūs, n., *horn, wing*.
 corpus, oris, n., *body*.
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus, *seize, take hold of, snatch*.
 corrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus, *destroy, ruin*.

cottidiānus, a, um, adj., *daily*.
 cottidiē, adv., *daily, each day*.
 crās, adv., *to-morrow*.
 Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus*.
 Crastinus, ī, m., *C. Crastinus*.
 crēber, bra, brum, adj., *frequent, numerous*.
 crēdō, ere, didi, ditus, *believe*.
 creō, āre, āvi, ātus, *make, elect*.
 Crēta, ae, f., *Crete*, an island in the Mediterranean Sea.
 Crēticus, a, um, adj., *Cretan, of Crete*.
 crudēlis, e, adj., *cruel*.
 crux, crucis, f., *cross*; tollere in crucem, *crucify*.
 culpa, ae, f., *fault, blame*.
 culpō, āre, āvi, ātus, *blame, censure*.
 cum, prep. w. Abl., *with, along with, in company with*.
 cum, conj., *when, since, although, after, while*.
 cupiditās, ātis, f., *desire, greed*.
 cupidus, a, um, adj., *desirous of*.
 cupiō, ere, ivi, itus, *desire, wish*.
 cūr, adv., *why*.
 cūra, ae, f., *care, anxiety*.
 Curēs, ium, m. and f. pl., *Cures*, ancient town of the Sabines.
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursus, *run, hasten*.
 currus, ūs, m., *chariot, car*.
 cūstōdiō, ire, ivi, itus, *watch, guard*.
 cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., *guard, attendant*.
 cymba, ae, f., *boat, skiff*.

D

dē, prep. w. Abl., *down, down from, concerning, about, of*.
 dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, *owe, ought*.
 decem, indec. num., *ten*.
 dēcernō, ere, crēvi, crētus, *decide, decree*.
 dēcerpō, ere, sī, tus, *tear off, gather, destroy*.
 decimus, a, um, ord. num., *tenth*.
 decumānus, a, um, adj., *decuman, rear*.
 dēcurrō, ere, cucurri, —, *run down*.
 dēditō, ōnis, f., *surrender*.
 dēdō, ere, didi, ditus, *give up, surrender*.

- dēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead down or away, withdraw.*
 dēfatigō, āre, āvi, ātus, *wear out, exhaust.*
 dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus, *defend.*
 dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear down, report.*
 dēfessus, a, um, adj., *wearied.*
 dēiciō, ere, īcī, iectus, *hurl or throw down.*
 deinde, adv., *afterwards, then.*
 dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātus, *amuse.*
 dēleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, *lay low, destroy, annihilate.*
 dēligō, āre, āvi, ātus, *bind fast.*
 dēlectō, ere, lēgi, lēctus, *choose, select.*
 Dēlos, ī, f., *Delos, an island in the Aegean Sea.*
 dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *point out, show, prove, indicate.*
 dēmum, adv., *at last, finally.*
 dēnique, adv., *at last.*
 dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*
 dēnsus, a, um, adj., *thick, dense.*
 dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *lay aside, give up.*
 dēportō, āre, āvi, ātus, *bear off, bring home.*
 dērideō, ēre, risī, risus, *laugh at, deride.*
 dēscendō, ere, ī, scēsus, *come down, descend.*
 dēsiderō, āre, āvi, ātus, *long for, miss.*
 dēsīnō, ere, sīi, —, *cease, leave off.*
 dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitutus, *cease, desist from.*
 dēspērō, āre, āvi, ātus, *despair of.*
 dēsūm, esse, fui, futūrus, w. Dat., *fail, be lacking to, desert.*
 dēterior, ius, comp. adj., *worse.*
 deus, ī, m., *god.*
 dēvincō, ere, vicī, victus, *overcome, subdue.*
 dexter, tra, trum, adj., *right.*
 Diāna, ae, f., *Diana, a goddess.*
 dicō, ere, dixī, dictus, *say, speak, relate, appoint, tell.*
 dictum, ī, n., *saying, word.*
 diēs, ēī, m. or f., *day.*
 difficilis, e, adj., *difficult.*
 dignus, a, um, adj. w. the Abl., *worthy, deserving.*
 diligenter, adv., *carefully, diligently, promptly.*
 dimittō, ere, misi, missus, *send apart, dismiss, release.*
 Diomēdēs, is, m., *Diomedes, king of the Bistones in Thrace.*
 discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *go away, depart, leave.*
 discidium, ī, n., *discord, quarrel.*
 discipulus, ī, m., *pupil.*
 dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *dispose, arrange, station.*
 dissimilis, e, adj., *unlike, dissimilar.*
 distineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold apart, keep asunder, separate.*
 diū, adv., *for a long time, long.*
 diūtius, comp. adv., *any longer.*
 diversus, a, um, adj., *different, diverse, opposite.*
 Divicō, ōnis, m., *Divico, a general of the Helvetians.*
 dividō, ere, visi, visus, *separate, divide.*
 divisus, a, um, part., *divided, separated.*
 Divitiācus, ī, m., *Divitiacus.*
 divitiae, ārum, f. pl., *wealth, riches.*
 dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give, permit, yield, grant, offer.*
 doceō, ēre, uī, tus, *teach, show; doctus litteris, learned.*
 doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *feel pain, suffer pain, grieve for.*
 dolus, ī, m., *guile, fraud, deceit.*
 domesticus, a, um, adj., *domestic; domesticae cōplae, supplies from home.*
 dominus, ī, m., *master, lord.*
 domus, ūs and ī, f., *house, home.*
 dormiō, ire, ivi or iī, itūrus, *sleep.*
 dubitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *hesitate, doubt.*
 ducentī, ae, a, card. num., *two hundred.*
 dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead, draw, consider, think, extend.*
 dulcis, e, adj., *sweet, pleasant.*
 dum, conj., *while, until.*
 Dumnorix, igis, m., *Dumnorix, an Aeduan.*
 duo, duae, duo, card. num., *two.*
 dux, ducis, m., *leader, commander.*

E

ē, **ex**, prep. w. Abl., *out of, from*.
ēdō, **ere**, **didī**, **ditus**, *put forth, make, cause*.
ēducō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *lead out*.
ego, **mei**, pers. pron., *I*.
ēgredior, **gredi**, **gressus sum**, *go out*.
ēgregiē, **adv.**, *excellently, exceedingly*.
ēgregius, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *excellent, remarkable, eminent*.
ēheu, interjection, *alas!*
ēiciō, **ere**, **iēcī**, **iectus**, *cast out, drive out, expel*.
Ēlis, **idis**, **f.**, *Elis*, a district of the Peloponnesus.
ēmittō, **ere**, **misī**, **missus**, *send out, let out, hurl*.
emō, **ere**, **ēmī**, **emptus**, *buy*.
ēnāscor, **i**, **nātus sum**, *spring forth, arise*.
enim, **conj.**, *post-posit., for*.
eō, **ire**, **ivī** or **ii**, **itus**, *go*.
epistula, **ae**, **f.**, *letter, epistle*.
equa, **ae**, **f.**, *mare*.
eques, **itis**, **m.**, *horseman*.
equester, **tris**, **tre**, **adj.**, *pertaining to a horseman, equestrian*.
equestres cōplae, **f. pl.**, *cavalry forces*.
equitātus, **ūs**, **m.**, *cavalry*.
equus, **i**, **m.**, *horse*.
ēripiō, **ere**, **ui**, **reptus**, *snatch away, take away*.
ērudītus, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *learned, well-informed, educated*.
ēruptiō, **ōnis**, **f.**, *breaking out, sally*.
Erymanthus, **i**, **m.**, *Erymanthus*, a chain of mountains in Arcadia; **Erymanthus**, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *Erymanthian*.
Erythia, **ae**, **f.**, *Erythia*, an island in the Bay of Cadiz.
et, **conj.**, *and*.
et . . . et, *both . . . and*.
etiam, **conj.**, *also, and also, even, and even*.
Eurystheus, **i**, **m.**, *Eurystheus*, a king of Mycenae.
Eurytiōn, **ōnis**, **m.**, *Eurytion*.
ēvādō, **ere**, **vāsi**, **vāsus**, *go forth, escape*.
ēventus, **ūs**, **m.**, *event, result, issue*.

ex, prep. w. Abl., *see ē*.
exeō, **ire**, **ivī** or **ii**, **itus**, *go out or forth, go away, depart*.
exerceō, **ere**, **ui**, **itus**, *train, exercise*.
exercitatio, **ōnis**, **f.**, *exercise, practice*.
exercitus, **ūs**, **m.**, *army*.
eximius, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *remarkable, illustrious*.
existimō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātus**, *think, believe, suppose*.
expeditus, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *unencumbered, free*.
expellō, **ere**, **pulī**, **pulsus**, *drive out, expel, banish*.
explōrator, **ōris**, **m.**, *scout*.
expūgnō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātus**, *take by assault, assault, storm*.
exsistō, **ere**, **stīti**, **stītus**, *stand forth, exist, appear*.
exspectō, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātus**, *await, expect, wait for*.
exstruō, **ere**, **strūxī**, **strūctus**, *pile up, construct, raise*.
exterreo, **ere**, **ui**, **itus**, *frighten, terrify*.
extrēmus, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *outermost, extreme, the end of*.

F

fābula, **ae**, **f.**, *fable, story*.
facile, **adv.**, *easily*.
facilis, **e**, **adj.**, *easy*.
faciō, **ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, *make, do, put, conclude, finish*.
facultās, **ātis**, **f.**, *supply, opportunity*.
fallō, **ere**, **fefellī**, **falsus**, *deceive, cheat*.
falsus, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *false, groundless*.
fās, **n.**, **indec.**, *right*.
fēlix, **icis**, **adj.**, *happy, fortunate*.
fera, **ae**, **f.**, *wild beast*.
ferāx, **ācis**, **adj.**, *fertile, productive*.
ferē, **adv.**, *nearly, almost*.
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *bear, endure, bring, carry*.
fertilitās, **ātis**, **f.**, *fertility*.
ferus, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *wild, fierce, barbarous, rough*.
fidēs, **ei**, **f.**, *faith, protection, care*.
fidō, **ere**, **fisus sum**, *trust, rely upon*.
fidus, **a**, **um**, **adj.**, *faithful*.
filia, **ae**, **f.**, *daughter*.

filiolus, i, m., *little son, child.*
 filius, i, m., *son.*
 finis, is, m., *end, limit; pl., territory, country.*
 finitimus, a, um, adj., *neighboring; as subst., finitimi, ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.*
 fiō, fieri, factus sum, *become, be made.*
 flāgitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *demand.*
 fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, *weep, cry.*
 flētus, ūs, m., *weeping, tears.*
 fluctus, ūs, m., *wave, billow.*
 flūmen, inis, n., *river, stream.*
 fōns, fontis, m., *fountain.*
 fōrma, ae, f., *form, shape, appearance.*
 formica, ae, f., *ant.*
 forte, adv., *by chance.*
 fortis, e, adj., *brave, powerful, courageous.*
 fortissimus, a, um, superl. of fortis, *very brave, bravest.*
 fortiter, adv., *bravely, courageously.*
 fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, luck, chance, fate.*
 fossa, ae, f., *trench, ditch, fosse.*
 frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
 frigus, oris, n., *cold.*
 frūgēs, um, t. pl., *fruits of the field, produce of the fields.*
 frūmentum, i, n., *grain; pl., standing grain.*
 fruor, i, fructus sum, w. Abl., *enjoy.*
 frūstrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*
 fuga, ae, t., *flight.*
 fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitus, *flee, run away.*
 funditor, ōris, m., *slinger.*
 fungor, i, fūctus sum, *perform.*
 furor, ōris, m., *fury, madness.*

G

Galba, ae, m., *Galba.*
 Galli, ōrum, m. pl., *the Gauls.*
 Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
 Gallicus, a, um, adj., *of the Gauls, Gallic.*
 gallina, ae, f., *hen.*
 gaudeō, ēre, gāvius sum, *rejoice, take pleasure.*
 gelus, ūs, m., *cold, frost.*
 gener, eri, m., *son-in-law.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, nation.*
 genus, eris, n., *kind, class, race.*
 Germāni, ōrum, m. pl., *the Germans.*
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus, *wage, carry on, conduct, manage.*
 Gēryōn, ōnis, m., *Geryon, a mythical king in Spain.*
 gigās, antis, m., *giant.*
 gladius, i, m., *sword.*
 glōria, ae, f., *glory, fame.*
 gracilis, e, adj., *graceful.*
 Graecus, a, um, adj., *Greek.*
 grātia, ae, f., *favor, influence, kindness, obligation; grātiās tibi agō, I thank you.*
 grātulor, āri, ātus sum, *congratulate, rejoice with.*
 gravis, e, adj., *heavy, weighty, dignified, serious.*
 graviter, adv., *heavily, seriously, gravely.*
 grex, gregis, m., *stock, herd.*

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *have, hold, deliver, utter, consider.*
 habitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *dwelt, abide, remain, inhabit.*
 haedus, i, m., *kid.*
 Harūdēs, um, m. pl., *the Harudes.*
 harundō, inis, f., *reed, limed twigs.*
 hasta, ae, f., *spear, lance.*
 Hēlios, i, m., *Helios, the sun.*
 Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii, a people of Gaul.*
 herbidus, a, um, adj., *grassy.*
 Herculēs, is, m., *Hercules.*
 Herculaeae Columnae, f. pl., *the Pillars of Hercules.*
 Herma, ae, m., *Hermes, the messenger god.*
 Hesperidēs, um, f. pl., *the Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus.*
 hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
 hic, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this, he, the latter.*
 hic, adv., *here.*
 hiemō, āre, āvi, ātus, *winter, spend or pass the winter.*
 hīems, mis, f., *winter, winter time.*

hinc, adv., *hence, thereupon*.

Hippolytē, ēs, f., *Hippolyte*, an Amazon.

Hispania, ae, f., *Spain*.

historia, ae, f., *narrative, history*.

hodiē, adv., *to-day*.

homō, inis, m. and f., *man, human being*.

honor, ōris, m., *honor*.

hōra, ae, f., *hour*.

hortus, i, m., *garden*.

hospes, itis, m., *stranger, host, guest, guest friend*.

hospitium, i, n., *hospitality*.

hostis, is, m. and f., *stranger, enemy*.

hūc, adv., *hither*.

humilia, e, adj., *humble*.

hydra, ae, f., *the Hydra, the water serpent*.

iaciō, ere, iēcī, *iactus*, *throw, cast, hurl*.

iam, adv., *now, already, long since*.

ibi, adv., *there*.

lccius, i, m., *lccius*.

idem, eadem, *idem*, dem. pron., *the same*.

identidem, adv., *again and again, repeatedly*.

idōneus, a, um, adj., *suitable, adapted, convenient*.

igitur, adv., *therefore*.

ignis, is, m., *fire*.

ignōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, *pardon, forgive*, w. Dat.

ille, a, ud, dem. pron., *that, he, that well known, the former*.

imber, bris, m., *shower, rain*.

immortalis, e, adj., *immortal*.

impedimentum, i, n., *hindrance, impediment*; pl., *baggage*.

impediō, ire, ivī, itus, *impede, hinder, check, entangle*.

imperātor, ōris, m., *commander*.

imperātum, i, n., *command, order*.

imperium, i, n., *command, power, dominion*.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *command, order*.

impetus, ūs, m., *attack, charge, assault, force*.

implicō, āre, āvī, or uī, ātus or itus, *entangle, entwine, enfold*.

implorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *invoke, beseech, implore*.

impōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place upon, put upon, impose*.

improbus, a, um, adj., *wicked, shameless, base*.

in, prep. w. Acc. and Abl.: w. Acc., *into, upon, among*; w. Abl., *in, on, over*.

inānis, e, adj., *empty, vain, useless*.

incalēscō, ere, caluī, —, *grow warm*.

incendō, ere, cendi, cēnsus, *set on fire, kindle, burn*.

incidō, ere, cidi, cāsus, *happen, fall upon*.

incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, *begin*.

incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *urge on, incite, arouse*.

incola, ae, m., *inhabitant*.

incolō, ere, uī, —, *dwelt, inhabit*.

incolumis, e, adj., *uninjured, safe, unharmed*.

incrēdibilis, e, adj., *incredible*.

incursiō, ōnis, f., *attack, invasion, hostile inroad*.

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *accuse, blame, find fault with*.

inde, adv., *thence, then*.

indignitās, ātis, f., *indignity, insulting treatment*.

indignus, a, um, adj., *unworthy*.

indolēs, is, f., *character, disposition*.

ineō, ire, ivi or ii, itus, *go in or into, enter*.

inermis, e, adj., *unarmed, defenseless*.

inferior, ius, comp. adj., *lower*.

inferō, ferre, tuli, inlātus, *bring upon, inflict, attack*.

infimus, a, um, superl. adj., *lowest*.

influo, ere, fluxi, fluxus, *flow into*.

ingēns, entis, adj., *huge, vast*.

inhio, āre, āvī, ātus, *gape at, gaze at eagerly, long for*.

iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *hurl or throw into, inspire*.

inimicus, a, um, adj., *unfriendly, hostile*; as subst., *personal foe*.

iniquus, a, um, adj., *unjust, unfavorable*.

initium, i, n., *beginning*; *initium faciō*, *begin*.

iniūria, ae, f., *injury, wrong, injustice*.

innāscor, i, nātus sum, *grow, spring up*.

inopia, ae, f., *want, lack, scarcity.*
 inquam, def. verb, *I say; inquit, he says, says he.*
 insequor, i, cūsus sum, *follow after, pursue.*
 insidiae, ārum, f. pl., *snare, ambush, ambuscade.*
 insolenter, adv., *unusually, haughtily, insolently.*
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *draw up, form, arrange.*
 insula, ae, f., *island.*
 integer, gra, grum, adj., *whole; integris viribus, with fresh strength.*
 intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *know, understand, perceive.*
 inter, prep. w. Acc., *among, between; inter se, to one another.*
 intercōdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *come between, be between, intervene.*
 interclūdō, ere, clūxī, clūsus, *cut off, shut off, hinder, prevent.*
 interdiū, adv., *by day.*
 interea, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
 interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill, destroy.*
 interior, ius, comp. adj., *inner, interior of.*
 interneciō, ōnis, f., *destruction, extermination, annihilation.*
 interrogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask.*
 interscindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *cut or break down, destroy.*
 intervāllum, i, n., *interval, distance.*
 intimus, a, um, superl. adj., *inmost.*
 intrā, prep. w. Acc., *within, among.*
 intrōducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead within or into, introduce.*
 intus, adv., *within.*
 inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, *come upon, find, find out.*
 invidēō, ēre, vidī, visus, *envy, grudge.*
 invocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call upon, invoke.*
 ipse, a, um, intensive pron., *that or this very; self, himself, herself, very.*
 irācundus, a, um, adj., *irritable, passionate, angry.*
 irāscor, i, ātus sum, *be angry.*
 irātus, a, um, adj., *angered, enraged, furious.*

is, ea, id, dem. pron., *that or this person, he, she, it.*
 iste, a, ud, dem. pron., *this or that person; he, she, it, referring especially to that which is near, or to the person addressed.*
 ita, adv., *thus, so; yes, it is so, true.*
 Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*
 itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
 item, adv., *likewise, again, also.*
 iter, itineris, n., *journey, road, right of way, march; ex itinere, on the march; iter facere, march.*
 iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*
 iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, bid, command.*
 iūcundus, a, um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, entertaining.*
 iūdex, icis, m., *judge.*
 iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *judge.*
 iugum, i, n., *yoke.*
 iumentum, i, n., *beast of burden, draught animal.*
 iūnior, ius, comp. adj., *younger.*
 Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, the chief god among the Romans.*
 Iūra, ae, m., *Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone.*
 iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice, law.*
 iūstitia, ae, f., *justice.*
 iūstus, a, um, adj., *just, right, fair, equitable.*
 iuvenis, is, m., *young man.*
 iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, *assist, help, aid.*

L

L, abbreviation for Lūcius.
 Lābiēnus, i, m., *Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
 labor, ōris, m., *labor, work.*
 lacescō, ere, ixi or ii, itus, *excite, attack, harass, irritate.*
 lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
 laetus, a, um, adj., *joyful, glad.*
 laniō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tear or rend in pieces, mangle.*
 lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
 laqueus, i, m., *noose, snare, trap.*

lātitudō, inis, f., *width, breadth*.
 lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad*.
 latus, eris, n., *side, flank*.
 laudō, āre, āvi, ātus, *praise*.
 laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory*.
 lavō, āre, lavi, lautus or lōtus, *wash, bathe*; pass., *bathe*.
 lēgatiō, ōnis, f., *embassy, legation*.
 lēgātus, i, m., *lieutenant, ambassador*.
 legiō, ōnis, f., *legion, consisting of ten cohorts, from 4000 to 6000 men*.
 legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus, *gather, collect, read*.
 lēnis, e, adj., *smooth*.
 lēniter, adv., *smoothly, gently*.
 leō, ōnis, m., *lion*.
 Lernaesus, a, um, adj., *Lernaeen, of Lerna*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
 libenter, adv., *gladly, willingly*.
 liber, bri, m., *book*.
 liber, era, erum, adj., *free*.
 liberalitās, ātis, f., *kindness, generosity, liberality*.
 liberi, ōrum, m. pl., *children (of free-born parents)*.
 liberō, āre, āvi, ātus, *free, deliver, liberate*.
 libet, libuit, libitum est, *impers. verb, it pleases; si tibi libet, if you please*.
 Libya, ae, f., *Libya, Africa*.
 Lingonēs, um, m. pl., *the Lingones*.
 lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language*.
 linter, tris, f., *boat*.
 Liscus, i, m., *Liscus*.
 littera, ae, f., *letter of the alphabet; pl., letter, epistle*.
 locus, i, m., *place; in pl. neut., loca, ōrum*.
 longus, a, um, adj., *long*.
 loquor, i, cātus sum, *speak, plead, talk*.
 ludificō, āre, āvi, ātus, *make sport of, mock, delude*.
 ludō, ere, si, sus, *play, sport, make fun of, ridicule*.
 lupus, i, m., *wolf*.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light; lūce primā, at day-break*.

M

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus**.
magis, comp. adv., *more*.

magister, tri, m., *teacher, master*.
 magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate*.
 magnificē, adv., *nobly, magnificently*.
 magnitūdō, inis, f., *greatness, size, magnitude*.
 māgnus, a, um, adj., *great, large; māgnis itineribus, by forced marches*.
 maior, ius, comp. of māgnus, *greater, larger*.
 mājōrēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors*.
 male, adv., *badly, ill, wickedly*.
 maledicō, ere, dixi, dictus, *speak ill of, abuse, revile*.
 maleficium, i, n., *evil deed, injury, wrong*.
 mālō, mālle, mālui, —, *prefer, wish rather*.
 mālum, i, n., *apple*.
 malum, i, n., *evil thing, misfortune, calamity*.
 malus, a, um, adj., *evil, wicked, bad, injurious*.
 mandātum, i, n., *injunction, command, order*.
 mandō, āre, āvi, ātus, *order, command, commit, intrust*.
 manēō, ēre, mānsi, sus, *remain*.
 manipulus, i, m., *company, manipule*.
 mānsuēfaciō, ere, fēci, factus, *make tame, tame*.
 manus, ūs, f., *hand, band*.
 mare, is, n., *sea*.
 maritimus, a, um, adj., *pertaining to the sea, maritime*.
 Marius, i, m., *C. Marius, the uncle of Caesar*.
 massa, ae, f., *mass, lump*.
 māter, tris, f., *mother*.
 mātūrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *hasten, make haste*.
 mātūrus, a, um, adj., *ripe, fit, early*.
 mājimē, superl. adv., *especially*.
 mājimus, a, um, superl. adj., *greatest, largest, very large*.
 mediū, a, um, adj., *middle; mediō colle, on the middle of the hill*.
 melior, ius, comp. adj., *better*.
 memoria, ae, f., *memory*.
 mēns, mentis, f., *mind, soul*.
 mēnsis, is, m., *month*.
 mercātor, ōris, m., *merchant*.

mereor, ēri, itus sum, *deserve*.
 meus, a, um, poss. pron., *my, mine*.
 miles, itis, m., *soldier*.
 militāris, e, adj., *pertaining to a soldier, military*.
 mille, pl., milla, ium, n., *thousand, thousands*.
 minimē, superl. adv., *not at all, by no means, least*.
 minimē vērō, *certainly not*.
 minitor, āri, ātus sum, *threaten*.
 minor, us, comp. adj., *less, younger*.
 Minos, ōis, m., *Minos, a king of Crete*.
 mirābilis, e, adj., *wonderful*.
 miror, āri, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire*.
 mirus, a, um, adj., *wonderful, strange, remarkable*.
 miser, era, erum, adj., *wretched, unhappy*.
 miserescō, ere, —, —, *feel pity, have compassion for*.
 misericordia, ae, f., *pity, compassion*.
 mitis, e, adj., *mild, gentle, merciful*.
 mittō, ere, misi, missus, *send, dismiss*.
 modo, adv., *only*.
 modus, i, m., *manner, end, limit*.
 moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls, walls of a city*.
 moneō, ēre, ui, itus, *warn, advise*.
 mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.
 mora, ae, f., *delay*.
 mordeō, ēre, momordi, morsus, *bite, sting*.
 morior, mori (moriri), mortuus sum, *die*.
 moror, āri, ātus sum, *delay, remain, hinder*.
 mors, mortis, f., *death*.
 mortālis, e, adj., *subject to death, mortal*.
 mortuus, a, um, adj., *dead*.
 mōs, mōris, m., *custom, manner; pl., manners, character*.
 moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, *move, excite, disturb*.
 mox, adv., *soon*.
 mulier, eris, f., *woman*.
 multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude, great number*.
 multō, adv., *much*.
 multum, adv., *much*.
 multus, a, um, adj., *much; pl., many*.

mūnimentum, i, n., *defense, rampart, protection*.
 mūniō, ire, ivi, itus, *fortify, defend with a wall, defend*.
 mūnus, eris, n., *duty, present, work*.
 mūrus, i, m., *wall*.
 mūtō, āre, āvi, ātus, *change, alter*.

N

nam, conj., *for*.
 nanciscor, i, nactus or nactus sum, *get, obtain, find*.
 narrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tell, relate, narrate*.
 nascor, i, natus sum, *be born, arise, spring forth*.
 natiō, ōnis, f., *nation, race of people*.
 nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character, disposition*.
 nauta, ae, m., *sailor*.
 nāvicula, ae, f., *skiff, boat*.
 nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātus, *sail, set sail*.
 nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat*.
 nē, conj., *that not, that, lest; with a participle, for*.
 -ne, enclit., *used in asking questions*.
 nē . . . quidem, *not . . . even*.
 nec, conj., *see neque*.
 necesse, neut. adj., *necessary, unavoidable*.
 necessitās, ātis, f., *necessity*.
 necessitūdō, inis, f., *necessity, alliance, friendship*.
 negōtium, i, n., *business, occupation, trouble, difficulty*.
 Nemea, ae, f., *Nemea, a city in Argolis*.
 Nemeus, a, um, adj., *Nemean*.
 nēmō, Dat. nēmini, m. and f., *no one, nobody*.
 neque or nec, conj., *and not, nor*.
 neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.
 Nervii, ōrum, m. pl., *the Nervii, a warlike people of Gaul*.
 nesciō, scire, scivi or ii, scitus, *not to know, be ignorant*.
 neuter, tra, trum, adj., *neither*.
 nihil, indecl., *nothing*.
 nisi, conj., *unless, if not, except*.
 nix, nivis, f., *snow*.
 nobilitās, ātis, f., *nobility, nobles*.

noctū, adv., *by night*.
 nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, *be unwilling, not to wish*.
 nōmen, inis, n., *name*.
 nōn, adv., *not*.
 nōndum, adv., *not yet*.
 nōnne, adv., *not? expecting an affirmative answer*.
 nōnus, a, um, ord. num., *ninth*.
 nōs, nostrum, pers. pron., *we*.
 noster, tra, trum, adj., *our, ours*; nostrī, ōrum, m. pl., *our men*.
 novem, card. num., *nine*.
 Noviodūnum, i, n., *Noviodunum, a city in Gaul*.
 novus, a, um, adj., *new, young*.
 nox, noctis, f., *night*.
 nūdus, a, um, adj., *bare, stripped, deprived of*.
 nullus, a, um, adj., *none, no, not any*.
 num, adv., *in direct questions expects the answer no, in indirect it is translated whether*.
 numerus, i, m., *number*.
 nunc, adv., *now*.
 nunquam (numquam), adv., *never*.
 nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, *announce, report, declare*.
 nūntius, i, m., *messenger*.
 nūper, adv., *recently*.

0

ob, prep. w. Acc., *on account of*.
 obses, idis, m. and f., *hostage*.
 obsistō, ere, stiti, stitus, *stand in the way of, oppose, resist*, w. Dat.
 obtineō, ēre, ui, tentus, *hold, obtain, possess, occupy*.
 obviam, adv., *in the way*; after verbs of motion, *to meet*.
 obvius, a, um, adj., *in the way, to meet*.
 occāsus, ūs, m., *setting, falling*.
 occāsus sōlis, *sunset*.
 occidō, ere, cidi, cisus, *strike down, kill*.
 occupātus, a, um, adj., *busy*.
 occupō, āre, āvi, ātus, *seize, hold, occupy*.
 octāvus, a, um, ord. num., *eighth*.
 octō, card. num., *eight*.
 oculus, i, m., *eye*; ex oculis, *out of sight*.

odī, isse, def. verb. *hate*.
 offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus, *bring before, present, offer*.
 olim, adv., *formerly, once upon a time*.
 omninō, adv., *altogether, wholly, at all*.
 omnis, e, adj., *all, every*.
 onus, eris, n., *burden, weight*.
 oppidum, i, n., *town*.
 oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *storm, attack, assault, besiege*.
 optimus, a, um, superl. adj., *best*.
 opus, eris, n., *work, labor*.
 ōrātiō, ōnis, f., *speech, oration, harangue*.
 ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator, speaker*.
 ōrdō, inis, m., *rank, row, order, arrangement*.
 Orgetorix, igris, m., *Orgetorix, leader of the Helvetii*.
 orior, iri, ortus sum, *arise, rise*.
 ōrnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *adorn, equip, furnish*.
 ostendō, ere, i, tus, *show, display, exhibit*.
 ōtium, i, n., *leisure, vacant time*.
 ōvum, i, n., *egg*.

P

pābulum, i, n., *fodder, forage*.
 pācō, āre, āvi, ātus, *pacify, subdue*.
 paene, adv., *almost, nearly*.
 pāgus, i, m., *district, canton*.
 palūs, ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.
 pandō, ere, pandi, passus, *spread out, stretch, extend*.
 parātus, a, um, adj., *ready, prepared*.
 parcō, ere, peperci, parsus, *spare*, w. Dat.
 pārēō, ēre, ui, itus, *obey, submit to*, w. Dat.
 pariō, ere, peperci, paritus and partus, *bring forth, bear*; ōvum parere, *lay an egg*.
 parō, āre, āvi, ātus, *get ready, prepare, procure*.
 pars, partis, f., *part, direction*.
 parum, adv., *too little, not enough*.
 parvus, a, um, adj., *small, little*.
 pāscō, ere, pāvi, pāstus, *feed, graze*; pass., *feed*.
 passus, ūs, m., *pace, consisting of five Roman feet*.

passūs mille, *thousand paces*, a Roman mile.
 patefaciō, ere, fēci, factus, *make or lay open, open*.
 pater, tris, m., *father*.
 patior, i, passus sum, *allow, suffer, endure*.
 patria, ae, f., *native country, fatherland*.
 pauci, ae, a, pl. adj., *few*.
 paulatim, adv., *gradually*.
 pax, pācis, f., *peace*.
 pecūnia, ae, f., *money*.
 pecus, oris, n., *cattle, herd, flock*.
 pedes, itis, m., *foot soldier*.
 pedester, tris, tre, adj., *belonging to a foot soldier, pedestrian*.
 pedestrēs cōplae, *infantry forces*.
 Pedius, i, m., *Quintus Pedius*.
 pēior, ius, comp. adj., *worse*.
 pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus, *beat, strike, rout, drive*.
 penna, ae, f., *feather, wing*.
 per, prep. w. Acc., *through, by, during*.
 peragō, ere, ēgi, āctus, *finish, complete, accomplish*.
 percontātiō, ōnis, f., *questioning, inquiry*.
 perdō, ere, didi, ditus, *lose, destroy*.
 perducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead through, lead, prolong*.
 pereō, ire, ii, itūrus, *pass away, disappear, perish*.
 perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, *bring through, endure, bring to an end*.
 perficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, *accomplish, finish, complete*.
 periculum, i, n., *danger*.
 permittō, ere, misi, missus, *give up, intrust, permit*.
 permoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, *alarm, move thoroughly, excite*.
 perspicio, ere, spexi, spectus, *see through, perceive*.
 persuadēō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade*, w. Dat.
 perterreō, ēre, ui, itus, *terrify thoroughly, frighten*.
 pertineō, ēre, ui, tentus, *extend, pertain to, belong to*.
 perturbō, āre, āvi, ātus, *throw into confusion, disturb*.

pervenio, ire, vēni, ventus, *come to, arrive at, reach*.
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.
 pessimus, a, um, superl. adj., *worst*.
 petō, ere, ivi or ii, itus, *seek, beg, entreat, attack*.
 phalanx, angis, f., *phalanx, battalion*.
 pharetra, ae, f., *quiver*.
 Pharnacēs, is, m., *Pharnaces, a king of Pontus*.
 Pharsālus, i, f., *Pharsalus, a city in Thessaly, near which Caesar defeated Pompey*.
 pilum, i, n., *javelin*.
 pirāta, ae, m., *pirate*.
 placeō, ēre, ui, itus, *please; si tibi placet, if you please*.
 placō, āre, āvi, ātus, *appease, pacify, soothe*.
 plānitēs, ēi, f., *plain*.
 plēbs, ēbis, f., *the common people*.
 plērique, aeque, aque, adj. pl., *very many, most, the most*.
 plērumque, adv., *generally, for the most part*.
 plūrimus, a, um, superl. adj., *very many, most, very much*.
 plūs, plūris, adj. comp., *more*.
 Plutarchus, i, m., *Plutarch*.
 poēma, atis, n., *poem*.
 polliceor, ēri, itus sum, *promise*.
 pōnō, ere, posui, positus, *place, put, pitch, set, establish*.
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.
 pontifex, icis, m., *Roman high priest, chief priest, pontifex*.
 populor, āri, ātus sum, *lay waste, ravage, devastate*.
 populus, i, m., *people*.
 porta, ae, f., *gate, door*.
 portō, āre, āvi, ātus, *carry, bear*.
 pōscō, ere, popōsci, —, *demand*.
 Poseidōn, ōnis, m., *Poseidon, god of the sea*.
 possum, posse, potui, —, *be able, can*.
 post, prep. w. Acc., *after, behind*.
 postea, adv., *afterwards*.
 posterior, ius, comp. adj., *latter, later*.
 postquam, conj., *after*.
 postrēmus, a, um, superl. adj., *last*.

posttridī, adv., *on the day after*.
 postulātum, i, n., *demand, request*.
 postulō, āre, āvi, ātus, *demand, request*.
 potēns, entis, adj., *powerful*.
 potestās, ātis, f., *power, authority*.
 potior, iri, itus sum, *become master of, get control of*, w. Abl.
 potius, adv., *rather, more*.
 prae, prep. w. Abl., *in front of, before*.
 praebeō, ēre, ui, itus, *furnish, offer, show, present*.
 praiceps, ipitis, adj., *headlong*.
 praeceptor, ōris, m., *teacher, instructor*.
 praecīlārus, a, um, adj., *celebrated, famous*.
 praedicō, āre, āvi, ātus, *assert, declare*.
 praeficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, *place in command of*.
 praemittō, ere, misi, missus, *send forward or ahead*.
 praemium, i, n., *reward*.
 praepōnō, ere, posui, positus, *place before, prefer*.
 praesēns, entis, *present*; suō exercitū praesente, *in the presence of his own army*.
 praesidium, i, n., *defense, guard, garri-son*.
 praestō, āre, stiti, stitū, *stand out, be superior, excel*.
 praesum, esse, fui, —, *be at the head of, be over*, w. Dat.
 praeter, prep. w. Acc., *before, in front of, beyond*.
 praetereō, ire, ii, itus, *pass by*.
 prātum, i, n., *meadow*.
 primō, adv., *first, at first*.
 primum, adv., *first, at first*.
 primus, a, um, adj., *first*.
 princeps, ipis, m., *chief, leading man*.
 principātus, ūs, m., *chief place, leader-ship*.
 prior, ius, comp. adj., *former, previous*.
 pristinus, a, um, adj., *former*.
 priusquam, conj., *before*.
 privātus, a, um, adj., *private*.
 privō, āre, āvi, ātus, *deprive, rob*.
 prō, prep. w. Abl., *in front of, before, in behalf of, for, instead of*.

prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus, *go forward, advance, proceed*.
 Procillus, i, m., *Procillus*.
 prōdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead forth or forward, bring forward*.
 proelium, i, n., *battle*; proelium com-mittere, *to join or engage in battle*.
 profectiō, ōnis, f., *setting out, departure*.
 proficiascor, i, fectus sum, *set out, ad-vance, depart, march*.
 prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus, *restrain, hinder, prevent, keep from, prohibit*.
 prōiciō, ere, iēci, lectus, *throw down, throw, fling forward*.
 prōmittō, ere, misi, missus, *send forth or forward, promise*.
 prōmoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, *move forward, push forward, move*.
 prope, adv., *near, nearly*.
 properō, āre, āvi, ātus, *hasten*.
 propior, ius, comp. of prope, *nearer*.
 proprius, a, um, adj., *one's own, peculiar, personal*.
 propter, prep. w. Acc., *because of, on account of*.
 prōsum, prōdesse, fui, futūrus, *be of use, benefit, profit*.
 prōturbō, āre, āvi, ātus, *drive forth, re-pulse*.
 prōvincia, ae, f., *province*.
 prōvolō, āre, āvi, ātus, *fly forth, hasten forth, rush out*.
 proximē, superl. adv., *very near, most recently, last*.
 proximus, a, um, superl. adj., *very near, nearest, last*.
 prūdēns, entis, adj., *prudent*.
 prūdenter, adv., *prudently, wisely*.
 prūdētia, ae, f., *prudence, discretion*.
 puella, ae, f., *girl*.
 puer, eri, m., *boy*; pl., *children*.
 pūgna, ae, f., *battle, fight*.
 pūgnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *fight*; pūgnātum est, *they fought*.
 pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *beautiful*.
 pulchrē, adv., *beautifully*.
 pulvinus, i, m., *cushion, pillow*.
 punctus, ūs, m., *prick, sting*.
 putō, āre, āvi, ātus, *think, suppose, reckon, consider*.

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quintus**.
quā dē causā, prep. phr., *for which reason, wherefore, why*.
quaerō, ere, **quaesivi** or **ii**, **itus**, ask, seek, inquire.
quaestor, ōris, m., *quaestor, treasurer*.
quam, adv., *how, as much as, as, than*.
quam minimum, *as small as possible*.
quamquam, conj., *although, and yet*.
quandō, adv., *at what time, when*.
quantus, a, um, adj., *how great*.
quārō, adv., *by what means, wherefore, why*.
quārtus, a, um, ord. num., *fourth*.
quattuor, card. num., *four*.
-que, a particle affixed to the word it annexes, *and*.
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that*.
quia, conj., *because*.
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whichever, whatever*.
quid, inter., *why, how*.
quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain, certain one, some*.
quidem, adv., *indeed, even*.
quin, conj., *that not, but that, lest; with a participle, from*.
quindecim, card. num., *fifteen*.
quingenti, ae, a, card. num., *five hundred*.
quinquāgintā, card. num., *fifty*.
quinque, card. num., *five*.
quintus, a, um, ord. num., *fifth*.
quis, quae, quid, inter. pron., *who? which? what?* as indef. pron. after **si**, **nē**, num., *any one, anything*.
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, indef. pron., *any one, anybody, anything*.
quisque, quaeque, quodque or quidque, indef. pron., *each, every, each one, everybody, everything*.
quō, adv., *whither, where*.
quod, conj., *because*.
quō modo, adv., *in what manner, how*.
quondam, adv., *once, at one time, formerly*.
quoque, adv., *also, too* (placed after the emphatic word).

R

ratio, ōnis, f., *reason, method, plan, manner*.
recēdō, ere, cessi, cessus, *go back, withdraw, retire, recede*.
recēns, entis, adj., *fresh, recent*.
reciperō, āre, āvi, ātus, *regain, recover*.
recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, *take back, recover; sē recipere, belake themselves, retire, retreat*.
recitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *read out or aloud, recite*.
recūsō, āre, āvi, ātus, *refuse, decline*.
reddō, ere, didi, ditus, *give back, return, restore, surrender*.
redēptiō, ōnis, f., *release, ransoming*.
redeō, īre, īvi or **ii**, **itus**, *go back, return*.
redigō, ere, ēgi, āctus, *lead back, render, reduce*.
redimō, ere, ēmi, ēmptus, *buy off, release, ransom*.
redūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead back*.
referō, ferre, rettuli, relātus, *bear or bring back, report, announce*.
refringō, ere, frēgi, frāctus, *break open, break in pieces*.
rēgina, ae, f., *queen*.
rēgnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *rule, be king*.
rēgnum, i, n., *royal power, throne*.
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus, *rule, guide, direct, govern*.
relanguēscō, ere, languī, —, *grow languid or faint, become weary*.
relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus, *leave; pass, remain*.
reliqus, a, um, adj., *remaining; reliqui, ōrum, m. pl., the rest*.
rēmex, igis, m., *rower, oarsman*.
Rēmi, ōrum, m. pl., *the Remi, a people of Gaul*.
Remus, i, m., *Remus, brother of Romulus*.
rēmus, i, m., *oar*.
renovō, āre, āvi, ātus, *renew*.
repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus, *drive back, repulse*.
repentinus, a, um, adj., *sudden*.
reperiō, īre, repperi, repertus, *find out, find, discover, ascertain*.

repōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *gather up, lay aside, store up.*

reprehendō, ere, ī, hōnsus, *blame, censure, find fault with.*

rēs, rei, f., *thing, matter, affair, fact, event, circumstance.*

rēs frumentāria, f., *grain supplies; rēs militāris, f., military affairs.*

resistō, ere, stitī, —, *resist, oppose.*

respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *reply, respond, answer.*

respōnsū, ī, n., *reply, response.*

restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore, rebuild, give back.*

rēto, is, n., *net.*

retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold back, restrain, retain.*

revellō ere, ī, vulsus, *pluck or tear away, pull out or away.*

revertō, ere, ī, versus, *turn back, come back, return.*

revertor, ī, versus sum, *turn back, return.*

revocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine, the dividing river between Gaul and Germany.*

Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

rigēō, ēre, uī, —, *become stiff, be stiff or numb.*

ripa, ae, f., *bank, river bank.*

rixa, ae, f., *quarrel, dispute, strife.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask, question.*

Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman.*

Rōmulus, ī, m., *Romulus, founder of Rome.*

rōstrum, ī, n., *beak.*

rūmor, ōris, m., *rumor, report.*

rūpēs, is, f., *rock, cliff.*

rūrsus, adv., *again.*

rūs, rūris, n., *country (opposed to the city).*

S

Sabis, is, m., *the Sambre, a river in Gaul.*

sacer, cra, crum, adj., *sacred.*

sacrificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sacrifice.*

saepe, adv., *often.*

saepe, is, f., *hedge.*

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, ī, m., *archer, Bowman.*

salūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*

sānē, adv., *by all means, truly, of course, certainly.*

sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*

sapiēns, entis, adj., *wise.*

sarcina, ae, f., *bundle; pk, personal baggage.*

satis, adj. and adv., *enough, sufficiently.*

saxum, ī, n., *rock.*

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, skill, science.*

scilicet, adv., *of course, certainly.*

sciō, ire, ivī, itus, *know, understand.*

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, *write.*

scriptor, ōris, m., *writer, author.*

scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*

sē, see sui.

sectiō, ōnis, f., *booty, spoils.*

secundum, prep. w. Acc., *down, along.*

secundus, a, um, adj., *second, favorable.*

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdecim, card. num., *sixteen.*

sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode, dwelling place.*

semper, adv., *always.*

senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

senex, senis, adj., *old, aged; subst., old man.*

senior, ius, comp. adj., *older.*

sentiō ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know.*

septimus, a, um, ord. num., *seventh.*

Sēquani, ōrum, m. pl., *the Sequani.*

sequor, ī, cūtus sum, *follow, pursue.*

serpens, entis, f. or m., *serpent, snake.*

servitūs, ūtis, f., *slavery, servitude.*

servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *keep, preserve, save.*

sēscentī, ae, a, card. num., *six hundred.*

sēx, card. num., *six.*

sēxāgintā, card. num., *sixty.*

sī, conj., *if.*

sic, adv., *thus, so.*

signifer, erī, m., *standard bearer.*

significātiō, ōnis, f., *sign, warning, signal.*

signum, ī, n., *standard.*

silva, ae, f., *wood, woods, forest.*

similis, e, adj., *like, similar.*

simul ac, conj., *as soon as.*

simulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *prelend.*

sine, prep. w. Abl., *without.*

singulāris, e, adj., *singular, extraordinary, remarkable.*
 singuli, ae, a, num. distributive adj., *single, separate.*
 sinister, tra, trum, adj., *left.*
 sistrum, i, n., *metallic rattle.*
 sitiō, ire, ivi, or ii, —, *thirst, be thirsty.*
 situs, ūs, m., *situation, location.*
 socer, eri, m., *father-in-law.*
 socius, i, m., *ally.*
 sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
 soleō, ēre, itus sum, *be wont, be accustomed, use.*
 sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only.*
 solvō, ere, i, lūtus, *release, pay.*
 soror, ōris, f., *sister.*
 spatium, i, n., *space, distance, time.*
 speciēs, ēi, f., *appearance, sight.*
 spectō, āre, āvi, ātus, *look, face, be situated, lie.*
 speculātor, ōris, m., *spy.*
 spēs, spei, f., *hope.*
 spīritus, ūs, m., *spirit, pride, insolence.*
 sponte, Abl., *of one's accord, voluntarily.*
 stabulum, i, n., *stall, stable.*
 statim, adv., *suddenly, immediately, at once.*
 statuō, ere, ui, ūtus, *set up, set, establish, decide, determine.*
 sterilis, e, adj., *unfruitful, barren.*
 stipendiārius, a, um, adj., *tributary;*
 pl. subst., *stipendiārii, ōrum, tributaries.*
 stō, āre, eteti, status, *stand.*
 strāgēs, is, f., *overthrow, confusion, slaughter.*
 strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, roar.*
 studeō, ēre, ui, —, *desire, pay attention to, w. Dat.*
 studium, i, n., *desire, zeal.*
 Stympthālius, a, um, adj., *Stymphalian.*
 Stympthālus, i, m., *Stymphalus, a district in Arcadia.*
 sub, prep. w. Acc. and Abl., *under; sub monte, at the foot of the mountain.*
 subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
 subitus, a, um, adj., *sudden.*
 sublevō, āre, āvi, ātus, *lift up.*
 submergō, ere, mersi, mersus, *drown, sink, submerge, overwhelm.*

subsidium, i, n., *help, assistance, relief.*
 sublellō, ire, ui, —, *leap up.*
 Suessionēs, um, m. pl., *the Suessiones.*
 sui, sibi, sē, sē, reflex. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves; inter sē, to one another.*
 sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *be.*
 summa, ae, f., *leadership.*
 summus, a, um, superl. adj., *highest, top of, greatest, utmost.*
 super, prep. w. Acc. and Abl., *over, above, upon, on the top of.*
 superbus, a, um, adj., *haughty, proud.*
 superior, ius, comp. adj., *former, higher, upper.*
 superō, āre, āvi, ātus, *overcome, conquer, surpass, pass over, ascend.*
 supersedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus, *refrain from, postpone, w. Abl.*
 supersum, esse, fui, futūrus, *be over, remain, survive.*
 suppetō, ere, ivi or ii, itūrus, *be at hand.*
 supplex, icis, m. and f., *suppliant.*
 supplicātiō, ōnis, f., *supplication, prayer, entreaty, thanksgiving.*
 suprēmus, a, um, *see summus.*
 suspicor, āri, ātus sum, *suspect.*
 sustineō, ēre, ui, tentus, *sustain, endure, hold out.*
 suus, a, um, poss. pron., *his, hers, its, her, their, theirs, his own, etc.*

T

T., abbreviation for Titus.
 talentum, i, n., *talent, about \$1200.*
 tālis, e, adj., *such a.*
 tam, adv., *so.*
 tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless.*
 tandem, adv., *at last, at length, finally.*
 tantulus, a, um, adj., *so small, so little.*
 tantus, a, um, adj., *so great.*
 Tarquinius, i, m., *Tarquin, the last king of Rome.*
 Tartara, ōrum, n. pl., *Tartarus, the lower world.*
 tēctum, i, n., *roof, house.*
 tēlum, i, n., *missile, dart, weapon.*

tempestās, ātis, f., *storm, tempest, weather.*

templum, i, n., *temple.*

tempus, oris, n., *time.*

teneō, ēre, ui, tus, *hold, keep, possess.*

tener, era, erum, adj., *tender, young.*

terra, ae, f., *land.*

terreō, ēre, ui, itus, *terrify, frighten.*

tertius, a, um, ord. num., *third.*

testis, is, m. and f., *witness.*

testūdō, inis, f., *shed, shelter, tortoise-shaped covering.*

Tiberis, is, m., *the river Tiber.*

Tigurinus, i, m., *Tigurinus, a district in Helvetia.*

timeō, ēre, ui, —, *fear, be afraid of.*

timidus, a, um, adj., *timid, fearful.*

timor, ōris, m., *fear.*

tingō, ere, nxi, nctus, *wet, bathe, dye.*

Tiryns, ynthis or ynthos, f., *Tiryns, an ancient town of Argolis.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, remove, break off; in crucem tollere, crucify.*

tormentum, i, n., *an engine for hurling missiles.*

tot, indec. adj., *so many.*

tōtus, a, um, adj., *whole, entire.*

trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *give up, surrender.*

trādūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *lead across.*

trahō, ere, trāxi, trāctus, *draw, drag.*

trāns, prep. w. Acc., *across, over, beyond.*

trānseō, ire, ivi or ii, itus, *go across, cross.*

trānsgredior, i, gressus sum, *go over, cross.*

trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātus, *carry across or over, transport.*

trēs, tria, card. num., *three.*

Trēveri, ōrum, m. pl., *the Treveri.*

tribūnus, i, m., *tribune.*

triceps, ipitis, adj., *three-headed.*

trīdium, i, n., *space of three days, three days.*

trīgintā, card. num., *thirty.*

triplex, icis, adj., *threefold, triple.*

trīstis, e, adj., *sad.*

trucidō, āre, āvi, ātus, *slay, kill.*

tū, tui, pers. pron., *thou, you.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *tumult, uprising, confusion.*

tumulus, i, m., *mound, hill.*

turpitūdō, inis, f., *disgrace, shame.*

turris, is, f., *tower.*

tūtus, a, um, adj., *safe.*

tuus, a, um, poss. pron., *thy, thine, your, yours.*

U

ubi, conj., *where, when.*

ūllus, a, um, adj., *any.*

ulterior, ius, comp. adj., *farther.*

ultimus, a, um, sup. adj., *last, farthest, most remote.*

ultrā, prep. w. Acc., *on the other side, beyond.*

umerus, i, m., *shoulder.*

unde, adv., *from which place, whence.*

ūndecim, card. num., *eleven.*

ūniversus, a, um, adj., *all together, whole, entire.*

unquam, adv., *ever, at any time.*

ūnus, a, um, card. num., *one.*

urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

urgeō, ēre, urai, —, *urge, press hard, beset.*

ūaque, adv., *even, as far as, all the way to.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *experience, use.*

ut, conj., *that, in order that, so that; after verbs of fearing, that not; w. Ind., as, when; with the Infinitive, to.*

uter, tra, trum, adj., *which of two.*

uterque, traque, trumque, adj., *each, either, each one, both.*

utinam, adv., *I wish that! would that!*

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, *use, enjoy, employ, w. Abl.*

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

ūva, ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes.*

uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vadum, i, n., *ford.*

valeō, ēre, ui, itūrus, *be well, be strong, avail; valē, farewell.*

Valerius, i, m., *Lucius Valerius.*

vallēs, is, f., *valley.*

vāllum, i, n., *wall, rampart.*

- varius**, a, um, adj., *various, different*.
vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus, *lay waste, devastate*.
vāstus, a, um, adj., *vast*.
vectigal, ālis, n., *tax, revenue, tribute*.
vehementer, adv., *eagerly, violently, vehemently*.
vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus, *carry, bear; pass., be carried, ride*.
vēndō, ere, didi, ditus, *sell*.
venenātus, a, um, adj., *poisoned, poisonous*.
veniō, ire, vēni, ventus, *come*.
venter, tris, m., *belly*.
ventus, i, m., *wind*.
Verbigenus, i, m., *Verbigenus*.
verbum, i, n., *word, saying*.
vereor, ēri, itus sum, *fear, be afraid*.
vergō, ere, —, —, *turn, be situated, slope*.
vērō, adv., post-posit., *in truth, surely, certainly, yes, but, though*.
versor, āri, atus sum, *be busy, be*.
versus, ūs, m., *verse*.
vertex, icis, m., *top, summit*.
vescor, i, —, —, *take food, eat, feed upon*.
Vesontio, ōnis, m., *Vesontio, a city in Gaul*.
vesper, erī, m., *evening; sub vesperum, towards evening*.
vester, tra, trum, poss. pron., *your, yours*.
vestis, is, f., *clothing, clothes, garment*.
vēxillum, i, n., *banner, flag*.
via, ae, f., *road, way*.
vice, Abl. of vicis, *instead of, in the place of*.
victor, ōris, m., *victor, conqueror*.
victōria, ae, f., *victory*.
vicus, i, m., *village*.
videō, ēre, vidī, visus, *see; pass., be seen, seem*.
vigilia, ae, f., *watch of the night (fourth part of the night)*.
viginti, card. num., *twenty*.
vinciō, ire, vinxi, victus, *bind*.
vincō, ere, vici, victus, *conquer, overcome*.
vinea, ae, f., *shed (for protecting besiegers)*.
vinum, i, n., *wine*.
vir, viri, m., *man*.
virgō, inis, f., *virgin, maid*.
virgula, ae, f., *little twig*.
virtūs, ūtis, f., *manhood, bravery, courage, valor, virtue*.
vis (vis), f., *strength, force; pl., virēs, ium, strength*.
vita, ae, f., *life*.
vitis, is, f., *vine*.
vivō, ere, vixi, victus, *live*.
vivus, a, um, adj., *living, alive*.
vocō, āre, āvi, ātus, *call, summon*.
volō, āre, āvi, ātus, *fly*.
volō, velle, volui, —, *wish, be willing*.
voluntās, ātis, f., *wish, desire*.
voluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure, enjoyment*.
vōs, vestrum, pl. of tū, *you*.
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word*.
vulgus, i, n., *crowd, common people*.
vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus, *wound*.
vulnus, eris, n., *wound*.
vulpēs, is, f., *fox*.

X

X, abbreviation for *ten*.

Z

Zēla, ae, f., *Zela*.
zōna, ae, f., *belt, girdle*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

VERBS followed by the figures 1, 2, 4, have their principal parts formed regularly like those of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, respectively, as given in the paradigms. Irregular verbs, verbs of the Third Conjugation, and those of the other three which have any irregularities, have their principal parts given. Where a simple verb and one or more of its compounds occur under one heading, the parts of the first only are given, unless a change takes place in composition. The figures in parentheses refer to section numbers in the main part of the book or in the appendix. For abbreviations, see general table on page 250.

A

abandon, *relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus*.
 able, be, *possum, posse, potui* (619).
 abode, *sēdēs, is, f*.
 about, *dē, w. Abl.; circum, w. Acc.; circiter, adv.; about to, see first periphrastic conjugation* (534 seq.).
 accept, *accipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus*.
 accomplish, *conficiō, ere, feci, fectus*.
 accord, of his own, *suā sponte, Abl*.
 account of, on, *propter, w. Acc.; Abl. of cause*.
 accuse, *incūsō, i*.
 accustomed, be, *cōsuēscō, ere, suēvi, suētus; soleō, ēre, itus sum*.
 across, *trāns, w. Acc*.
 act, *agō, ere, ēgi, āctus*.
 Aduatuci, *Aduātucī, ōrum, m. pl*.
 advance, *prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus; prōgredior, ī, gressus sum*.
 advise, *monēō, a*.
 Aeduans, (Aedui), *Aedui, ōrum, m. pl*.
 after, *post, w. Acc.; postquam, conj*.
 again, *iterum*.
 against, *in, or contrā, w. Acc.; Dat. after inferō, bring against*.
 age, *aetās, ātis, f*.
 aid, *auxilium, ī, n*.
 alacrity, *alacritās, ātis, f*.
 alarm, *commoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus*.
 all, *omnis, e; tōtus, a, um* (593), at all, *omniñō*.

Allobroges, *Allobrogēs, um, m. pl*.
 ally, *socius, i, m*.
 almost, *paene, prope*.
 along, *per, w. Acc.; secundum, w. Acc*.
 Alps, *Alpēs, ium, f. pl*.
 also, *quoque*, following emphatic word; *etiam*.
 although, *cum, w. Subj.; Abl. abs*.
 always, *semper*.
 am, *sum, esse, fui, futurūs* (615 seq.).
 ambassador, *lēgātus, ī, m*.
 ambush, *insidae, ārum, f. pl*.
 among, *in, w. Abl.; apud or inter, w. Acc*.
 ancestors, *māiōrēs, um, m. pl*.
 anchor, *ancora, ae, f*.
 and, *et, -que, atque*.
 and so, *itaque*.
 angry, *irātus, a, um; angry, be, irāscor, ī, irātus sum*.
 animal, *animal, ālis, n*.
 announce, *nūntiō, i; praedicō, i*.
 annoy, *laccēsō, ere, iui, itus*.
 another, *alius, a, ud* (593); to one another, *inter sē; of another, aliēnus, a, um*.
 answer, *respōnsum, ī, n*.
 ant, *formica, ae, f*.
 any (person or thing), *ullus, a, um* (593), *aliquis, qua, quid* (quod) (602), *quisquam, quidquam*.
 appear, *existō, ere, stiti, stitus*.
 approach, *appropinquō, i; adeō, ire, īi, itus*.
 Aquitania, *Aquitānia, ae, f*.

Aquitani, (Aquitani), *Aquitāni, ōrum*, m. pl.

Arar, *Arar, aris*, m.

Arcadia, *Arcadia, ae, f.*

archer, *sagittārius, i, m.*

Arlovistus, *Arlovistus, i.*

arise, *orior, iri, ortus sum* (314 seq.).

arm, *armō, i*; armed men, *armāfi, ōrum*, m. pl.

armor bearer, *armiger, erī, m.*

arms, *arma, ōrum*, n. pl.

army, *exercitus, ūs*, m.

around, *circum*, w. Acc.

arrival, *adventus, ūs*, m.

arrive, *perueniō, ire, veni, ventus*.

arrogance, *adrogantia, ae, f.*

arrow, *sagitta, ae, f.*

as, *ut*; as soon as, *simul ac* or *atque, cum primum*.

assault, *oppugnō, i*; take by assault, *expugnō, i*.

assemble, *convocō, i*; conveniō, 4.

assign, *impōnō, ere, posui, positus*.

assist, *iuvō, āre, iuvi, iutus; adsum, esse, fui, futurus* (615 seq.), w. Dat.

at, *ad*, w. Acc.; *sub*, w. Acc.; *in*, w. Acc.

Athens, *Athēnae, ārum*, f. pl.

attack, *impetō, ūs, m.*; make an attack, *impetum faciō, ere, feci, factus*.

attack, *oppugnō, i*.

attempt, *cōnātus, ūs*, m.

authority, *auctoritās, ātis, f.*

await, *expectō, i*.

Axona, *Axona, ae, m.*

B

baggage, *impedimenta, ōrum*, n. pl.

bank (of river), *ripa, ae, f.*

barbarous, *barbarus, a, um*.

barren, *sterilis, e*.

battle, *proelium, i, n.*; *pugna, ae, f.*

be, *sum, esse, fui, futurus* (615 seq.).

beak, *rōstrum, i, n.*

bear against, *inferō, ferre, tuli, latus* (623 seq.); bear off, *auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablatus*; bear arms, *arma gerō, ere, gessi, gestus*.

beast of burden, *iumentum, i, n.*

beast, wild, *fera, ae, f.*

beautiful, *pulcher, chra, chrum*.

because, *quod*; because of, *propter*, w. Acc.

become, *fiō, fieri, factus sum* (619 seq.); become master of, *potior, iri, positus sum*, w. Abl. (314 seq.); become stiff, *riged, ere, ui, —*.

before, *prae* or *prō*, w. Abl.; *ante*, w. Acc.; adv., *ante*.

beg, beg for, *petō, ere, ivi, or ii, itus*.

begin, *coepi, isse; initium faciō, ere, feci, factus*.

beginning, *initium, i, n.*; make a beginning, *initium faciō, ere, feci, factus*; in the beginning of summer, *initū aestātē*.

Belgae, *Belgae, ārum*, m. pl.

Bellovac, *Bellovac, ōrum*, m. pl.

benefactor, *benefactor, ōris, m.*

best, *optimus, a, um* (598).

betake oneself, *sē cōferō, ferre, tuli, latus* (623 seq.).

better, *melior, ius* (598).

beyond, *praeter* or *ultrā*, w. Acc.

Bibracte, *Bibracte, is, n.*

Bibrax, *Bibrax, ctis, f.*

bind fast, *dēligō, i*.

bird, *avis, is, f.*; bird catcher, *auceps, cipis, m.*

bite, *mordeō, ēre, momordi, morsus*.

blame, *culpō, i*.

boar, wild, *aper, pri, m.*

boat, *nāvis, is, f.*; *cymba, ae, f.*

body, *corpus, oris, n.*

bold, *audāx, ācis*.

book, *liber, bri, m.*

boy, *puer, eri, m.*

brave, *fortis, e*.

bravely, *fortiter*.

bravery, *virtūs, ūtis, f.*

bravest, *fortissimus, a, um*.

brazen, *aëneus, a, um*.

break off, *tollo, ere, sustuli, sublatus*.

bridge, *pōns, pontis, m.*

brief, *brevis, e*.

bring, *ferō, ferre, tuli, latus* (623 seq.); *portō, i*; bring down, *dēferō*; bring over, *transportō, i*; bring to an end, *cōficiō, ere, feci, fectus*; bring together, *cōferō*; *condūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus*; bring up the rear, *āgmen claudō, ere, clausi, clausus*.

broad, *lātus*, *a*, *um*.
 brother, *frāter*, *tris*, *m*.
 Brutus, *Brūtus*, *i*, *m*.
 building, *aedificium*, *i*, *n*.
 bull, *bōs*, *bovis*, *m*.
 bunch of grapes, *ūva*, *ae*, *f*.
 busy, be, *versor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.
 but, *sed*, *autem* (post-pos.); but that,
quin.
 by, *ā* or *ad*, *w*. *Abl.*; *Abl.* of means.

C

Caesar, *Caesar*, *aris*, *m*.
 calamity, *calamitās*, *ātis*, *f*.
 call, *vocō*, *i*; *appellō*, *i*; call to, *advocō*,
i; call together, *convocō*, *i*.
 camp, *castra*, *ōrum*, *n*. *pl*.
 can, see able, be.
 capture, *capio*, *ere*, *cēpi*, *captus*.
 care, *cūra*, *ae*, *f*.
 carry, *portō*, *i*; carry on, *gerō*, *ere*, *gessi*,
gestus; be carried, *vehor*, *i*, *vectus sum*.
 cart, *carrus*, *i*, *m*.
 cast, *iacio*, *ere*, *iēci*, *iactus*; cast down,
deiciō, *ere*, *iēcī*, *iectus*; cast into, *ini-*
ciō, *3*.
 catch, *capio*, *ere*, *cēpi*, *captus*.
 cause, *causa*, *ae*, *f*.
 cause, *eddō*, *ere*, *didī*, *ditus*.
 cavalry, *equitātus*, *ūs*, *m*., *equitēs*, *um*, *m*.
pl.; cavalry battle, *proclium equestre*,
n.; cavalry forces, *cōpia equestrēs*,
f. *pl*.
 Celts, *Celtae*, *ārum*, *m*. *pl*.
 centurion, *centuriō*, *ōnis*, *m*.
 certain, *certus*, *a*, *um*; a certain one,
quidam, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (*quid-*
dam) (372, 1).
 certainly, *sānē*.
 chain, *catēna*, *ae*, *f*.
 chance, *cāsus*, *ūs*, *m*.
 change, *mūtō*, *i*.
 chariot, *currus*, *ūs*, *m*.
 chief, *princeps*, *ipīs*, *m*.; chief command,
summa, *ae*, *f*.; chief men, *principēs*, *um*,
m. *pl*.; chief priest, *pontifex*, *icīs*, *m*.
 children, *liberī*, *ōrum*, *m*. *pl*.
 choose, *dēligō*, *ere*, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.
 citizen, *civīs*, *is*, *m*. and *f*.

city, *urbis*, *urbis*, *f*.
 cliff, *rūpēs*, *is*, *f*.
 climb, *ascendō*, *ere*, *i*, *scēsus*.
 close line, *āgmen claudō*, *ere*, *clausi*,
clausus.
 closely crowded, *cōnfertus*, *a*, *um*.
 club, *clāva*, *ae*, *f*.
 cohort, *cohors*, *ortis*, *f*.
 cold, *gelus*, *ūs*, *m*.; *frigus*, *oris*, *n*.
 come, *veniō*, *ire*, *venī*, *ventus*; come
 together, *conveniō*, *4*.
 command, *imperium*, *i*, *n*., *mandātum*, *i*,
n.; be in command of, *praesum*, *esse*,
fuī, *futūrus*, *w*. *Dat.* (615 seq.).
 commander, *dux*, *ducis*, *m*.; *imperātor*,
ōris, *m*.
 compassion, *miserīcordia*, *ae*, *f*.
 conceal, *cēlō*, *i*; *condō*, *ere*, *didī*, *ditus*.
 concerning, *dē*, *w*. *Abl*.
 confer, *dēferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus* (623 seq.).
 conference, *conloquium*, *i*, *n*.
 conquer, *vincō*, *ere*, *vici*, *victus*; *superō*, *i*.
 consent, *volumīās*, *ātis*, *f*.
 conspiracy, *coniūratiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.
 conspire, *coniūrō*, *i*.
 consul, *cōsul*, *ulīs*, *m*.
 consulship of, in the, *cōsul* and name
 of person, in the *Abl*. *abs*.
 contend, *contendō*, *ere*, *i*, *tentus*.
 content, *contentus*, *a*, *um*.
 continually, *continenter*.
 country, *terra*, *ae*, *f*.; *finēs*, *ium*, *m*. *pl*.;
 native country, *patria*, *ae*, *f*.; (op-
 posed to city), *rūs*, *rūris*, *n*.
 courage, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *f*.
 Crassus, *Crassus*, *i*, *m*.
 Crete, *Crēta*, *ae*, *f*.
 cross, *trānsēō*, *ire*, *ī*, *itus* (623 seq.).
 crowd, *vulgus*, *i*, *n*.
 crowded, closely, *cōnfertus*, *a*, *um*.
 cry out, *conclāmō*, *i*.
 Cures, *Curēs*, *ium*, *f*. *pl*.
 cut down, *interscindō*, *ere*, *scidī*, *scissus*;
 cut off, *interciūdō*, *ere* *clūsī*, *clūsus*.

D

daily, *cotidianus*, *a*, *um*; *cotidiē*, *adv*.
 danger, *periculum*, *i*, *n*.
 dare, *audeō*, *ēre*, *ausus sum* (320).

daughter, *filia*, *ae*, *f.* (59, n. 1).
 day, *diēs*, *ī*, *m.*; by day, *interdiū*;
 every day, *cotidie*, in *diēs*; on the
 day after that day, *postridie* *ēius diē*.
 daybreak, at, *primā luce*.
 dear, *cārus*, *a*, *um*.
 death, *mors*, *mortis*, *f.*
 deceive, *fallō*, *ere*, *fefellī*, *falsus*.
 decide, *cōstituō*, *ere*, *uī*, *ūtus*.
 deep, *altus*, *a*, *um*.
 defeat, *vincō*, *ere*, *vici*, *victus*.
 defend, *dēfendō*, *ere*, *ī*, *fēnsus*.
 deliver, *liberō*, *i*.
 Delos, *Dēlos*, *ī*, *f.*
 demand, *postulātum*, *ī*, *n*.
 demand, *postulō*, *i*; *flagitō*, *i*; *pōscō*, *ere*,
popōscī, —.
 dense, *dēnsus*, *a*, *um*.
 deprive, *privō*, *i*.
 descend, *dēscendō*, *ere*, *dī*, *ēnsus*.
 desire, *cupiditās*, *ātis*, *f.*; *studium*, *ī*, *n*.
 desist from, *dēsistō*, *ere*, *stīti*, *stītus*.
 destroy, *dēlēō*, *ēre*, *ēvi*, *ētus*.
 destruction, *interneciō*, *ōnis*, *f.*
 determine, *cōstituō*, *ere*, *uī*, *ūtus*.
 devastate, *vāstō*, *i*.
 Diana, *Diāna*, *ae*, *f.*
 die, *moriōr*, *mori* (*moriī*), *mortuus sum*
 (314 seq.).
 different, *dissimilis*, *e*; *dīversus*, *a*, *um*;
varius, *a*, *um*.
 difficult, *difficilis*, *e*.
 direction, *pars*, *partis*, *f.*
 disaster, *calamitās*, *ātis*, *f.*
 disposition, *indolēs*, *is*, *f.*; *animus*, *ī*, *m*.
 distance, *spatium*, *ī*, *n*.
 district, *pāgus*, *ī*, *m*.
 disturb, *commoveō*, *ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtus*;
 disturb greatly, *perturbō*, *i*.
 ditch, *fossa*, *ae*, *f.*
 Divico, *Divicō*, *ōnis*, *m*.
 Divitiacus, *Divitiācus*, *ī*, *m*.
 do, *faciō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *factus*; *agō*, *ere*, *ēgī*,
actus.
 does not, *nōn* w. verb repeated; in ques-
 tions, *nōne* w. verb.
 door, *porta*, *ae*, *f.*
 doubt, *dubiō*, *i*.
 dove, *columba*, *ae*, *f.*
 drag, *trahō*, *ere*, *trāxī*, *trāctus*.

draw near, *accēdō*, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessus*;
 draw up, *instruō*, *ere*, *strūxī*, *strūctus*.
 drive, *agō*, *ere*, *ēgī*, *actus*; *pellō*, *ere*,
pepulī, *pulsus*; *repellō*, *ere*, *reppulī*,
repulsus.

drown, *submergō*, *ere*, *mersī*, *mersus*.

Dumnorix, *Dumnorix*, *īgis*, *m*.

during, *per*, w. Acc.; Acc. of duration of
 time.

E

each (one), *quisque*, *quaque*, *quidque*
 (372); (of two) *uterque*, *traque*,
trumque (593).

easily, *facile*.

easy, *facilis*, *e*.

egg, *ovum*, *ī*, *n*.

embassy, *lēgatiō*, *ōnis*, *f.*

encamp, *cōsidō*, *ere*, *sēdī*, *sessus*.

encourage, *cohortor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum* (314).

endure, *sustineō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*.

enemy, *hostis*, *is*, *m*. and *f*. generally
 in pl.

engagement, *proelium*, *ī*, *n*.

engine, hurling, *tormentum*, *ī*, *n*.

enjoy, *fruor*, *ī*, *fructus sum* (314 seq.).

utor, *ī*, *ūtus sum*, w. Abl.

enroll, *cōscribō*, *ere*, *scripsī*, *scriptus*.

entrust, *permittō*, *ere*, *missi*, *missus*.

envy, *invidēō*, *ēre*, *vidī*, *visus*, w. Dat.

equip, *ōrnō*, *i*.

establish, *cōfirmō*, *i*.

Eurystheus, *Eurystheus*, *ī*, *m*.

even up to, *ūsque ad*, w. Acc.

evening, *vesper*, *erī*, *m*.; at or toward

evening, *sub vesperum*.

everything, *omnia*, *ium*, *n*. pl.

excel, *praestō*, *āre*, *stīti*, —; *superō*, *i*.

excellently, *ēgregiē*.

except, *nisi*.

exertion, *contentiō*, *ōnis*, *f*.

extend, *pertineō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*; (stretch
 out), *pandō*, *ere*, *ī*, *passus*.

F

fabl, *fābula*, *ae*, *f*.

fact, *rēs*, *rei*, *f*.

faithful, *fidus*, *a*, *um*.

famous, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.

farmer, *agricola*, *ae*, *m*.

farther, *ulterior*, *tus*.
 fault, *culpa*, *ae*, *f*.
 favor, *grātia*, *ae*, *f*.
 fear, *timor*, *ōris*, *m*.
 fear, *timeō*, *ēre*, *ui*, —; *vereor*, *ērī*, *itus*
sum (314 seq.).
 feather, *penna*, *ae*, *f*.
 feed, *pāscō*, *ere*, *pāvi*, *pāstus* or *pāscor*, *i*,
pāstus sum.
 fertile, *fertilis*, *e*.
 few, *pauci*, *ae*, *a*.
 field, *ager*, *rī*, *m*.
 fierce, *acer*, *cris*, *ere*; *ferus*, *a*, *um*.
 fiercely, *acriter*.
 fight, *pugnō*, *i*.
 find, *inventiō*, *ire*, *vēnī*, *ventus*; find out,
reperiō, *ire*, *repperī*, *reperitus*.
 finish, *cōficiō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *fectus*.
 fire, set on, *incendō*, *ere*, *dī*, *cēnsus*.
 five, *quinque*, *indec*.
 fixed, *certus*, *a*, *um*.
 flee, *fugiō*, *ere*, *fūgī*, *fugitus*.
 fleet, *clāssis*, *is*, *f*.
 flight, *fuga*, *ae*, *f*.
 fly, *volō*, *i*; fly out, *ēvolō*, *i*.
 follow, *sequor*, *i*, *cūsus sum* (314).
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m*; at the foot of, *sub*,
w. Abl.
 for, *enim* (post-posit.); sign of Dat.; sign
 of Acc. of duration of time; sign of
 Abl. of cause.
 forage, *pābulum*, *i*, *n*.
 force, *vis* (*vīs*), *f*; *impetus*, *ūs*, *m*.
 forces, *cōpiae*, *arum*, *f*. pl.
 forced marches, *māgna itinera*, *n*. pl.
 forest, *silva*, *ae*, *f*.
 form, *fōrma*, *ae*, *f*.
 former, *prīstinus*, *a*, *um*; (in contrast
 with latter), *ille*, *a*, *ud* (599).
 fortify, *mūniō*, *q*.
 fortress, *castellum*, *i*, *n*.
 fortune (good), *fortūna*, *ae*, *f*.
 four, *quattuor*, *indec*.
 fourth, *quārtus*, *a*, *um*.
 fox, *vulpēs*, *is*, *f*.
 free, *liberō*, *i*.
 frequent, *crēber*, *bra*, *brum*.
 fresh strength, with, *integris viribus*.
 friend, *amicus*, *i*, *m*.
 friendly, *amicus*, *a*, *um*.

friendship, *amicitia*, *ae*, *f*.
 frighten, *terreō*, *z*.
 from, *ā* or *ab*, *w*. Abl.; *dē*, *w*. Abl.
 fruits (of field), *frūgēs*, *um*, *f*. pl.
 furnish, *praebeō*, *z*.

G

 Galba, *Galba*, *ae*, *m*.
 garment, *vestis*, *is*, *f*.
 garrison, *praesidium*, *i*, *n*.
 gate, *porta*, *ae*, *f*.
 Gaul, *Gallia*, *ae*, *f*.
 Gauls, *Galli*, *ōrum*, *m*. pl.
 general, *dux*, *ducis*, *m*; *imperātor*, *ōris*,
m.
 generosity, *liberālītās*, *ātis*, *f*.
 Germans, *Germāni*, *ōrum*, *m*. pl.
 giant, *gigās*, *antis*, *m*.
 girdle, *sōna*, *ae*, *f*.
 girl, *puella*, *ae*, *f*.
 give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*; give up, *dēdō*,
ere, *didī*, *ditus*; *trādō*, *ere*, *didī*, *ditus*.
 glad, *laetus*, *a*, *um*.
 go, *eō*, *ire*, *ivi* or *iī*, *itūrus* (623); go
 away, *discēdō*, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessus*; *abēō*,
ire, *iī*, *itūrus*; go on, *gerō*, *ere*, *gessi*,
gestus; go out of, *exēō*, *ire*, *iī*, *itūrus*.
 goat, *capra*, *ae*, *f*.
 god, *deus*, *dei*, *m*.
 gold, *aurum*, *i*, *n*.
 golden, *aureus*, *a*, *um*.
 good, *bonus*, *a*, *um*.
 graceful, *gracilis*, *e*.
 gradually, *paulātim*.
 grain, *frumentum*, *i*, *n*; grain supplies,
rēs frumentāria, *rei frumentāriae*, *f*.
 grape, *uva*, *ae*, *f*.
 grassy, *herbidus*, *a*, *um*.
 gravely, *graviter*.
 great, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*.
 groundless, *falsus*, *a*, *um*.
 guard, *praesidium*, *i*, *n*.
 guard, *custodiō*, *q*.
 guest-friend, *hospes*, *itis*, *m*.

H

 hand, *manus*, *ūs*, *f*; be at hand, *suppetō*,
ere, *petivi*, *itūrus*.
 happen, *incidō*, *ere*, *cidī*, *cāsus*.

happy, *fēlix, icis*; *laetus, a, um*.
 hasten, *properō, i*; *mātūrō, i*; *contendō, ere, dī, tus*.
 have, *habēō, 2*; Dat. of possessor (146);
 have to, 2d Periphr. Conj. (537).
 he, *is* (598), *hic* (598), *ille* (599).
 heap, *aceruus, ī, n*.
 hear, *audiō, 4*.
 heat, *calor, ōris, m*.
 height, *altitūdō, inis, f*.
 help, *auxilium, ī, n*.
 help, *adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus, w. Dat.*
 (615 seq.).
 Helvetians (Helvetii), *Helvētī, ōrum, m. pl.*
 hen, *gallina, ae, f*.
 Hercules, *Hercules, is, m*.
 here, *hic*.
 hide, *condō, ere, didī, ditus*.
 high, *altus, a, um*; high priest, *pontifex, icis, m*.
 higher, *superior, ius*.
 hill, *collis, is, m*; up hill, *adversō colle*.
 himself, see self.
 hinder, *impediō, 4*.
 hindrance, *impedimentum, ī, n*.
 his, *ēius* (598), *hūius* (598), *illius* (599);
 reflexive *suus, a, um*.
 hither, *hūc*.
 hold, *teneō, ēre, uī, tus*; hold back, *retineō, 2*.
 home, *domus, ūs or ī, f*. (134); at home, *domi*; home supplies, *rēs domesticae, f. pl.*
 honor, *honor, ōris, m*.
 hope, *spēs, speī, f*.
 horse, *equus, ī, m*.
 horseman, *eques, itis, m*.
 hostage, *obses, idis, m. and f*.
 hostile, *inimicus, a, um*.
 hour, *hōra, ae, f*.
 house, *domus, ūs or ī, f*. (134).
 however, *autem* (post-posit.); *tamen*.
 hundred, *centum, indec.*
 hurl, *iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus*.
 hurling engine, *tormentum, ī, n*.

I

I, *ego, meī* (596).
 Iccius, *Iccius, ī, m*.

if, *sī*; if not, *nisi*.
 immediately, *statim*.
 implore, *implorō, i, in, in, w. Abl.*
 incredible, *incrēdibilis, e*.
 indignity, *indignitās, ātis, f*.
 infantry forces, *cōpia pedestrēs, f. pl.*
 influence, *grātia, ae, f*.
 inform, *certiōrem faciō, ere, fecī, certior factus*.
 inhabit, *incolō, ere, uī, cultus*; habitō, *x*.
 inhabitant, *incola, ae, m*.
 injury, *iniūria, ae, f*.
 injustice, *iniūria, ae, f*.
 insolently, *insolenter*.
 inspire (in), *iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus*.
 insult, *contumēlia, ae, f*.
 interior, *interior, ius* (595).
 into, *in, w. Acc.*
 intrust, *permitto, ere, misi, missus*.
 irritable, *iracundus, a, um*.
 island, *insula, ae, f*.
 it, *is, ea, id*.
 Italy, *Italia, ae, f*.

J

join battle, *manūs cōserō, ere, uī, tus*;
 join with or together, *coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iunctus*.
 journey, *iter, itineris, n*.
 Jura, *Iūra, ae, m*.
 just, *iustus, a, um*.
 justice, *iūstitia, ae, f*.

K

keep apart, *distineō, ēre, uī, tentus*; keep from, *prohibeō, 2*; keep in, *contineō, 2*.
 kept, sign of imperfect of repeated action.
 kid, *haedus, ī, m*.
 kill, *interficiō, ere, fecī, sectus*; *occidō, ere, cidi, cīsus*; *trucidō, i*.
 kindness, *beneficium, ī, n*.
 king, *rēx, rēgis, m*.
 kinsman, *cōsanguineus, ī, m*.
 know, *intelligō, ere, lēxi, lēctus*; *sciō, ire, ivi, itus*.

L

Labienus, *Labiēnus, ī, m*.
 labor, *labor, ōris, m*.

lacking, be, *dēsum, esse, fui, futūrus, w.*

Dat. (615 seq.).

lake, *lacus, ūs, m.*

lamb, *agnus, ī, m.*

land, *terra, ae, f.*

large, *magnus, a, um.*

last, *proximus, a, um; adv., proximē; at last, dēnique.*

latter, *hic* (598).

law, *lēx, legis, f.*

lay (an egg), *pariō, ere, peperī, partus; lay waste, vāstō, ī.*

lead, *dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus; lead across, trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus; lead down, dēdūcō; lead forward, prōdūcō; lead out, edūcō; lead through, perdūcō; lead together, condūcō.*

leader, *dux, ducis, m.*

leadership, *principātus, ūs, m.; summa, ae, f.*

leap up, *subsiliō, ire, uī, —.*

leave, *relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus.*

left, *sinister, tra, trum.*

legion, *legiō, ōnis, f.*

length, *at, dēnique, dēnum.*

lest, *nē, w. Subj.*

let, sign of Imp. or Hortatory Subj.; let loose, *amittō, ere, misi, missus; emittō.*

letter (of alphabet), *littera, ae, f.; (epistle), litterae, ārum, f. pl.*

lieutenant, *lēgātus, ī, m.*

life, *vita, ae, f.*

likewise, *item; quoque* (after the emphatic word).

line of battle, *aciēs, ēi, f.; line of march, agmen, inis, n.*

lion, *leō, ōnis, m.*

Liscus, *Liscus, ī, m.*

live, *vivō, ere, vixī, victus; live in, incolō, ere, ui, cultus; habitō; ī.*

long, *longus, a, um; magnus, a, um; adv., diū.*

longer, *diutius.*

lose, *amittō, ere, misi, missus; perdō, ere, didi, ditus.*

M

magnitude, *māgnitūdō, inis, f.*

make, *faciō, ere, feci, factus; make a march, iter faciō.*

man, *vir, viri, m.; (human being), homō, inis, m. and f.*

manner, *modus, ī, m.*

many, *multī, ae, a, pl.*

march, *iter, itineris, n.; on the march, ex or in itinere.*

march, *iter faciō, ere, feci, factus.*

mare, *equa, ae, f.*

marsh, *palūs, ūdis, f.*

mass, *massa, ae, f.*

master, *magister, tri, m.; become master of, potior, iri, itus sum* (314, 315).

means, by no, *minimē.*

meantime, in the, *intereā.*

meet, *occurrō, ere, curri, cursus* (w. Dat.).

memory, *memoria, ae, f.*

messenger, *nūntius, ī, m.*

middle of, *medius, a, um* (658).

mile, *mille passūs* (664).

military affairs, *rēs militāris, rei militāris, f.*

mind, *mēns, mentis, f.; animus, ī, m.*

mine, *meus, a, um.*

mischievous, *malefīcium, ī, n.*

misfortune, *malum, ī, n.*

missile, *telum, ī, n.*

mock, *lūdificō, ī.*

more, *magis, adv.; sign of comparative.*

moreover, *praeterea; autem* (post-posit.).

mount, mountain, *mōns, montis, m.*

move, *moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus; commoveō, 2.*

much, *multus, a, um; adv., multō, multum.*

multitude, *multitūdō, inis, f.*

my, *meus, a, um.*

N

naked, *nūdus, a, um.*

name, *nōmen, inis, n.*

Nantuates, *Nantuatēs, um, m. pl.*

narrow, *angustus, a, um.*

nation, *nātiō, ōnis, f.*

nature, *nātūra, ae, f.*

naval, *nāvālis, e.*

near, *prope, ad, w. Acc.*

nearest, *proximus, a, um.*

nearly, *prope, paene.*

necessary, *necesse, indec.*

neighboring, *finitimus, a, um.*

neighbors, *finitimī, ōrum*, m. pl.
 neither . . . nor, *neque . . . neque*.
Nervii, Nervii, ōrum, m. pl.
 net, *rēte, is*, n.
 never, *nunquam* or *numquam*.
 nevertheless, *tamen*.
 new, *novus, a, um*.
 night, by, *noctū*.
 ninth, *nōnus, a, um*.
 no, *nōn*, w. verb repeated; no (one),
 nobody, *nūllus, a, um; nēmō, Dat.*
nēmīni.
 nobility, *nōbilitās, ātis*, f.
 not, *nōn*; not to, *nē*, w. Subj.; not yet,
nōndum.
 nothing, *nihil*, indec.
 Noviodunum, *Noviodūnum, i, n*.
 number, *numerus, i, m.; multitūdō, inis*, f.

O

oar, *rēmus, i, m*.
 occupy, *occupō, i*.
 Octodurus, *Octodūrus, i, m*.
 of, sign of Gen.; *dē*, w. Abl.
 often, *saepe*.
 on, *in*, w. Abl.
 once, *quondam*; at once, *statim*.
 one, *ūnus, a, um* (593); one . . . another,
alius . . . alius; the one . . . the other,
alter . . . alter; to one another, *inter*
sē.
 open, *apertus, a, um*; lay open, *patefa-*
ciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
 or, *aut*.
 order (rank), *ōrdō, inis* m.; *mandātum*,
i, n.; in order to, *ut*, w. Subj.
 order, *iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus* (w. Inf.);
imperō, i (w. Subj. usually).
 Orgetorix, *Orgetorix, igis, m*.
 other, *alius, a, ud* (593); other side of,
 on the, *trāns*, w. Acc.; *ultrā*, w. Acc.
 ought, *dēbeō, 2*; 2nd Periphr. Conj.
 (537)
 our, *noster, tra, trum*; our men, *nostrī,*
ōrum, m. pl.
 out of, *ē, ex*, w. Abi.
 outcry, *clāmōr, ōris*, m.
 over, *in*, w. Abl.
 overcome, *vincō, ere, vici, victus*; *superō,*
i.

own, *his, suus, a, um*.
 ox, *bōs, bovis*, m.

P

pace, *passus, ūs*, m.
 pardon, *ignōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus*, w. Dat.
 part, *pars, partis*, f.
 pass by, *praetereō, ire, iī, itus*.
 passionate, *iracundus, a, um*.
 peace, *pāx, pācis*, f.
 people, *populus, i, m*.
 perish, *pereō, ire, iī, iturus*.
 persuade, *persuadeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus*
 (w. Dat.).
 pick up, *conligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus*; *tollō,*
ere, sustulī, sublātus.
 pillar, *columna, ae, f*.
 pitch, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positus*.
 pity, *miserescō, ere, —, —*.
 place, *locus, i, m*.; pl., *loci, ōrum*, n.
 place, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positus*; *statuō,*
ere, uī, ūtus; *conlocō, i*.
 plain, *campus, i, m*.
 plan, *cōnsilium, i, n*.
 pleasure, *voluptās, ātis*, f.
 poisoned, *venenātus, a, um*.
 power, royal, *rēgnum, i, n*.
 powerful, *potēns, entis*.
 praise, *laudō, i*.
 precious, *cārus, a, um*.
 prefer, *mālō, māllo, mālui, —* (619 seq.).
 prepare, *parō, i*; *comparō, i*.
 present, be, *adsum, esse, fui, futurus*
 (615).
 pretend, *simulō, i*.
 pride, *spīritus, ūs*, m.
 priest, high, *pontifex, icis*, m.
 private, *privātus, a, um*.
 proceed, *prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus*; pro-
 ceed a march, *iter prōcēdō, 3*.
 Proculus, *C. Valerius Proculus, C. Valeri*
Proculi, m.
 proclaim, *nūntiō, i*; *praedicō, i*.
 prolong, *perducō, ere, dūxī, ductus*.
 property, all their, *sua omnia*, n. pl.
 protection, *praesidium, i, n*.
 provide, *comparō, i*.
 province, *prōvincia, ae, f*.
 provisions, *cōpiae, ārum, f. pl*; *commē-*
ātus, ūs, m.

provoke, *laccessō, ere, ivi, itus*.
 prudence, *prudentia, ae, f*.
 prudently, *prudenter*.
 pupil, *discipulus, i, m*.
 purchase, *emō, ere, emi, emptus*.
 purpose of, for the, *ad, w. Acc. of gerundive*.
 pursue, *insequor, i, cūsus sum (314)*.
 push up, *agō, ere, ēgi, āctus*.

Q

quarters, *partēs, ium, f. pl.*; winter quarters, *hiberna, ārum, n. pl*.
 queen, *rēgina, ae, f*.
 quickly, *celeriter*.
 quickness, *celeritās, ātis, f*.

R

rampart, *vāllum, i, n*.
 ravage, *vāstō, i*.
 reach, *attingō, ere, tigi, tāctus*.
 read, *legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus*.
 ready, *parātus, a, um*.
 reason, *causa, ae, f.*; for this reason, *quā dē causā*.
 receive, *accipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus*.
 recently, *nūper*; most recently, *proximē*.
 recover, *recipero, i*.
 redoubt, *castellum, i, n*.
 reduce, *redigō, ere, ēgi, āctus*.
 refrain from, *supersedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus*.
 refuse, *recūsō, i*.
 regard to, in, *dē, w. Abl*.
 rejoice, *gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum (320)*.
 remain, *maneo, ēre, mānsi, sus*.
 Remi, *Rēmi, ōrum, m. pl*.
 render, *reddō, ere, didi, ditus*.
 renew, *renovō, i*.
 reply, *respondeō, ēre, spondi, spōnsus*.
 repulse, *repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus*.
 respects, in all, *omnibus rebus, Abl. pl*.
 rest of, *relīquus, a, um*.
 retain, *retineō, ēre, uī, tentus*.
 return, *redeō, ēre, ii, iturus*; revertor, *i, versus sum*.
 revenue, *vectigal, ālis, n*.
 revile, *maledicō, ere, dixi, dictus, w. Dat*.
 reward, *praemium, i, n*.

Rhine, *Rhēnus, i, m*.
 Rhone, *Rhodanus, i, m*.
 ride, pass. of *vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus*; ride towards, *adequitō, i*.
 right of way, *iter, itineris, n*.
 ripe, *mātūrus, a, um*.
 river, *flūmen, inis, n.*; river bank, *rīpa, ae, f*.
 road, *via, ae, f.*; iter, *itineris, n*.
 rock, *rūpes, is, f*.
 Roman, *Rōmānus, a, um*.
 Rome, *Rōma, ae, f*.
 royal power, *rēgnum, i, n*.
 rumor, *rūmor, ōris, m*.
 run down, *dēcurrō, ere, cucurri or curri, cursus*.
 rush against, *concurrō, ere, cucurri or curri, cursus*.

S

Sabinus, *Sabīnus, i, m*.
 sacred, *sacer, cra, crum*.
 sacrifice, *sacrificō, i*.
 safe, *incolumis, e*; tūtus, *a, um*.
 safety, *salūs, ūtis, f*.
 sail, *nāvigō, i*.
 sailor, *navula, ae, m*.
 sally, *eruptio, ōnis, f*.
 same, *idem, eadem, idem (296)*.
 save, *servō, i*.
 say, *dico, ere, dixi, dictus*; says he, *inquit*, placed in the midst of a direct quotation.
 scarcity, *inopia, ae, f*.
 scout, *explorator, ōris, m*.
 sea, *mare, is, n*.
 second, *secundus, a, um*.
 secretly, *clam*.
 see, *videō, ēre, vidi, visus*.
 seek, *petō, ere, ivi, itus*.
 seize, *occupo, i*.
 select, *diligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus*.
 self, *ipse, a, um (intensive) (599)*; sui (reflexive) (597).
 senate, *senātus, ūs, m*.
 send, *mittō, ere, misi, missus*; send forward, *praemittō, i*.
 separate, *dividō, ere, visi, visus*.
 Sequani, *Sequani, ōrum, m. pl*.
 serpent, *serpens, entis, m. or f*.

set on fire, *incendō, ere, dī, cēnsus*; set out, *proficiscor, ī, fectus sum*.
 settle, *cōsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus*.
 seven, *septem, indec.*
 seventh, *septimus, a, um*.
 severely, *graviter*.
 shed, *vinea, ae, f.*
 shield, *scūtum, ī, n.*
 short, *brevīs, e*.
 shout, *clāmor, ōris, m.*
 shower, *imber, bris, m.*
 side, *latus, eris, n.*; on the other side, *trāns* or *ultrā, w. Acc.*; on this side, *cis* or *citrā, w. Acc.*
 sight, *cōspectus, ūs, m.*
 signal, *significatiō, ōnis, f.*; *signum, ī, n.*
 since, *cum, w. subj.*; Abl. abs.
 six, *sex, indec.*
 six hundred, *sescenti, ae, a*.
 sixth, *sextus, a, um*.
 size, *māgnitūdō, inis, f.*
 skiff, *nāvicula, ae, f.*
 slight, *parvulus, a, um*.
 slinger, *funditor, ōris, m.*
 slope, *vergō, ere, —, —*.
 small, *parvus, a, um*.
 snatch away, *eripiō, ere, uī, reptus*.
 snow, *nix, nivis, f.*
 so, *ita, tam*; so great, *tantus, a, um*.
 soldier, *miles, itis, m.*
 some (one), *aliquis, qua, quid (quod) (602)*; some . . . others, *alii . . . alii (593)*; some in one direction, some in another, *alii aliam in partem*.
 son, *filius, ī, m.*
 soon, *mox*; as soon as, *simul atque* or *ac; cum primum*.
 sour, *acerbus, a, um*.
 space, *spatium, ī, n.*; space of three days, *triduum, ī, n.*; space of two days, *biduum, ī, n.*
 Spain, *Hispania, ae, f.*
 spare, *parcō, ere, pepercī, parsus, w. Dat.*
 speak, *loquor, ī, cūtus sum; dicō, ere, dixi, dictus*.
 speed, *celeritās, ātis, f.*
 stag, *cervus, ī, m.*
 standard, *signum, ī, n.*
 standard bearer, *signifer, erī, m.*

state, *civilās, ātis, f.*
 station, *statuō, ere, uī, ūtus*.
 still, *tamen*.
 sting, *punctus, ūs, m.*
 stone, *lapis, idis, m.*
 storm, *oppugnō, i*.
 story, *fābula, ae, f.*
 strength, *vis (vis), f.*; with fresh strength, *integrīs viribus*.
 such a, *tālis, e*.
 sudden, *subitus, a, um*.
 suddenly, *subitō*.
 Suesiones, *Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl.*
 suffer, *patior, ī, passus sum (314)*; *doleō, ere, uī, itūrus*; *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*.
 suitable, *idōneus, a, um*.
 summer, *aestās, ātis, f.*; in the beginning of summer, *initā aestāte*.
 summit, *vertex, icis, m.*
 summon, *arcessō, ere, ivi, itus*.
 sun, *sōl, is, m.*; *Hēlios, ī, m.*
 sunset, *sōlis occāsus, ūs, m.*; at sunset, *sub occāsu sōlis*.
 suppliant, *supplex, icis, m. and f.*
 supplies from home, *rēs domesticae, f. pl.*
 supply, *cōpia, ae, f.*
 surpass, *superō, i*.
 surrender, *dēditō, ōnis, f.*
 surrender, *trādō, ere, didi, ditus*.
 survive, *supersum, esse, fui, futūrus (615 seq.)*.
 sweet, *dulcis, e*.
 swiftly, *celeriter*.
 swiftness, *celeritās, ātis, f.*
 sword, *gladius, ī, m.*

T

take, *capio, ere, cepi, captus*; take by assault or storm, *expugnō, i*.
 teach, *docēō, ēre, uī, tus*.
 tear in pieces, *laniō, i*.
 tell, *narrō, i*; *dicō, ere, dixi, dictus*.
 temple, *templum, ī, n.*
 ten, *decem, indec.*
 tenth, *decimus, a, um*.
 terms, *condiciō, ōnis, f.*
 terrify, *terreō, e*; terrify greatly or thoroughly, *perterreō, e*.
 territory, *finēs, ium, m. pl.*

than, *quam*; Abl. after comp.
 that, *is, ea, id* (598); *ille, a, ud* (599);
 (rel.), *quī, quae, quod*; that, in order
 that, so that, *ut*; that not, *nē, ut*
nōn; but that, that, *quān*; that
 (after verbs of fearing), *nē*.
 their, *suus, a, um* (reflexive); *eōrum,*
ārum, ōrum, Gen. pl. of *is* (598).
 themselves. See *self*.
 then, *tum*.
 there (adv.), *ibi*; (expletive) not trans-
 lated.
 therefore, *itaque, quārē, quā dē causā*.
 they, *illī, ae, a* (599); *īī, eae, ea* (598).
 thing, *rēs, rei, f*.
 think, *arbitror, āri, ātus sum* (314).
 third, *tertius, a, um*.
 this, *hic, haec, hōc* (598).
 threaten, *minitor, āri, ātus sum* (314).
 three, *trēs, tria*.
 through, *per, w. Acc.*
 throw, *iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus*; throw into,
iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.
 thus, *ita*.
 Tigurinus, *Tigurinus, ī, m*.
 time, *tempus, oris, n*.
 timid, *timidus, a, um*.
 to, sign of Dat.; *ad, w. Acc.*; sign of
 subj. of purpose.
 too, *cgmp. of adj. or adv.*
 top, *vertex, icis, m.*; top of, *summus, a,*
um (237).
 toward (towards), *ad, w. Acc.*
 tower, *turris, is, f*.
 town, *oppidum, ī, n*.
 train, *exerceō, a*.
 transport, *trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus;*
transportō, i.
 tribune, *tribūnus, ī, m*.
 triple, *triplex, plicis*.
 troops, *cōpiae, ārum, f. pl*.
 trouble, *negōtium, ī, n*.
 trust firmly, *cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum*
 (320).
 try, *cōnor, āri, ātus sum* (314).
 tumult, *tumultus, ūs, m*.
 turn aside, *āversō, ere, versī, versus*.
 turned away, *āversus, a, um*.
 twelve, *duodecim, indec*.
 twig, *virgula, ae, f*.

two, *duo, ae, o*.
 two-headed, *biceps, ipitis*.
 two hundred, *ducentī, ae, a*.

U

unarmed, *inermis, e*.
 under, *sub., w. Acc. or Abl*.
 undertake, *cōnor, āri, ātus sum* (314).
 undertaking, *cōnātus, ūs, m*.
 Unelli, *Unellī, ōrum, m. pl*.
 unfriendly, *inimicus, a, um*.
 unhappy, *miser, era, erum*.
 unlike, *dissimilis, e*.
 until, *ūsque ad, w. Acc*.
 unwilling, be, *nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī, —*.
 unworthy, *indignus, a, um*.
 upon, *in, w. Acc. and Abl*; *super, w.*
Acc. and Abl.
 urge on, *incitō, i*.
 use, *ūsus, ūs, m*.
 use, *utor, ī, ūsus sum, w. Abl* (314).

V

vain, *in, frūstrā*.
 valor, *virtūs, ūtis, f*.
 value, of less, *dēterior, ius*.
 vast, *vāstus, a, um*.
 Veneti, *Venetī, ōrum, m. pl*.
 very, *adj. or adv. in superl*.
 Vesontio, *Vesontiō, ōnis, m*.
 victory, *victōria, ae, f*.
 village, *vīcus, ī, m*.
 vine, *vītis, is, f*.
 violently, *vehementer*.
 visit, *visō, ere, visi, vīsus; adeō, ire, īī,*
itus.
 voice, *vōx, vōcis, f*.

W

wage, *gerō, ere, gessi, gestus; wage war,*
bellō, i.
 wall, *mūrus, ī, m.*; *vāllum, ī, n*.
 war, *bellum, ī, n*.
 warlike, *bellicōsus, a, um*.
 warn, *monēō, a*.
 waste, *lay, vāstō, i*.
 watch, *vigilia, ae, f*.
 water, *agua, ae, f*.

Lindsay's Cornelius Nepos

WITH NOTES, EXERCISES, AND VOCABULARY

EDITED BY

Thomas B. Lindsay, Ph.D.

Professor of Latin and Sanskrit, Boston University

Cloth, 12mo, 363 pages. Illustrated - - - Price, \$1.10

This edition of the *Lives of Cornelius Nepos* is virtually a new work rather than a revision. The material of former editions has been recast and enlarged. The text has been thoroughly revised, and the notes and vocabulary entirely rewritten. The grammatical references have been placed at the foot of the text-page. The text has over fifty illustrations and a fine double page map of the Roman Empire, Greece and the Chersonesus. The dates of all important events are given in the text. The notes are accurate and explain all difficulties, not giving mere translations without hinting at their sources. The English-Latin exercises have been rewritten and cover the full text of the twenty-five *Lives*. These exercises, while easy and forming connected sense, give thorough drill on special or difficult constructions.

Text Edition

For use in recitations and examinations a separate volume is provided, containing the text alone. This edition will be furnished at 40 cents per copy. Teachers whose classes use the complete annotated edition will be supplied with the Text Edition at special introductory terms. Correspondence and orders should specify "Text Edition."

Copies of Lindsay's Cornelius Nepos will be sent prepaid to any address, on receipt of the price, by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

ROCKWOOD'S

Cicero's Cato Maior De Senectute

Edited with Introduction and Notes by

FRANK ERNST ROCKWOOD, A.M.

Professor of Latin in Bucknell University

Linen, 12mo, 159 pages. Price, 75 cents

Cicero's defense of old age is so charming in style and so interesting in matter that it deserves something more by way of commentary than mere discussion of grammatical and linguistic usage. Accordingly an attempt has been made in the illustrative notes, on the pages with the text, to give prominence to the historical and literary features of the essay, and to show by numerous quotations what ancient and modern authors have uttered like thoughts, couched in similar forms of expression.

In order that the chief emphasis may be placed on the literary element, the grammatical and textual commentary is placed in a separate body of notes following the text. The commentaries are supplemented by a list of variations from the text of Müller, an index to the notes and an index of proper names.

The text is preceded by an introduction containing a life of Cicero, a resumé of his works, a valuable bibliography, and a discussion, analysis and summary of the *De Senectute*.

Copies of Cicero's Cato Maior De Senectute will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York
(60)

• Cincinnati •

Chicago

Stories from Aulus Gellius

EDITED FOR SIGHT READING

BY

CHARLES KNAPP, Ph.D.

INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN, BARNARD COLLEGE, NEW YORK

Paper, 12mo. Price, 30 cents

The *Noctes Atticæ* of Aulus Gellius is a representative work, since it not only reflects perfectly the nature of the subjects which engaged the attention of the literary men of the second century A.D., but also forcibly depicts the spirit in which their labors were prosecuted. Of especial interest and value are the numerous quotations from early writers whose works are no longer extant. For such portions as yet remain of the oldest Latin literature, we are almost wholly indebted to quotations by various grammarians. In this connection the obligations of Latin scholarship to Gellius are far from small. Fully two hundred and seventy-five authors are mentioned or directly quoted in his work, while the number of individual works cited is twice or thrice as large. In giving these quotations from the older writers, he often adds information concerning their careers, or their works, and in this way his contributions to our knowledge of the history of Latin literature is very valuable. For example, practically all that is known of the life of Plautus, the greatest comic poet of Rome, is derived from the third chapter of the third book of the *Noctes Atticæ*.

The commentary gives sufficient assistance to enable such students to read the selections as rapidly and intelligently as possible, and without the need of any helps beyond those furnished by the book itself. The text, in point of language and spelling, is in the main that of Hertz, as given in his critical edition. Throughout the book all vowels known to be long have been carefully marked.

Copies of Knapp's Aulus Gellius will be sent, prepaid, to any address, on receipt of the price (30 cents), by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

K

ork,
bich
D.,
ted.
arly
yet
d to
ons
and
hile
In
ion
u-
ery
of
rd

ts
nd
f.
of
ls

.

,

